Clarendon Press Series

CHAUCER

SKEAT

VOL. III.
London
MACMILLAN AND CO.

PUBLISHERS TO THE UNIVERSITY OF

Oxford
Clarendon Press Series

CHAUCER

THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE
THE PARDONERES TALE
THE SECOND NONNES TALE
THE CHANOUNS YEMANNES TALE
FROM
THE CANTERBURY TALES

EDITED BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A.

Lestrange and Bosworth Professor of Anglo-Saxon in the University of Cambridge,
Author of a 'Meiro-Gothic Glossary,'
Editor of 'Piers the Ploughman;' 'Havelok the Dane,' &c.
Vice-President of the Cambridge Philological Society,
Member of the Council of the Philological Society of London

Second Edition, Revised

Oxford
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS
MDCCCLXXIX

[All rights reserved]
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE WORDS OF THE HOST TO THE PHYSICIAN AND THE PARDONER</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE PARDONER'S PROLOGUE</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE PARDONER'S TALE</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE PROLOGUE OF THE SECOND NUN'S TALE</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE PROLOGUE OF THE SECONDE NONNES TALE</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE PROLOGUE OF THE CANON'S YEOMAN'S TALE</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE CHANOUNS YEOMAN'S TALE</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE MANCEiple'S PROLOGUE</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE PARSON'S PROLOGUE</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group B</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group C</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group G</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group H</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group I</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Index</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Names</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subjects explained in the Notes</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION.

remarks upon Grammatical Forms occurring in Chaucer, beg leave to refer the reader to the Introduction to Dr. s edition of the Prologue, Knight's Tale, &c.; and to further remarks in the Introduction to my edition of the tes Tale, &c. (Clarendon Press Series), p. xlix. arks upon the Metre and Versification will be found in ruction to the Prioresses Tale, p. liii.; followed by a ul Analysis of Part I. of the Squire's Tale, p. lxvi.ccount of the manner in which the text of the present has been formed will be found in the same volume, i. It may suffice to repeat here that the text follows, in , the readings of the Ellesmere MS. (called 'E.' in the es), with occasional variations from six others, viz. the rt, Cambridge, Corpus, Petworth, Lansdowne, and Har- ISS., denoted respectively by the symbols Hn., C., Cp., ., and HI. Of these, all but the Harleian MS. are printed n Mr. Furnivall's splendid Six-text Edition, published for auer Society; whilst MS. HI. is substantially the same as t in Wright's, Morris's and Bell's editions. The text of itt's edition comes near to that of the Ellesmere MS., and ot much differ from that in the present volume. As in Prioresses Tale,' &c., the Grouping of the Tales and the ring of the lines exactly correspond with those of the Six- tion, for the purpose of convenience of reference. The here chosen belong partly to Group B (see Introd. to Tale, p. xii.); partly to Group C; and partly to Groups and I. Group G, containing the Second Nun's Tale and non's Yeoman's Tale, is printed here in full.
and that they were adopted by him, in order to show the exact condition in which we have come down to us in the existing Man of Law’s Tale, we find, in reality,

The latter of these is the real Prologue, as necessary to find another name for it in ll. 1–98. The name fixed upon by a term adopted in order so to name it as to indicate the connection between the dialogue or Link connecting the Clerk’s Tale (Group E, ll. 1213–1244, in Prior) came to be called the ‘Clerk-Man of Law’ Link. Hereupon there arose, however, cases are left in an imperfect state, in unconnected with the Man of Law. The result is, that the Link, i.e. the first 98 lines of Group E Man of Law Link. To avoid this awkwardness determined to call it the ‘Man of Law’ Link. That is to say, a passage preceding the Man of Law Link is not connected with the Man of Law, but anything to join it on to anything else in the text makes clear the meaning of the
MSS. it is wrongly called the Prologue of the Squire's Tale. The title Man-of-Law End-link expresses, therefore, that it is, in any case, a pendant or tag to the Man of Law's Tale, and that it must certainly follow that Tale, whatever other Tale it is to precede. These titles are, then, mere explanatory phrases, and are in all cases copied exactly from the Chaucer Society's Six-text edition. It is easy, by merely observing the names of these 'links,' to understand and to remember the exact extent to which the Tales were partially arranged by their author.

Pronunciation.

There is yet one other matter on which I have been asked to say somewhat, viz. the Pronunciation of Chaucer's English. This matter I purposely left untouched until students should have become somewhat more familiar with the nature of the Metre and Versification, so far as that can be understood by using the modern pronunciation only. It is now, perhaps, high time to insist on the importance of making some attempt towards understanding, if only in a rough and approximate manner, the great changes that have occurred in our pronunciation since Chaucer's days, so that the beauty of his rhythm may not be marred by the application to it of that system of English pronunciation which is in use at the present day; a system which might be applied to the reading of Dante or Boccaccio with the same fitness as to Chaucer, and with a very similar result as regards an approximation to the sounds with which the author was himself familiar.

On the subject of Pronunciation, my guide is, as a matter of course, Mr. Alexander J. Ellis, whose standard work on Early English Pronunciation is well-known, at any rate by name, to all

1 On Early English Pronunciation, with especial reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer. By Alexander J. Ellis, F.R.S., F.S.A., London, Trübner and Co. Parts I and II are dated 1869; Part III is dated 1870; Part IV is dated 1874, extending to p. 1432. The work will be completed in two more parts.
who have taken any interest in the matter. Mr. Ellis has treated the question so carefully and fully that an attempt on my part at giving a general notion of his results would be hardly fair to him or satisfactory to the reader; but he has, fortunately, drawn up a brief abstract of his results, which was printed Appendix A (pp. 253*-264*) in the second issue of the Ald edition of Chaucer, edited by Dr. Morris. It is here reprinted by permission of the publishers, after revision by Mr. Ellis, the present work.

I also draw attention to Mr. Sweet's book on English Sound with its full Word-list and abundance of examples\(^1\). The rest there arrived at sufficiently agree with Mr. Ellis's, and fully confirm them in all that is material.

The pronunciation of English during the fourteenth century differed materially from that now in use. The following is an abstract of the conclusions at which Mr. Ellis has arrived respecting the pronunciation probably in use among the highly educated southern speakers for whom Chaucer wrote, and directions subjoined for modern readers who wish to imitate it.

A long = \(ab\), as in father, alms, are; the usual continental sound of long \(a\). The present pronunciation of \(a\), as \(ai\) in art, seems not to have become thoroughly established till the beginning of the eighteenth century.

A short = \(\ddot{a}b\), the short sound of \(ab\), not now used in received English, but still common in the midland and northern provinces, the usual continental sound of short \(a\). The present very different pronunciation, as \(a\) in cat, agreeing with the sound in south-western and eastern counties, was not established till the seventeenth century; those, however, to whom \(\ddot{a}b\) is difficult to use this \(a\) in cat.

AA, the same as A long.

\(^{1}\) A History of English Sounds, from the earliest period, including investigation of the general laws of Sound-change, and full Word-By H. Sweet, Esq. (Published for the London Philological Society and English Dialect Society; price 4s. 6d.) Trübner and Co., 1864.
PRONUNCIATION.

Al = ab'ee, a diphthong consisting of ab pronounced briefly but
with a stress, and gliding on to e in one syllable; sometimes
used now in eye, and in the second syllable of Isaiah, as distinct
from the first; the German sound of ai, nearly the Italian abli
and the French ai. Those who have a difficulty with this sound
may use the ordinary pronoun I. The modern sound ai, as in
wait, was not thoroughly established till the seventeenth century,
although it began to make its appearance in the first half of the
sixteenth. Almost all dialects treat this combination differently
from long A. See EY.

AU = ab'soo, a diphthong consisting of ab pronounced briefly
but with a stress, and gliding on to oo in one syllable: not used
in modern English; the German au, nearly the Italian au in
Laura, the French aou. Those who have a difficulty with this
sound may use the ordinary ou in house. The modern sound of
au, as in Paul, was not established till the seventeenth century.

AW, the same as AU.

AY, the same as Al.

B, as at present.

C = k before a, o, u, or any consonant, and = s before e, i, y. It
was never called sh, as in the present sound of vicious, which
then formed three syllables, vi-ci-ous.

CCH = tsh, as in fetch.

CH = cb, as in such, cheese, and in Greek words occasionally k,
as at present.

D, as at present.

E long = ë in there, ai in yew, a in dare; that is, as ai is now
pronounced before r, or rather more broadly than before any
other consonant, and without any tendency to taper into the
sound of e; the German cb long, nearly the French ë, and Italian
open E. Those who find this sound too difficult may say ai as in
ail. The present use of the sound of ee in eel was not established
till the beginning of the eighteenth century, although two sounds
of e as in mere, there, were partially marked by ee and ea in the
latter part of the sixteenth century, and ea very gradually changed
to the sound of ee in the seventeenth. It is possible that a close
and open sound of this letter, as in the Italian e chiuso and e aperto (which are allowed to rhyme), or the French ê and ë (which are not allowed to rhyme), may have existed, but as they were allowed to rhyme in Chaucer, they cannot be separated with certainty. Dickens's Sain-rey Gamp has the close sound, the usual Sarah has the open sound.

E short = e in met, pen, spell.

E final = ë, or short e lightly and obscurely pronounced, as the final e in the German einè herlischè gutè Gabè ; nearly like the present a in idea or final er when the r is not trilled. This sound was always used in prose, when the final e was the mark of some final vowel in older forms of the language, when it marked oblique cases, feminine genders, plurals, inflections of verbs, adverbs, &c. But in poetry it was regularly elided altogether before a following vowel, and before be, bis, bim, bire = her, bere = their, hem = them, and occasionally before hath, badde, have, bow, her, bere = here. It was never pronounced in bire = her, bere = their, our = our, youre = your; and was frequently omitted in badde = had, were, time, more. It was occasionally, but rarely, omitted when necessary for the rhyme and metre, and for force of expression, in other positions, especially when it replaced an older vowel, or marked an oblique case, precisely as in modern German. As this pronunciation of the final e gradually fell out of use during the fifteenth century, when most of the MSS. of Chaucer now in existence were written, the final e is often incorrectly inserted and omitted in their orthography, and has to be omitted or restored from metric and other considerations. Practically the reader should always insert it when necessary for the metre, and never pronounce it as our final y, but always as above indicated.

EA, the same as long E, like ea in break, great, to wear, to tear, bear; seldom used except in the words ease, please. The modern sound of ea, as ee in eel, was not established till the eighteenth century.

EE, the same as long E, that is, as e'ë in e'er; in frequent use. The combination ee, with its modern sound of ee, was not established till past the middle of the sixteenth century.
PRONUNCIATION.

EI, the same as AI, with which it was constantly interchanged by the scribes, that is, nearly as the present pronoun I. The modern sound as ee belongs to the eighteenth century. See EY.

EO, the same as long E; seldom used except in the word opel, often spelled pepel. The modern sound of eo as ee, dates from the sixteenth century.

ES final, the mark of the plural, was generally pronounced as or is, even in those cases where the e is now omitted.

EU. There is much difficulty in arriving at a satisfactory conclusion respecting this combination, which is not frequent in names. Very possibly it was =ui in the Scotch puir, the long sound of the French u, German ü, in all words of French origin. This became like our modern ew during the seventeenth century, and may be so pronounced by those to whom the French sound is too difficult. In words not of French origin, eu = ai’oo, a diphthong consisting of ai pronounced briefly, but with a stress, and riding on to oo in one syllable, as in the Italian Europa. Neither sound is now used in received English, but both occur provincially. See EW.

EW, like EU, had possibly the sound of ui in the Scotch puir, else ai’oo, precisely as EU. The following words, generally written with ew in Chaucer, seem to have the sound of ui, or French u; blue, due, escewe, glue, a mew for hawks, remew, strew, w. The following, on the other hand, seem to have had the sound of ai’oo: dronkelew, fiew, beow, blue, knew, new, rew = row, w. spew, sbrew, throw, true.

EY, the same as AY, with which it is constantly interchanged by the scribe. The modern sound as ee belongs to the eighteenth century. AY, EY were possibly pronounced as e in there during the fifteenth century, in the north and west midland counties, and hence occasionally interchanged with long e in the orthography of some later or northern MSS. Modern dialects treat them as they do ai and not as they do the long e.

F = f; as at present.

G = g hard in all words not of French origin, and = j before e, in words of French origin. Sometimes G was j before other
the soft palate for k so imperfectly heard. After e, i, the tongue was put to approach the sound of a
lips were probably often rounded, giving Scotch quh; the former sound fell into as and a', or into as, oo. Gb was spoken like the German and Scotch, and occasionally omitted where written, on account of the neglect of either use according as it suited: it is still in full force in Scotland and in use in England from a few old people.
H initial = b, just as at present; but generally omitted in unaccented be, their, bem=them, and often in hab, I have I've told 'em; and in some French bonet, &c., it was probably omitted as it represented a very faint sound of the guttural it dwindled before it became entirely extinguished.
PRONUNCIATION.

in English, but is not known in French and Italian\(^1\), may say ee, as in mien, mean, but they will be quite wrong if they pronounce it as at present in mine.

I short = i, as in pit, stiff, pin; not as in French or Italian. Compare English finny, fisb, with French fini, fisbe.

I consonant = j.

I E, before a consonant in many MSS., but only in French words, was possibly the same as long E, with which it was often interchanged by the scribe. The modern sound of ee dates from the seventeenth century. I E final and unaccented as in berie, merie, must be pronounced as two syllables i-e, the first probably as the short I just described, and the second as the final E already described. But I E final, then more often written YE, has more frequently the accent on the I or Y, and then that letter was pronounced as Chaucer’s long I, that is nearly as ee. Thus melodie (commonly written melodye) had nearly the same sound as it has in modern French songs when sung.

J = j, was not distinguished from I consonant in MSS.

K, as at present.

L, as at present.

L E final, probably as at present in little = lit’l, except when e is inflectional.

LH (which does not occur in this edition) was the same as simple L. It was scarcely ever used, but in the thirteenth century it was probably a hissed i, not unlike (but not the same as) Welsh ll.

M, as at present.

N, as at present. There is no reason to suppose that it was nasalized in French words as , in modern French. An, on, in French words were often written aun, ou, and were probably always sounded as these combinations in Chaucer’s orthography, that is as ab’oon, oon.

---

\(^1\) Extensive observation shows that the sound is still very common in English, even where the speaker thinks he says ee as in three; and even Italian singers involuntarily introduce it when trying to sing our ee, their i, on a low note.
NG had probably three values, as at present in *sing, singer, linger, change*. It is not possible to determine with certainty whether it was generally a simple *ng* as in *singer*, or an *ng* followed by *g*, as at present in *longer, linger, finger*, when medial or final, so that the modern custom alone can be followed.

O long was *oa* in *aar, boar, o in more*, that is a somewhat broader sound than *oa* in *moan, o in stone*, and with no tendency to taper into *oo*. It is still heard in the provinces, and is like the Italian open *o* or *o aperto*; approaching *au*, but not so broad. Those who find the sound difficult to pronounce may say *ob*, which was not established till the seventeenth century. It had also the sound of *oo*, generally in those words where it is still *oo*, as *prove, move*, or where it has become *u* in *but, as love, above*. Just as *E* long and *EE* gave place to two sounds, written *ee* and *ea* in the latter part of the sixteenth century, as in modern *peer, pear*, so *O* long and *OO* gave place to two sounds, written *oo* and *oa* in the latter part of the sixteenth century, as in modern *boor, boar*. It is possible therefore that even as early as the fourteenth century, and perhaps still earlier, these changes were prepared by a division of both sounds into *close* (as in Italian *fede, sete, avere, vendere*, *credova, &c.*; *ombra, ondo, amore, amoroso, &c.*) and *open* (as in Italian *regola, predica, cedo, &c.*; *buono, umano, oro, poco, &c.*), nearly modern *ail, air, mole, more*, supposing *ail, mole*, not to have tapering vowels. Mr. Sweet has endeavoured to make these distinctions in his ‘History of English Sounds,’ but there is no evidence from rhymes, and dialectal investigations (as yet very incomplete) have so far failed to confirm the conclusion.

O short was *öa*, the short sound of the last, the regular sound of short *o* on the continent, very common in the provinces, but not so broad as the modern *o* in *got*, which was not established till the seventeenth century, but may be used for *öa* by those who find the proper sound too difficult. In a few words short O had also occasionally the sound of short *ü* in *bull, push, put*; where it replaced Anglo-Saxon *u*, and was pronounced *ö* in the sixteenth century. These cases correspond almost precisely to those in which it is now pronounced as *u* in *but, as sonne, wonder.*
PRONUNCIATION.

OA does not seem to have been used in Chaucer. It was introduced for long o in the sixteenth century.

OE is very rarely used, chiefly in poepel for people and in reprove for reprove, to show the change of sound. It was the same as long E.

OI was perhaps generally oo'ee, a diphthong consisting of the sound of oo pronounced briefly, but with a stress, gliding on to ee in one syllable, as sailors pronounce buoy, almost as in wooing, or Italian lui, and very like French oui, as distinct from oui. It may have occasionally had the sound of Chaucer's o short (open o, nearly o in got) followed by ee, nearly as modern joy.

OO, the same as long O, with which it is constantly interchanged. The modern sound of oo in pool dates from after the middle of the sixteenth century.

OU had three sounds: properly it was = modern oo long, as in loud, house, called loud, boos; occasionally it was used for ü in bull, as in oes [us], outer; and sometimes for the diphthong oo'oo, that is, the sound of long O gliding into modern oo, almost the same as in modern soul, except that the first sound was broader. The three cases may be distinguished pretty accurately thus:—OU was oo, where it is now pronounced as in loud; OU was ü, where it is now pronounced as in double; OU was oo'oo where it is now occasionally pronounced oo'oo as in soul.

OUGH must be considered as OU followed by GH. In drought it was drukkt, in plough it was plookt; in sought, bought, where it has now the sound of au, it was probably ð'oo-κb, or nearly our modern tapering ob followed by κb; but, if the reader feels any difficulty, he may use the modern ou in cow followed by the guttural κb, as foukkt. Many modern dialects treat ought in this way.

OW was the same as OU, but was more commonly used when final.

OY was the same as OI.

P, as at present.

PH = f, as at present.

QU, as at present.

VOL. III.
INTRODUCTION.

R as r in ring, berring, carry; always trilled, never as now in car, serf, third, cord. Hence it did not lengthen or alter the preceding vowel, so that ber in berd must have the r as well trilled as in berring, nearly the same as now in Scotland and Ireland, but possibly not so strongly, when not preceding a vowel.

RE final, probably the same as ER, except when ē was inflectional.

RH, where it is found in MSS. of the period (it is not in this edition), was probably r as now, but a truly hissed rb occurs in some dialects.

S was more frequently a sharp s when final, than at present; thus was, was, is, all had s sharp. But between two vowels, and when the final e had the e omitted after long vowels or voiced consonants, it was probably z, a letter which sometimes interchanged with s, but was rarely used. S was never sb or zb as at present, thus vision had three syllables, as vi-si-o-n.

SCH was sb, as in shall.

SH sometimes used for SCH and pronounced as at present.

SSH, used occasionally for double SCH when the sound of sb followed a short vowel.

T, as at present, but final -tion was in two syllables, -si-o-n.

TH had two sounds, as in thin, then, and there is no means of telling whether these sounds were distributed differently from what they now are, except that with probably rhymed to smith. They can therefore be pronounced as at present.

U long only occurred in French words, and probably always had the sound of Scotch ui in puir, or French u, German ü, a sound which remained nearly to the eighteenth century. Those who find this sound too difficult, may pronounce as the present long English u in tune, which was not considered to be the normal sound till the seventeenth century.

U short was generally short ü, as in bull, pull, the modern sound of u in but not having been established till the seventeenth century. Occasionally, however, it was used for short i or short e, precisely as in the modern busy, bury; these cases can generally be distinguished by seeing that they would be now so pro-
nounced. Possibly the $u$ then represented an ancient sound of short French $u$.

$U$ consonant = $u$. In the MSS, $u$ and $v$ are confused as vowel or consonant, and $u$ vowel initial is commonly written $v$.

$V$ vowel, the same as $U$.

$V$ consonant, the same as at present.

$W$ vowel, used in diphthongs as a substitute for $U$, and sometimes used absolutely for $oo$, as $wde = oo\rlq$, herberw = $berberoo$.

$W$ consonant, the same as at present.

$WH$, a blowing through the lips when in the position for $w$, something like a whistle; still generally pronounced in the north of England, but commonly confused with $w$ in the south. To foreigners, when initial, it sounds $b\rlq$, as in $wan = b\rlq\rlqbn$ nearly, but $ub\rlqbn$ correctly. In Chaucer it often occurs final in place of $GH$ (which see) when pronounced as the Scotch $qub$. It was the transition sound of $GH$ from $hb$ to the modern $f$.

$WR$ was probably pronounced as an $r$ with rounded lips, which produces the effect of a $w$ and $r$ sounded together, as in the French $roi$. Those who find a difficulty in speaking it thus, may pronounce $w\rlq r$, with the faintest sound of a vowel between the $w$ and $r$, almost $w\rlq\rlq r$ for $wrlqte$, but not making an additional syllable; such sounds are still heard provincially.

$X$ was $ks$, as at present.

$Y$ vowel, long and short, had precisely the same value as I long and short.

$Y$ consonant was generally written with the same character as $GH$, which resembled $\rlq$ ($\rlq$), and may have had that sound of $GH$ which resembled a hissed $y$. But probably it had become thoroughly $y$ in Chaucer’s time, and should be so pronounced.

$Z$ = $z$, as now, and never $zb$.

The position of the accent was not always the same as at present. French words seem to have been pronounced with equal stress on all the syllables, as at present. Some English terminations, as $-and$, $-ing$, $-ly$, always had a considerable stress, even when a preceding syllable was accented.

If we adopt most of the easy modern English substitutes for
INTRODUCTION.

the difficult old sounds, as pointed out in the preceding table, but use *db* for the flat sound of *tb* in *thee*, *ū* for *u* in *bull*, *ū* as in Scotch for French *u*, and *aby*, *abw* for *āv*, *ab*‘ow* as described under AI, AW, mark the pronounced final *e* by *é*, and indicate the accent, when it does not fall on the first syllable only, by (‘), we may write the pronunciation of the first lines of the Canterbury Tales as follows. Observe that the first line begins with an accented syllable, without a precedent short syllable, as is not unfrequent in Chaucer.

When that Ah‘preel with *is shooris swotho*
Dhū drookht of March hath persed toh dhē rohtē,
And bahdēhē evree vahyn in swich lee‘koor’
Of which ver’tui’ enjen‘red is dhū floor;
When Zefirūs, sīk, with *is swaite braithě*
Inspee‘red hath in evree holt and haithē
Dhē tendre kropēs, and dhē yūngē sūnū
Hath in dhē ram *is hilē koors irīnē,*
And smahlé foolēs mahken melohdee‘ē
Dhat slaipen al dhē nikht with ophem ee‘ē,—
Soh priketh *emi nah’tuir* in her kohraa‘jēs,
Dhan longen folk toh gohn on pilgrimaa‘jēs,
And palmerz for toh saiken strahnínē stronđēs
Toh fērnū halwēz kooth in sūndree londēs,
And spex‘alee‘, from evree sheeries endē
Of Engelond, to Khown‘terber‘ee dhahy wendē
Dhē hohlee blīsfūl marteer for toh saikō
Dhat hern hath holpen when hahy hahy wuir saikē.
Beefel’ dhat in hahy sai‘zoon’ ou a dhy
At Soothwerk at dhy Tab‘ard’ as Ec lāzy,
Reede toh wenden on mee pirlimaj‘jē
Toh Khown‘terber‘ee with ūl derou‘t kohrah‘jō,
At nikht was koom in‘toh’ dhat ostelī‘ō
Well neen and twenteet in a kūmpanneē
Of sūndree folk, bee ah‘ventuir‘ ifal‘ū
In fel‘ahw‘sheep‘, and pilgrimz wair dhahy allē,
Dhat tohwerd Khown‘terber‘ee wolden reede,
Dhē chahmbrez and dhē stabblīz wairen weedē
And wel wai wairen aixed atē bestō.
And shortlee, when dhē sinē was toh restē
Soh had Ec spohken with *em evreekh ohn,*
Dhat Ec was of ‘ēr fel‘ahw‘sheep’ anōhn‘,
And mahdē forwerd aīllee for toh reexē
Toh talhk oor wahy dhai as Ec yoo devec‘ēē.
PRONUNCIATION.

It is proper to add that Mr. Ellis's results were chiefly obtained from a careful examination of the Harleian MS. (HL), the spelling of which does not altogether agree with that of the Ellesmere MS., here chiefly followed. The only result in which I do not feel full confidence is that which makes the sound of ey identical with that of ay. I look upon these rather as permissible rimes than as real ones, and should prefer to regard ey and ei as indicating the sound ë, that is, a diphthong consisting of e long (= in there, or ai in pair) pronounced briefly but with a stress, and gliding on to e. I do not find that they are interchanged by the scribe of the Ellesmere MS. in all cases, though they are so frequently. There are certain words, such as d eye, to die, tw e 1, twain, bur g e y, a burgess, eig h t, eig h t, que ynte, quaint, rec ey n e, to receive, ply e, to play, &c. which seem to be spelt with ey rather than with ay; and, on the other hand, may be cited day e, a day, pay e, to please, array e d, array e d, nap, may, &c. which seem to be spelt with ay rather than with ey. I offer this criticism with diffidence, merely saying that I am unable as yet to see how words like A.S. weg, ple g a, twe gen, should have passed in Middle English into way, play, tway n, as pronounced by Mr. Ellis, and have reverted nearly to their original sound in our way, play, and twain. With respect to way (written w ay, w e y), which undoubtedly rimes, or seems to rime, with day, I would suggest that it may have had two pronunciations; as was certainly the case with d eye, to die, which is also spelt dyr, and made to rime with remedy, a remedy. With regard also to such a word as our modern receive, we can easily understand that it was once pronounced so as to rime with the modern word raw, but the riming of its vowel very nearly with the modern rive is much less clear. On this point, therefore, I should plead that some doubt may be allowed to remain.

I may add here that the long sound of i is generally denoted by y in the Ellesmere MS. Cf. w y l o m, p. r, l. 34, with rich e in

1 Not in the Ellesmere MS. only, but in nearly all. Tw ey occurs 7 times at the end of a line. In 5 places it is spelt with ey or ei in all the 6 MSS.; in 1 place, in 5 of them; and in the last instance, in 4 of them.
INTRODUCTION.

the line following. Our modern $j$ is commonly written as capital $I$, as in Ingem, B. 688; but the small $i$ is sometimes used, as in ioye, B. 409. When $u$ is written between two vowels, it stands for $v$; as in every (every), B. 152; devyse (devyse), B. 154; byven (byven), B. 175. In a few words, $v$ is written for $u$, at the beginning; as in up, use, unto, for up, use, unto.

I now proceed to some general remarks upon the Tales in the present selection.

The Man of Law's Tale. The Introduction to the Man of Law's Prologue (also called, for brevity, the Man-of-Law Headlink) and the Prologue itself, are printed in The Priories Tale, &c. (Clarendon Press), pp. i-5. See also the Introduction to that volume, p. xx. The Head-link and Prologue together contain 133 lines, so that the Tale itself begins, in the present volume, with l. 134. I have already stated my belief that The Man of Law's Tale is a piece of Chaucer's earlier workmanship, and that it was revised for insertion among the Tales, with the addition of a Prologue, about 1386. Tyrwhitt has drawn attention to the fact that a story, closely agreeing with The Man of Law's Tale, is found in Gower's Confessio Amantis, Book II. He was misled by the expression "som men wolde sayn" in l. 1009 into supposing that Chaucer took the story from Gower; see note to that line, p. 137. Chronology at once settles the question; for Chaucer's tale, written before 1385, could not have been derived from Gower's, written about 1393. The simple explanation of the matter is, that both our poets drew from a common source. That common source has, fortunately, been discovered, in the Life of Constance, as narrated in the Anglo-Norman Chronicle of Nicholas Trivet, written about A.D. 1334. Mr. Thomas Wright, in his edition of the Canterbury Tales, pointed out Trivet's Chronicle as containing the original of the story as told by Gower. That it also contains the original of the story as told by Chaucer, is evident from the publications of the Chaucer Society. Trivet's version of the story was edited for that Society by Mr. Brock in 1872, with an English translation, and a careful
line-by-line analysis of it, shewing clearly the exact extent to which Chaucer followed his original. The name of the publication is 'Originals and Analogues of some of Chaucer's Canterbury Tales,' published for the Chaucer Society; Part I, 1872; Part II, 1875. To this I am indebted for much of the information here given. It appears that Nicholas Trivet was an English Dominican friar, who died some time after 1334. A short account of him in Latin, with a list of works ascribed to him, is to be found in Quetif and Echard's Scriptores Ordinis Praedicatorum*, tom. i. pp. 561-565; also a notice in English of his life and some of his works, in the Preface to T. Hog's edition of Trivet's Annales. Mr. Brock notices eighteen of his works, amongst which it will suffice to mention here (a) his Annales ab origine mundi ad Christum (Royal MS. 13 B. xvi, &c.); (b) his Annales sex Regum Angliae, qui a comitibus Andegavensis [counts of Aojou] originem traxerunt (Arundel MSS. 46 and 220, Harl. MSS. 29 and 4322, &c.); and (c) his Anglo-Norman Chronicle, quite a distinct work from the Latin Annales (MS. Arundel 56, &c.). Of the last there are numerous copies, MS. Arundel 56 being one of the best, and therefore selected to be printed from for the Chaucer Society. The heading runs thus:--'Ci comence les Chroniques de Frere Nichol Trivet escript a dame Marie, la fille moun seignour le ROI Edward, le fitz Henri;' shewing that it was written for the princess Mary, daughter of Edward I, born in 1278, who became a nun at Amesbury in 1285. The story of Constance begins on leaf 45, back. Gower follows Trivet rather closely, with but few omissions, and only one addition of any importance, about 30 lines long. Chaucer tells the same story as Trivet, but tells it in his own language, and in much shorter compass. He omits little or nothing of importance, and alters only the details. . . . Chaucer's additions are many; of the 1029 lines of which the Tale consists, about 350 are Chaucer's additions. The passages are these:--II. 190-203; 270-287; 295-315;
INTRODUCTION.

330-343; 351-357; 358-371; 400-410; 421-427; 449-462; 470-504; 631-658; 701-714; 771-784; 811-819; 825-868: 925-945; 1037-1043; 1052-1078; 1132-1141 (Brock).

Tyrwhitt pointed out that much the same story is to be found in the Lay of Emarë (MS. Cotton, Calig. A. ii, fol. 69), printed by Ritson in the second volume of his Metrical Romances. He observes:—'the chief differences are, that Emarë is originally exposed in a boat for refusing to comply with the desires of the Emperor her father; that she is driven on the coast of Galyi, or Wales, and married to the King of that country. The contrivances of the step-mother, and the consequences of them, are the same in both stories.'

Mr. Thomas Wright further observes:—'The treachery of King Æella's mother enters into the French Romance of the Chevalier au Cigne, and into the still more ancient Anglo-Saxon romance of King Offa, preserved in a Latin form by Matthew Paris. It is also found in the Italian collection, said to have been composed in 1378, under the title of Il Pecorone di ser Giovanni Fiorentino (an imitation of the Decameron), gior. x. no. 1. The treason of the Knight who murders Hermengilde is an incident in the French Roman de la Violette, and in the English metrical romance of Le Bone Florence of Rome (printed in Ritson's collection); and is found in the English Gesta Romanorum, c. 69 (ed. Madden)¹, joined, in the latter place, with Constance's adventure with the steward. It is also found in Vincent of Beauvais², and other writers.' The tale in the Gesta Romanorum is called 'Merelaus the Emperor' (MS. Harl. 7333, leaf 201), and is printed in the Originals and Analogues (Chaucer's Society), Part I, pp. 57-70. Mr. Furnivall adds—'This tale was versified by Occleve, who called Merelaus "Gerelaus," and Warton quotes Occleve's lines describing how the "feendly man" stabs the Earl's child, and then puts the bloody knife into the sleeping Empress's hand—

² Warton gives the reference, viz. to his Speculum Historiale, lib. vii. c. 90, fol. 86 a.
In the Originals and Analogues, Part i. pp. 71–84, is also printed an extract from Matthew Paris, _Vita Offae Primi_, ed. Wats, 1684, pp. 965–968, containing the story of 'King Offa's intercepted Letters and banished Queen.'

Some account of Ser Giovanni is given in Dunlop's History of Fiction, 3rd ed. 1845, p. 247. He was a Florentine notary, who began his Tales in 1378, at a village in the neighbourhood of Forli. His work is called Il Pecorone, i.e. the Dunce, 'a title which the author assumed, as some Italian academicians styled themselves Insensati, Stolidi, &c., appellations in which there was not always so much irony as they imagined.' The 1st tale of the 10th Day is thus analysed by Dunlop. 'Story of the Princess Denise of France, who, to avoid a disagreeable marriage with an old German prince, escapes in disguise to England, and is there received in a convent. The king, passing that way, falls in love with and espouses her. Afterwards, while he was engaged in a war in Scotland, his wife brings forth twins; but the queen-mother sends to acquaint her son that his spouse had given birth to two monsters. In place of his majesty's answer, ordering them to be nevertheless brought up with the utmost care, she substitutes a mandate for their destruction, and also for that of the queen. The person to whom the execution of this command is entrusted, allows the queen to depart with her twins to Genoa. At the end of some years she discovers her husband at Rome, on his way to a crusade; she there presents him with his children, and is brought back with them in triumph to England.' Dunlop points out the likeness of this story to those told by Chaucer and Gower, mentions the Lay of Emarè, and adds:—'it is the subject, too, of a very old French romance, published in 4to, without date, entitled _Le Roman de la Belle Helene de Constantinople_. There, as in Emarè, the heroine escapes to England to avoid a marriage, &c. At length she is ordered to be burnt, but is saved by the Duke of Gloster's niece kindly offering to
xxvi

INTRODUCTION.

personate her on that occasion.' The story appears again in a collection of tales by Straparola, in the 4th tale of the 6th night; but Straparola merely borrowed it from Ser Giovann. See Dunlop, Hist. Fiction, 3rd ed. p. 268.

It occurs to me that Shakespeare, in delineating Imogen, did not forget Chaucer's portrait of Constance.

The Pardoner's Prologue. In this Prologue, the Pardoner made to expiate upon the value of his relics. It is very likely that Chaucer here remembered one of the tales in Boccaccio's Decamerone (Day vi. Tale 10), concerning a certain Friar Cipolla, of the Order of St. Anthony, of which Dunlop gives some account in his History of Fiction, 3rd ed. pp. 227, 228. He gave a long account (says Dunlop) of his travels as far as India and told how on his return he had visited the Patriarch of Jerusalem, who had shewn him innumerable relics: among other: a lock of the hair of the seraph that appeared to St. Francis, paring of the cherub's nail, a few of the rays of the blessed star that guided the Magi in the east, the jawbone of Lazarus, &c. He adds—'This tale of Boccaccio drew down the censure of the Council of Trent, and is the one which gave the greatest umbrage to the church. The author has been defended by his commentators, on the ground that he did not intend to censure the respectable orders of friars, but to expose those wanderin mendicants who supported themselves by imposing on the credulity of the people; that he did not mean to ridicule the sacred relics of the church, but those which were believed so in consequence of the fraud and artifice of monks.' But it must have been hard to draw this line. In the note to l. 349, p. 14: I have drawn attention to Heywood's close plagiarism from Chaucer, in the passage from The Four P.'s, printed in the note to l. 701 of Dr. Morris's edition of Chaucer's Prologue; also to Sir David Lyndsay's Satyre of the Three Estates, ll. 2037-2121.

The Pardoner's Tale. A considerable part of this Tale occupied with digressions; the Tale itself is told simply, briefly and well, occupying ll. 463-484, 661-894. Mr. Thomas Wrigl remarks—'This beautiful moral story appears to have bee
rom a Fabliau, now lost, but of which the mere outline is first noted by Tyrwhitt] in the Cento Novelle, Nov. Ixxxii, as well as the story itself by Chaucer. In his History of Fiction, p. 203, says—'It is evident from the Cento Novelle Antiche, that it was not a new and production, but a compilation of stories already current world. The collection was made towards the end of the sixteenth century, and was formed from episodes in Romances of the Fabliaux of the French Trouvères; the ancient Novells of Italy; recent incidents; or jests and repartees by oral tradition. That the stories derived from these were compiled by different authors, is evident from the variety of style; but who those authors were, is still a mystery in the literary annals of Italy.' The story is not exactly the same in all the editions of the Cento Novelle; and two different forms of it have been printed by Mr. Furnivall, in his Chaucer Soc., Pt. ii. pp. 131–133. Of the former is from the edition of 1525, with the title Le Novelle Antike, where it appears as Nov. Ixxxii. It is very similar to this effect. As Christ was walking with his disciples in a wild country, some of His disciples espied some golden sand, and said, 'Let us take some of these for our use.' But reproved them, warning them that they would soon see the effects of avarice. Soon after, two men found the gold; of them went to fetch a mule to carry it off, whilst the other remained to guard it. On his return with the mule, the offered to his companion two loaves which he had bought it. The latter refused at the moment, and shortly after took an opportunity of stabbing the other as he chanced to be walking down the road. He then took the two loaves, gave one to his companion, and ate the other himself. The loaves were poisoned; in and mule fell dead. Then our Lord, passing by once more, pointed out to His disciples the three dead bodies. Under other version is from the edition of 1572, entitled Libro delle, et di bel Parlar Gentile; where it is Nov. Ixxxii. much more like Chaucer's story, and is occasionally
quoted in the Notes as the 'Italian text.' Mr. Furnivall's analysis of the story is as follows.

'A hermit lying down in a cave, sees there much gold. At once he runs away, and meets three robbers. They see no one chasing the hermit, and ask him what he is running away from. "Death, which is chasing me." "Where is he? shew him us." "Come with me, and I will." The hermit takes them to the cave, and shews them Death—the gold. They laugh at him, and make great joy, and say, "The hermit is a fool." Then the three robbers consult as to what they shall do. The second proposes that one shall go to the town, buy bread and wine and all things needful; but the crafty Devil puts into the heart of the robber who goes to the town, that he shall feed himself, poison his mates, and then have all the treasure, and be the richest man in that country. Meantime, the other robbers plot to murder their mate as soon as he comes back with the bread and wine, and then share the treasure. Their mate returns from the city, and they murder him at once. Then they eat the food he has brought, and both fall dead. Thus doth our Lord God requite traitors. The robbers found death. The wise man fled, and left the gold free.'

As the original is not long, I here reprint it, for the reader's convenience.

'Qui conta d' uno Romito che andando per un luogo foresto trouò molto grande Tesoro.

'Andando vn giorno vn Romito per vn luogo foresto: si trouò vna grandissima grotta, laquale era molo celata, et rirandosi verso là per riposarsi, pero che era assai affaticato; come e' giunse alla grotta si la vide in certo luogo molto tralucere, impercio che vi hauea molto oro: e si tosto come il conobbe, incontenente si partio, et comincio a correre per lo deserto, quanto e' ne potea andare. Correndo così questo Romito s' intoppò in tre grandi scherani, liquali stauano in quella foresta per rubare chi unque vi passaua. Ne gia mai si erano accorti, che questo oro vi fosse. Hor vedendo costoro, che nascosti si stauano, fuggir così questo huomo, non hauendo
persona dietro che 'l cacciasse, alquanto hebbero temenza, ma pur se li pararono dinanzi per sapere perché fuggiuva, che di ciò molto si marauigliauano. Ed elli rispose et disse. "Fratelli miei, io fuggo la morte, che mi vien dietro cacciando mi." Que' non vedendo ne huomo, ne bestia, che il cacciasse, dissero: "Mostraci chi ti caccia: et menaci cola oue ella è." Allhora il Romito disse loro, "venite meco, et mostrerollaui," pregandoli tutta via che non andassero ad essa, impercio che elli per se la fuggia. Ed egliino volendola trovare, per vedere come fosse fatta, nol domandouano di altro. Il Romito vedendo che non potea piu, et hauendo paura di loro, gli condusse alla grotta, onde egli s'era partito, e disse loro, "Qui è la morte, che mi cacciau," et mostra loro l'oro che u'era, ed egliino i conobbero incontanente, et molto si cominciarono a rallegrare, et a fare insieme grande sollazzo. Allhora accommiatuarono questo buono huomo; et egli sen' ando per i fatti suoi: et quelli cominciarono a dire tra loro, come elli era semplice persona. Rimasero questi scberani tutti et tre insieme, a guardare questo hauere, et incomin- ciarono a ragionare quello che voleano fare. L'uno rispuose et disse. "A me pare, da che Dio ci ha dato così alta ventura, che noi non ci partiamo di qui, insino a tanto che noi non ne portiamo tutto questo hauere." Et l'altro disse: "non facciamo così; l'vno di noi ne tolga alquanto, et vada alla cittade et vendalo, et rechi del pane et del vino, et di quello che ci bisogna, et di ciò s'ingegni il meglio che puote: faccia egli, pur com' elli ci fornisca." A questo s'accordarono tutti et tre insieme. Il De- monio ch'è ingegnoso, et reo d'ordinare di fare quanto male e puote, mise in cuori a costui che andaua alla citta per lo forni- mento, "da ch'io sarò nella cittade" (dicea fra se medesimo) "io voglio mangiare et bere quanto mi bisogna, et poi fornirmi di certe cose delle quali io ho mestiere hora al presente: et poi auuelenero quello che io porto a miei compagni: si che, da ch'elli saranno morti amendeu, si saro io poi Signore di tutto quello hauere, et secondo che mi pare egli è tanto, che io saro poi il piu ricco huomo di tutto questo paese da parte d'hauere:" et come li venne in pensiero, così fecce. Prese viuanda per se
quanto gli bisogno, et poi tutta l'altra auuelenoe, e così la pia a que suoi compagini. Intanto ch'ando alla cittade secondo detto hauemo: se elli pensoe et ordine male per uccidei suoi compagni, accio che ogni cosa li rimanesse: quelli pen di lui non meglio ch'elli di loro, et dissero tra loro: "Si t come questo nostro compagno tornera col pane et col vini con l' altre cose che ci bisognano, si l' uccideremo, et poi maramo quanto uorremo, e sara poi tra noi due tutto questo gran hauere. Et come meno parti ne saremo, tanto n'hauercmo gior parte ciascuno di noi." Hor viene quelli, che era ito cittade a comperare le cose che bisognaua loro. Tornato a compagni incontenante che l' videro, gli furono addosso co lancie et con le coltell, et l' uccisero. Da che l' hebbero men mangiarono di quello che egli hauea recato: et si tosto e furono satolli, amendue cadder morti: et così morirono tutte: che l' uno vecise l' altro si come vdlto hauete, et non he l'hauere: et così paga Domenedio li traditori, che egli andar caendo la morte, et in questo modo la trouarono, et si e ellino n' erano degni. Et il saggio sauiamente la fuggio, e l' rimase libero como di prima."

Mr. Furnivall has also reprinted Novella xlii from the Novi of Morlinus, ed. Naples, 1520 (reprinted at Paris in 1799); rected by the Paris edition of Morlinus' Works, 1855. story is very brief, being as follows.

'De illis qui, in Tiberi reperto thesauro, ad inuicem corroborantes, ueneno et ferro pericere.

'Magnus magico susurro in Tiberi delitere thesaurum qua in cauea spirituum reuclatione cognouit: quo reperto, cum n um siclorum cumulum aspiceret, communi uoto pars socio proximum oppidum seu castellum, epulas aliasque res compurti, accedunt: ceteri uero copiosum interea ignem instru thesaurnque custodiunt. Dunque in castellum conueniis radice malorum cupiditate affecti, ut consocios thesauri pruarent, diro ueneno illos interimere statuerunt: cum di in cauponem epulantes, ebrii ac uino sepulti, aliquatenus mo fecere. In Tiberi expectantes atque esurientes, consocio
mora incusabant: Iouemque adiurauerunt, repetantes ex oppido atque castello et uita et thesauri parte priuare. Sicque ad inuicem conspirantes, non multo post adueniunt ex pago illi, uinarios, utres, pullos, pisces, aliaque tucetosi saporis pulmentaria atque prelectum hircum ferentes. Quibus obuiam dederunt leuani, illosque omnes morti imparatos incutiosque insecuere atque crudeli strage perdiderunt. Pone sumptis cibariis diro uceno tabefactis, insigni iocunditate gnauiet cuncta ministrare incipiunt; alter uerrit, alter sternit, pars coquuit, atque tuceta confignat. Pone omnibus scitule appositis, ac mensa largiter instructa edere ceperunt, omniaque ingurgitauerunt. Commodum ex eis mensa erectis erant (iic) quod, morte preuenti, cum sociis uitam fato reddentes, sub elemento mortui et sculti remansere.

‘ Nouella indicat: nec esse de malo cogitandum: nam quod quis seminat, metit.’

The Second Nun’s Tale. There is a peculiar interest about this Tale, because, as compared with the rest, it so clearly shews us Chaucer’s mode of compilation; his advance from close translation to a more free handling of materials; and his change of rhythm, from stanzas to rimed couplets. The closeness of the translation and the rhythm alike point to early workmanship; and, most fortunately, we are not left to conjecture in this matter, since our author himself refers to this piece, by the Title of the Lxx of Saint Cecile, in his Prologue to the Legend of Good Women, l. 426. It was probably written a considerable time before the Legend. Mr. Furnivall assigns to it the conjectural date of 1373, which cannot be very far wrong. The expression in l. 78, ‘Yet preye I yow that reden that I wryte’ clearly shews that it was neither originally written as a tale of the series, nor properly revised; and the expression in l. 62, ‘And though that I, vnworthy some of Eue,’ cannot fail to strike the reader as a singular one to be put into the mouth of a nun. We possess, in fact, the Tale in its original shape, without either revision or introduction. What is called the ‘Prologue’ is, in fact, nothing of the sort; it is merely such an introduction as was suitable for the Legend at the time of translation. We have no description
INTRODUCTION.

of the Second Nun, no introduction of her as a narrator, nor anything to connect the Tale with those that precede it. There is no authority, indeed, for attributing it to the Second Nun at all beyond the mere rubrics printed at pp. 61, 63, and 81.

It is not even made quite clear to us who the Second Nun was. We may, however, conclude that, as the Prioress was herself a Nun, i.e. the first nun (see Prol. l. 118), the person intended is the 'Another Nonne' mentioned in the Prologue, l. 163, but mentioned nowhere else. The first line of the Canon's Yeoman's Prologue (p. 82) merely mentions 'the lyf of Seint Cecile' without any hint as to the supposed narrator of it. The Prioress herself, on the other hand, is properly introduced to us, and her Tale is carefully inserted in its right place.

An analysis of the so-called Prologue to this Tale is given in the Notes, at p. 165; cf. note to l. 84, p. 169. Tyrwhitt pointed out that the Tale itself is translated from the Life of St. Cecilia as given in the Legenda Aurea (or Golden Legend) of Jacobus Januensis, or Jacobus a Voragine, who was archbishop of Genoa at the close of the 13th century. Tyrwhitt calls it 'literally' translated, but this is not quite the case; for our author has made several judicious alterations, suppressions, and additions, some of which are pointed out in the notes; see, e.g. notes to ll. 346, 380, 395, 484, 489, 505, and 535. However, most of the alterations occur towards the end of the story, and Chaucer follows the original author closely as far as l. 343; see note to l. 346. The best text of this Life of St. Cecilia is that given in the second edition of the Aurea Legenda by Dr. Th. Grisse, published at Leipsic in 1850. Mr. Furnivall has printed it at length, from Grisse's first edition, 1846, in his Originals and Analogues, Pt. ii. pp. 192-205; side by side with the French version of La Legende Dorée, as translated by Jehan de Vignay, printed at Paris in 1513. The suggestion was made in 'Bell's' edition of Chaucer (really edited by Mr. Jephson), that Chaucer's original was not the Latin, but the French text. A very slight comparison shows at once that this idea is wrong (as Mr. Furnivall points out), and that Chaucer unquestionably followed the Latin original; see
THE SECOND NUN'S TALE.

It is, however, probable that Chaucer have seen the French version also, as he seems to have from it the idea of his first four stanzas, ll. 1–28. But he taken thence merely the general idea, and no more; see es to l. 5, p. 165, and to l. 7, p. 166. The Invocation to the sin bears some resemblance to the Prioresses Prologue; see e to l. 50, p. 168. It contains, moreover, a passage which is thee translation of one in Dante’s Paradiso; see note to l. 36, 167. I may add here that Mr. Furnivall has also reprinted more lives of St. Cecilia, one from Caxton’s Golden Legende, English prose, ed. 1483, fol. cclxxvij, back; the other in glish verse, in a metre similar to that used by Robert of oxford, from MS. Ashmole 43, leaf 185, back, in the Bod- in library, Oxford. These do not throw much further light on the matter; and, in fact, the only text really worth con- ting is the Latin one of Jacobus a Voragine, which is fre- ently quoted in the notes. Of this Dunlop says, in his History Fiction, 3rd ed. p. 286—‘The grand repertory of pious fiction ms to have been the Legenda Aurea of Jacobus de Voragine, Jenoese Dominican, a work entitled Golden from its popu- ity, on the same principle that this epithet was bestowed on ‘Ass’ of Apuleius. A similar composition in Greek, by non Metaphrastes, written about the end of the 10th century, as the prototype of this work of the 13th century, which com- thends the lives of individual saints, whose history had already en written, or was current from tradition. The Golden gend, however, does not consist solely of the lives of saints, t is said in the colophon to be interspersed with many other aiful and strange relations, which were probably extracted m the Gesta Longobardorum, and other sources too obscure d voluminous to be easily traced; indeed, one of the original ies of the Legenda Aurea was Historia Lombardica. The rk of [Jacobus a] Voragine was translated into French by de Vignal, and was one of the three books from which xton’s Golden Legend was compiled.’

In The Military and Religious Life in the Middle Ages, by VOL. III.
Paul Lacroix, at p. 426, is the following brief account of Saint Cecilia. 'Under the reign of Alexander Severus, many illustrious martyrs were put to death: St. Cecilia, her husband, and her brother-in-law among the number. St. Cecilia was descended from a very ancient family which dated back to the time of Tarquin the Proud; she belonged to the same house as Metella, many of whose children were raised to the honours of triumph and of the consulate in the heyday of the Roman republic. Her parents gave her in marriage to a young Roman patrician, named Valerian. But Cecilia had dedicated her virginity to God, and her husband, converted to the faith by her arguments and entreaties, respected her vow, and himself converted his brother Tiburcius. They all three relieved their persecuted brethren, and this Christian charity betrayed them. In spite of their distinguished birth, their wealth and their connections, they were arrested, and their refusal to sacrifice to the false gods led to their being condemned to death. We find a multitude of analogous occurrences in Gaul, and also in the most distant provinces of the East.' On the preceding page of the same book is figured a copy of a piece of mosaic work of the third or fourth century, which was taken from the cemetery of St. Sixtus, and is preserved in the church of St. Cecilia, at Rome. It represents St. Cecilia and St. Valerian, with roses and lilies in bloom at their feet, and having on each side of them a palm-tree laden with fruit, a symbol of their victories and of their meritorious martyrdom. Upon one of the palm-trees is a phoenix with a 'gloria' round its head, the ancient symbol of resurrection.

The following interesting account of the church and statue of St. Cecilia is extracted from Mrs. Jameson's beautiful work upon Sacred and Legendary Art.

'According to her wish, the house of Cecilia was consecrated as a church, the chamber in which she suffered martyrdom being regarded as a spot of peculiar sanctity. There is mention of an council held in the church of St. Cecilia by Pope Symmachus, in the year 500. Afterwards, in the troubles and invasions of the barbarians, this ancient church fell into ruin, and was rebuilt by
THE SECOND NUN'S TALE. XXXV

Pope Paschal I. in the ninth century. It is related that, while engaged in this work, Paschal had a dream, in which St. Cecilia appeared to him, and revealed the spot in which she lay buried; accordingly search was made, and her body was found in the cemetery of Calixtus, wrapt in a shroud of gold tissue, and round her feet a linen cloth dipt in her blood: near her were the remains of Valerian, Tibertius, and Maximus, which, together with others, were deposited in the same church, now St. Cecilia-in-Trastevere. The little room, containing her bath, in which she was murdered or martyred, is now a chapel. The rich frescoes with which it was decorated are in a state of utter ruin from age and damp; but the machinery for heating the bath, the pipes, the stoves, yet remain. This church, having again fallen into ruin, was again repaired, and sumptuously embellished in the taste of the sixteenth century, by Cardinal Sfondrati. On this occasion the sarcophagus containing the body of St. Cecilia was opened with great solemnity in the presence of several cardinals and dignitaries of the Church, among others Cardinal Baronius, who has given us an exact description of the appearance of the body, which had been buried by Pope Paschal in 820, when exhumed in 1599. "She was lying," says Baronius, "within a coffin of cypress wood, enclosed in a marble sarcophagus; not in the manner of one dead and buried, that is, on her back, but on her right side, as one asleep; and in a very modest attitude; covered with a simple stuff of taffety, having her head bound with cloth, and at her feet the remains of the cloth of gold and silk which Pope Paschal had found in her tomb." Clement VIII ordered that the relics should remain untouched, inviolate; and the cypress coffin was enclosed in a silver shrine, and replaced under the altar. This re-interment took place in presence of the pope and clergy, with great pomp and solemnity, and the people crowded in from the neighbouring towns to assist at the ceremony. Stefano Maderno, who was then in the employment of the Cardinal Sfondrati as sculptor and architect, and acted as secretary, was not, we may suppose, absent on this occasion; by the order of the Cardinal he executed the beautiful and cele-
brated statue of "St. Cecilia lying dead," which was intended to commemorate the attitude in which she was found. It is thus described by Sir Charles Bell:—"The body lies on its side, the limbs a little drawn up; the hands are delicate and fine,—they are not locked, but crossed at the wrists: the arms are stretched out. The drapery is beautifully modelled, and modestly covers the limbs. The head is enveloped in linen, but the general form is seen, and the artist has contrived to convey by its position, though not offensively, that it is separated from the body. A gold circlet is round the neck, to conceal the place of decolla-
tion(?). It is the statue of a lady, perfect in form, and affecting from the resemblance to reality in the drapery of white marble, and the unspected appearance of the statue altogether. It lies as no living body could lie, and yet correctly, as the dead when left to expire,—I mean in the gravitation of the limbs."

'It must be remembered that Cecilia did not suffer decollation; that her head was not separated from the body; and the gold band is to conceal the wound in the neck: otherwise, this description of the statue agrees exactly with the description which Cardinal Baronius has given of the body of the saint when found in 1599.

'The ornaments round the shrine, of bronze and rare and precious marbles, are in the worst taste, and do not harmonize with the pathetic simplicity of the figure.

'At what period St. Cecilia came to be regarded as the patron saint of music, and accompanied by the musical attributes, I cannot decide. It is certain that in ancient devotional representations she is not so distinguished; nor in the old Italian series of subjects from her life have I found any in which she is figured as singing, or playing upon instruments.'

The Canon's Yeoman's Prologue, and Tale. The Pro-
logue, as well as the Tale itself, belongs to the very latest period of Chaucer's work. This is clear at once, from its originality, as well as from the metre, and the careless ease of the rhythm,

1 See my note to l. 134 of the Tale, p. 171.
which sometimes almost degenerates into slovenliness, as though our author had written some of it in hot haste, with the intention of revising it more carefully afterwards. Besides, the poet has boldly improved upon his plan of the pilgrims’ stories as laid down in his Prologue. We have there no hint of the Canon nor of his Yeoman; they are two new pilgrims who join themselves to the rest upon the road. A dispute arising between the master and the man, the former is put out of countenance, and actually rides away for very sorrow and shame (l. 702); but the man remains, to denounce the cupidity of the alchemists and to expose their trickery. Tyrwhitt remarks:—‘The introduction of the Chanoynes Yeman to tell a tale, at a time when so many of the original characters remain to be called upon, appears a little extraordinary. It should seem, that some sudden resentment had determined Chaucer to interrupt the regular course of his work, in order to insert a satire against the alchemists. That their pretended science was much cultivated about this time, and produced its usual evils, may fairly be inferred from the Act, which was passed soon after, 5 Henry IV, cap. iv. to make it Felonie to multiply gold or siluer, or to use the art of multiplication.’ He adds—‘The first considerable coinage of gold in this country was begun by Edward III in the year 1343, and according to Camden (in his Remains, art. Money), “the Alchemists did affirm, as an unwritten verity, that the Rose-nobles, which were coined soon after, were made by projection or multiplication Alchemicall of Raymund Lully in the Tower of London.” Ashmole, in his Theatrum Chemicum, p. 443, has repeated this ridiculous story concerning Lully with additional circumstances, as if he really believed it; though Lully, by the best accounts, had been dead above twenty years before Edward III began to coin gold.’

1 Tyrwhitt further explains that a poem in Ashmole’s volume. called Hermes Bird, and by him attributed to Raymund Lully, is really a poem of Lydgate’s, printed by Caxton with the title The Charle and the Bird.
INTRODUCTION.

The above-mentioned volume by Ashmole, entitled Theatrum Chemicum, is a very singular production. And, perhaps, not the least singular circumstance is that Ashmole actually gives 'The Tale of the Chanon's Yeman, written by our ancient and famous poet, Geoffry Chaucer,' Prologue and all, at full length (pp. 227–256), under the impression, apparently, that Chaucer was really a believer in the science! He says—'One reason why I selected out of Chaucer's Canterbury Tales that of the Chanon's Ycman was, to let the world see what notorious cheating there has been ever used, under pretence of this true (though injur'd) Science; Another is, to shew that Chaucer himself was a Master therein.' It is indeed true that Chaucer had examined into alchemy very closely, but it is perfectly clear that he had made up his mind, with his strong English common sense, that the whole matter was a delusion. Had he lived in the present century, he could hardly have spoken out in more assured terms. In a similar manner he had studied astrology, and was equally a disbeliever in all but the terms of it and a few of its most general and vague assertions. He says expressly, in his Treatise on the Astrolabie (ed. Skeat, pt. ii. sec. 4, l. 34)—'nathless, theise ben obseruauncez of judicial matiere & rytes of paiens [pagans], in which my spirit ne hath no feith, ne no knowyng of hir bicepscopum.' But it is evident that the believers in alchemy had to make the best use they could of Chaucer's language, by applying it as being directed only against notorious cheats; and accordingly, we find in The Ordinall of Alchimy, by Thomas Norton of Bristol printed in Ashmole's collection, various passages imitated from Chaucer, such as, e.g. that at p. 17:—

'The fals man walketh from Towne to Towne,
For the most parte in a thread-bare Gowne,' &c.

And again, George Ripley, in his Compound of Alchymie

---

1 It is a totally different work from the Latin collection of alchemic works, also called Theatrum Chemicum, so often cited in my notes.
THE CANON'S YEOMAN'S TALE. xxxi.

...dedicated to King Edward IV, printed in the same collection...

...ys, at p. 153:—

'Their Clothes be bawdy and woryn threde-bare,
   Men may them smell for Mulipylyers where they go,' &c.¹

Ashmole's work contains several treatises which profess to explain alchemy, nearly all alike couched in mysterious, and often ridiculous language. Such are Norton's Ordinall of Alchimy, Dipleys Compound of Alchymie, Liber Patris Sapientiae, Hermes Bird (really Lydgate's poem of The Churl and the Bird), Chaucer's Canon's Yeoman's Tale (!), Pearce the Blacke Monke pon the Elixir, Charnock's Breviary of Naturall Philosophy², Dipleys Mistery of Alchymists, an extract from Gower's Conessio Amantis, Aristotle's Secreta Secretorum, translated by Lydgate; and so on. On the whole, the book is equally curious and dull.

It would hardly be possible to give much idea of alchemy in brief space, and it would certainly be unprofitable. The curious will find an excellent article upon it (entitled 'Alchemy') the new edition of the Encyclopaedia Britannica; and a story of it, by no means uninteresting, in the first volume Thomson's History of Chemistry. In Whewell's History the Inductive Sciences, and edition, 1847, vol. i. p. 320, the owing notice of it occurs, which I quote for the reader'svenience.—'Like other kinds of Mysticism, Alchemy seems have grown out of the notions of moral, personal, and theological qualities, which men associated with terms, of the primary application was to physical properties. This form in which the subject is presented to us in the best writings which we possess on the subject of chemistry,

p. 470. Ashmole gives a brief account of Chaucer, made up from Bale, Pits, and others, of no particular value. At p. 226, he gives saving of the marble monument erected to Chaucer's memory in uter Abbey, by Nicholas Brigham, A.D. 1556.

¹ is somewhat amusing. Charnock describes his numerous misse, and it is not clear that he preserved his faith in alchemy.
those of Geber of Seville, who is supposed to have lived in the eighth or ninth century. The very titles of Geber's works show the notions on which this pretended science proceeds. They are, "Of the Search of Perfection;" "Of the Sum of Perfection, or of the Perfect Magistry;" "Of the Invention of Verity, or Perfection." The basis of this phraseology is the distinction of metals into more or less perfect; gold being the most perfect, as being the most valuable, most beautiful, most pure, most durable; silver the next; and so on. The "Search of Perfection" was, therefore, the attempt to convert other metals into gold; and doctrines were adopted which represented the metals as all compounded of the same elements, so that this was theoretically possible. But the mystical trains of association were pursued much further than this; gold and silver were held to be the most noble of metals; gold was their King, and silver their Queen. Mythological associations were called in aid of these fancies, as had been done in astrology. Gold was Sol, the sun; silver was Luna, the moon; copper, iron, tin, lead, were assigned to Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn. The processes of mixture and heat were spoken of as personal actions and relations, struggles and victories. Some elements were conquerors, some conquered; there existed preparations which possessed the power of changing the whole of a body into a substance of another kind: these were called magisteries.1 When gold and quicksilver are combined, the king and the queen are married, to produce children of their own kind. It will easily be conceived, that when chemical operations were described in phraseology of this sort, the enthusiasm of the fancy would be added to that of the hopes, and observation would not be permitted to correct the delusion, or to suggest sounder and more rational views.

1 The exaggeration of the vague notion of perfection and power in the object of the alchemist's search, was carried further still. The same preparation which possessed the faculty of turning

1 Thomson's Hist. Chemistry, i. 25.
THE CANON’S YEOMAN’S TALE.

• metals into gold, was imagined to be also a universal
cine, to have the gift of curing or preventing diseases,
ing life, producing bodily strength and beauty: the
phers’ stone was finally invested with every desirable effi-
which the fancy of the “philosophers” could devise.’
also Dr. Whewell’s account of the doctrine of ‘the four
eats” in the same work; vol. iii. p. 121.
the history of the rise and growth of the ideas involved in
my is ably treated of in the article in the Encyclopaedia
onica already referred to; it is of some interest to note
some of the more important notions were developed. From
Persia came the idea of a correspondence between the
bodies and parts of the human frame, alluded to in
er’s Treatise on the Astrolabe, and in Shakespeare’s
Night, i. 3. 148. From ancient India came the idea
eregrination of sinful souls through the animal, vegetable,
en the mineral world, till they were absorbed into Deity.
was further evolved the notion of a transmutation of
ents. The Greeks held that different deities had under
tection and guidance different types of men; an idea
erved in our words mercurial, jovial, and saturnine.
school of Hippocrates held the doctrine of the four ele-
ts, or primary substances of which all others were made,
enta first mentioned (it is said) by Empedocles; to which
ote added a fifth element, that of ether (Arist. de Caelo,
But this idea is probably older; for we find five bhūta’s,
ents, enumerated in Sanskrit, viz. earth, fire, water,
ether; see Benfey’s Skt. Dict. s. v. bbū, p. 658.
er very ancient notion is that male and female prin-
s existed in all three worlds alike, animal, vegetable, and
al; from which it followed that the union of two metals

Sir To. What shall we do else? Were we not born under Taurus?
nd. Taurus] that’s sides and heart. Sir To. No, sir; it’s legs and
Both are wrong, of course, as Shakespeare knew. Chaucer says—
ths thin heued [head], and 'Taurus thy nekke anl thy throte;'
abie, pt. i. sec. 21. l. 50.
INTRODUCTION.

could produce a third. It was argued that 'monstrosities are
the productions of diseased metals (really alloys), which, if
properly treated, may be cured, and will turn to gold, or at
least silver. The second stage in this imitation of nature is
to obtain, by tincture or projection, solid or liquid gold, the
cure of all evils; ' Encycl. Brit. i. 463, col. 2. This notion
is still preserved in the word arsenic (Gk. ἀρεσκόν, male). It
was universally believed that nature produced changes in the
substance of various metals by slow degrees, and the great object
of alchemy was to produce the same changes quickly. The
chief names in connection with the progress of alchemy are
Geber, a Sabaean, who flourished about A.D. 800; Avicenna
a native of Shiraz, born A.D. 980, died June, 1037; Albertus
Magnus, born about 1193, died Nov. 15, 1280, who uses much
more intelligible language than alchemists usually indulge in
Raymund Lully, born at Majorca in 1235, a scholar of Roger
Bacon, who was himself deeply imbued with the mystery of
alchemy; Arnoldus de Villa Nova (mentioned by Chaucer), a
named because born at Villeneuve, in Provence, in 1240; and
others. Paracelsus, a Swiss physician (born in 1493, died
1541) was something better than a mere alchemist. He did
something towards destroying the notion of the necessity of
consulting astrological influences, and prepared the way for
the discoveries of Van Helmont (born at Brussels in 1577
died 1644), with whom the history of modern chemistry may
be said to begin. Van Helmont was the inventor of two new
terms, gas 2 and blas, the former of which remains in common
use, though the latter is wholly forgotten.

The great store-house of treatises upon alchemy is the Latin
collection, in five volumes, called Theatrum Chemicum. I have
made considerable use of the edition of this work published
in 1660, which I have frequently quoted in the Notes. W

1 See Browning's drama entitled 'Paracelsus.'
2 It is useless to try and discover an etymology for this word. I
invented wittingly. The most that can be said was that Van He
may have been thinking of the Dutch geist, a spirit; E. ghos.t.
hence gather that most of the authors upon the subject wished men to believe that the true secrets of the science were known to *themselves only*; yet they all learnt more or less of a certain jargon which they continually repeated, attributing their empirical rules to Hermes, or Geber, or other supposed masters. The same ideas, alleged results, and supposed principles continually recur; and the brief statement of a few of these will at once shew what the reader of an alchemical treatise may expect to find. Much depended on the supposed powers of certain numbers. Thus, there were *three* primary colours, black, white, and red\(^1\), from which all others were produced by combination; Theat. Chem. iv. 536. According to Gower, there were really *three* kinds of the philosopher's stone, viz. animal, vegetable, and mineral. Some said it was composed of *three* parts; body, spirit, and soul—*corpus*, *spiritus*, and *anima*; Ashmole's Th. Ch. p. 382. Again, there were *four* elements; *four* complexions of nature or temperaments; *four* colours (said some), viz. white, black, citrine, and red; *four* savours, insipid, acid, sweet, and bitter; *four* odours, sweet, fetid, intense, and slight (*remissus*), Theat. Chem. iii. 82. In particular, there were *four* spirits, sulphur, sal ammoniac, quick-silver, and arsenic; see note to line 778, p. 189; also *four* states or conditions, hot, cold, wet, and dry; Theat. Chem. iv. 537. There were *seven* planets; and because there were seven planets, it followed that every planet had a corresponding note in the musical scale of *seven* notes. Every planet had its proper colour; and, in this view, there were *seven* colours, sable, vert, gules, or, argent, sanguine, and umber; Batman upon Bartholome, lib. 19, c. 37. Every planet had its proper metal; there were therefore *seven* metals; see the extract from Gower, p. 193. Now, as all substances are made of the same four elements, it follows that if a substance can be decomposed, and reunited in different proportions, its nature may be so changed that it shall become another substance.

---

\(^1\) A strange selection; red, blue, and yellow would have been better.
INTRODUCTION.

Many substances, if subjected to heat, are destroyed; but metals are not so, and therefore became the favourite subject for experiments. It was laid down that one metal could be transmuted into another, but only after having been first reduced into its primary elements; Theat. Chem. iv. 531. Ere long, it was accepted as an axiom that all baser metals could be transmuted either into gold, or sol, typified by the sun, or into silver, or luna, typified by the moon; these being the two extremes between which the other five metals were ranged. It was agreed that the chief agents in producing this transmutation were quicksilver and sulphur, and of these quicksilver was the more important; so much so, that the mention of quicksilver meets us everywhere, and no alchemist could work without it 1. It was also agreed that certain processes must be gone through in a due order, generally ten or twelve in number; and if any one of them failed, the whole work had to be begun afresh. They are commonly described as (1) calcination, (2) solution, (3) separation of the elements, (4) conjunction, (5) putrefaction, (6) coagulation, (7) cibation, (8) sublimation, (9) fermentation, (10) exaltation, (11) augmentation or multiplication; and (12) projection; Theat. Chem. ii. 175, and Ripley's Compound of Alchemy. By insisting on the necessity of all these processes, they sufficiently guarded against all chances of an unfavourable result by securing that a result could not very well be arrived at.

The moment that we attempt to analyse their processes more closely, we are met by two difficulties that are simply insuperable; the first, that the same name is clearly used to denote quite different substances, and the second, that the same substance is called by many different names. Hence also arose endless evasions, and arrogant claims to pretended secrets; it

---

1 The Indian god Siva was actually worshipped under the form of quicksilver. Professor Cowell refers me to Marco Polo, ed. Yule, ii. 300, and to his own edition of Colebrooke's Essays, i. 433; also to the semi-mythical life of Sankara Acharya, the great reformer of the eighth century.
was often said that the quicksilver of the alchemists was a
substance only known to adepts, and that those who used
only ordinary quicksilver knew nothing of the matter. The
master could thus always mystify his pupils, and make it appear
that he alone, and no one else, knew what he was talking
about.

Yet it was frequently alleged that the experiments did succeed.
The easiest explanation of this matter is, that the hopes of the
alchemists were doubtless buoyed up by the fact that every now
and then the experiments appeared to succeed; and it is easy
to shew how. The close affinity of quicksilver for gold is well
known. I copy the following from a book on experiments,
which really suffices to explain the whole matter. 'If a sovereign
be rubbed with mercury, it will lose its usual appearance, and
appear as if silvered over; the attraction of the gold for the
mercury being sufficient to cause a coating of it to remain.
When it is wished to remove the silvery appearance, dip the
sovereign in a dilute solution of nitric acid, which will entirely
take it off.' Now the alchemists tell us that quicksilver must
always be used in all experiments; and they constantly recom-
mend the introduction into the substances experimented on of a
small quantity of gold, which they thought would be increased.
The experiments constantly failed; and whenever they failed, the
pieces of molten metal were carefully saved, to be used over and
over again. The frequent introduction of small quantities of
gold caused that metal to accumulate; and if, by any favourable
process, the quicksilver was separated from the mass, a con-
considerable quantity of gold would now and then actually appear.
This account is so much in accordance with all that we read that
we may confidently accept the conclusion of Dr. Thomson,
the author of the History of Chemistry, that the vaunted philo-
sopher's stone was certainly an amalgam of gold; which, 'if
projected into melted lead or tin, and afterwards cupellated,

1 This explains why the alchemists, in seeking gold, sometimes supposed
that they had obtained silver.
would leave a portion of gold; all the gold, of course, that existed previously in the amalgam.' He adds that 'the alchemists who prepared the amalgam could not be ignorant that it contained gold;' a statement which I am inclined to modify by suggesting that it may very easily have contained more gold than they supposed it did. In a word, we may conclude that some deceived themselves, and others were conscious cheats.

The real secret of the long reign of alchemy, and of the tardy appearance of scientific chemistry, lies in this—that men, as a rule, have more faith in their theoretical notions than in the practical evidence of their senses. The history of alchemy is, in fact, full of instruction, and its lessons have not yet all been learnt. Not to apply them to any of the more popular delusions of the day (which would here be out of place), I would apply them to a subject in which students of Chaucer may be supposed to take a special interest, viz. that of English etymology. A good deal of what is called 'etymology' is the merest alchemy; and the guesswork which is sometimes dignified by that name is often as baseless and as valueless as the dreams of the so-called adepts. Perhaps there is no book which better illustrates the history of the English language than Richardson's Dictionary; the value of the profusion of quotations, each with its proper reference, is very great. Yet the etymology is remarkably poor, owing to the number of guesses which were too rashly recorded there. Take, e.g. his account of the word bod. 'Bod, perhaps bored, bore'd, bod; past part. of A. S. beafan, to heave. That which is beared or raised,' &c. Yet the whole of this breaks down when we remember that bebbon [not beafan] is a strong verb, and that its past part. became boren, whilst still conjugated as a strong verb; and afterwards bore'd, when it was treated as a weak one: the form bore'd being simply impossible either way. Students may do better than this, if they will bear in mind two or three leading principles, such as (1) that the investigation of the history a word must precede all attempts to 'derive' it; (2) that is of small utility to imagine how a word might have be
formed, especially when, as is sometimes the case, there is good evidence as to how it was formed: (3) that the laws of language must be studied, it being absurd to make up words in opposition to all that we know of Anglo-Saxon grammar; and (4) that the light afforded by comparative philology is to be thankfully accepted, and not shut out as if it were nonexistent. In particular, it is to be remembered that the history of many words is insufficiently recorded, and in such cases we have no right to assume an origin which we cannot prove, but should be content to say that we do not know it. The one besetting sin of students of English etymology is that few are content to give up the pursuit of that which lies beyond them; like the alchemists, men are prone to pretend to know that of which they can, after all, give no intelligible explanation. Like the alchemists, many invent their facts, or distort and wrest them, so as to make them agree with preconceived theories. This is strikingly exemplified in many of our older provincial glossaries, wherein the definitions of words, instead of being honestly stated, are often tortured into agreement with a supposed 'etymology.' Thus Ray, in his excellent Collection of Provincial Words, defines believe as 'anon, by and by, or towards night;' merely in order to introduce his 'etymology,' that believe is a corruption of by the eve, with a substitution of the French le for the English the. Skinner's Lexicon contains hundreds of such absurdities, many of which were copied into Johnson's Dictionary, and some of them are certainly still believed in. For a sample of these, see the 'Garland culled from Skinner' in my Introduction to Ray's Collection of Provincial Words, pp. xxi–xxvi, published by the English Dialect Society. And to this day correspondents write to Notes and Queries about certain hard words, asking for the 'etymology' of them, instead of asking for the history of them, which is the more important matter. No wonder that they often receive six or seven different answers, all perhaps equally unsatisfactory and useless, and learn no more about the matter than they knew at first. Of course the etymology will explain a word, but only if it
happens to be right; the history of the word is, however, a surer
guide, because it deals with quotations and facts, not with
theories and fancies. I fear that we English have still much to
learn before we are finally delivered from the alchemy of those
who only work by guess, and from the tyranny of ingenious
assertions.\footnote{Such as that of Verstegan, when deriving almanack from al-moon-agah, i.e. all-moon-heed, a form which it is needless to say he invented. I possess a book on English etymology, which absolutely swarms with similar absurdities; yet it is only twenty years old.}

A list of books most useful for explaining Chaucer, and of
the Dictionaries used in compiling the Glossarial Index, is given
in my former Introduction, at p. lxxvi.

The present volume is, in the main, my own work. My
chief obligations have been to Mr. Furnivall’s Six-text edition,
and to Tyrwhitt’s notes. I wish to record my thanks to Miss
Gunning, of Cambridge, and Wilkinson, of Dorking, who con-
siderably lightened the labour of preparing the Glossary by
copying out, with proper references, and in many cases, with
explanations, the words explained there. I have added the
explanations where they were omitted, and revised the whole;
the etymological remarks being my own throughout. A con-
siderable part of the Notes is due to my own reading, and has
not appeared before; this is particularly the case with respect to
the Canon’s Yeoman’s Tale.

In the present (revised) edition, a few new notes have been
added; and an Index has been subjoined, shewing where to find
at once the more important explanations of words and subject-
matter.

ROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

[The Introduction to the Man of Law's Prologue, and the prologue itself, are printed in The Priorésses Tale, &c. (Clarendon Press Series), pp. 1-5. A long extract from The Tale itself (134-693) is given in Specimens of Early English, ed. Morris and Skeat, pp. 249-269.]

Here begynneth the man of lawe his tale.

In Surrye whylom dwelte a companye
Of chapmen riche, and therto sadde and trewe,
That wyde-wher senten her spicerye,
Clothes of gold, and satins riche of hewe;
Her chaffar was so thristy and so newe,
That every wyght hath deynte to chaffare
With hem, and eek to sellen hem her ware.

Now fel it, that the maistres of that sort
Han shapen hem to Rome for to wende;
Were it for chapmanhode or for disport,
Noon other message wolde they thider sende,
But comen hem-self to Rome, this is the ende;
And in swich place, as thoughte hem auantage
For her entent, they take her herbergage.

Soijourned han thise marchants in that toun
A certein tyme, as fel to her plesance,
And so bifel, that theexcellent renoun
Of themperoures daughtere, dame Custance,
Reported was, with every circumstance,
GROUP B.  THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

Vn-to thise Surryen marchants in swich wyse¹,  
Fro day to day, as I shal yow deuyse.

This was the commune voys of everie man—
Our Emperour of Rome, god him see,
A daughter hath that, sin the world bigan,
To rekne as wel hir goodnesse as beautee,
Nas neuere swich another as is she;
I prey to god in honour hir susteene,
And wolde she were of al Europe the queene.

In hir is hey beautee, with-oute pryde,
Yowthe, with-oute grenehede or folye;
To alle hir werkes vertu is hir gyde,
Humblesse hath slayn in hir al tiranny.
She is mirour of alle curteisy,
Hir herte is verray chambre of holynesse,
Hir hand, ministre of fredom for almesse.'

And al this voys was soth, as god is trewe,
But now to purpos lat vs turne agayn;
Thise marchants han doon fraught her shippes newe,
And, whan they han this blissful mayden seyn,
Hoom to Surrye ben they went ful fayn,
And doon her nedes as they han doon yore,
And lyuen in wele; I can sey yow no more.

Now fel it, that thise marchants stode in grace
Of him, that was the sowdan of Surrye;
For whan they came from any strange place,
He wolde, of his benigne curteisy,
Make hem good chere, and bisily espye

¹ E. swich a wyse; but the other MSS. omit a.
GROUP B.  THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

Tydings of sondry regnes, for to lere
The wondres that they myghte seen or here.

Amonges othere things, specially
Thise marchants han him told of dame Custance,
So gret noblesse in ernest, seriosely,
That this sowdan hath caught so gret plesance
To han hir figure in his remembrance,
That al his lust and al his bisy cure
Was for to loue hir whyl his lyf may dure.

Parauenture in thilke large book
Which that men clepe the heuen, ywriten was
With sterres, whan that he his birthe took,
That he for loue shulde han his deth, alas I
For in the sterres, clerer than is glas,
Is writen, god wot, who so coude it rede,
The deth of every man, withouten drede.

In sterres, many a winter ther-biforn,
Was writen the deth of Ector, Achilles,
Of Pompei, Ilius, er they were born;
The stryf of Thebes; and of Ercules,
Of Sampson, Turnus, and of Socrates
The deth; but mennes wittes ben so dulle,
That no wyght can wel rede it atte fulle.

This sowdan for his priuee conseil sente,
And, shortly of this mater for to pace,
He hath to hem declared his entente,
And seyde hem certein, 'but he myghte haue grace
To han Custance with-inne a litel space,
He nas but deed;' and charged hem, in hye,
To shapen for his lyf som remedye.
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

Allas! what wonder is it though she wepte,
That shal be sent to strange nacioun
Fro frendes, that so tendrelly hir kepte,
And to be bounden vnder subiecioun
Of oon, she knoweth not his condiicioun.
Housbondes ben alle goode, and han ben yore,
That knowen wyues, I dar say yow no more.

'Fader,' she sayde, 'thy wrecched child Custance,
Thy yonge doughter, fostred vp so softe,
And ye, my moorder, my souerayn plesance
Ouer alle thing, out-taken crist on loft,
Custance, your child, hir recomandeth ofte
Vn-to your grace, for I shal to Surrye,
Ne shal I neuer seen yow more with ye.'

Allas! vn-to the Barbre nacioun
I moste gon, sin that it is your wille;
But crist, that starf for our saucioun,
So yeue me grace, his hestes to fulfille;
I, wrecche womman, no for though I spille.
Wommen are born to thraldom and penance,
And to ben vnder mannes gouernance.'

I trowe, at Troye whan Pirrus brak the wal,
Or [Theseus]¹ brende Thbees the citee,
Nat² Rome, for the harm thurgh Hanybal
That Romayns hath venquished tymes thre,
Nas herd swich tendre weping for pitee

¹ All the best MSS. read ylion, which is obviously wrong; the substitution of Theseus is without authority, but receives some support from the 'Knights' Tale,' l. 132.
² Nat is the reading of the Ellesmere, Hengwrt, and Cambridge MSS.; but in this instance it is probably a contraction of ne at, instead of being equivalent to not, as usual. The Harl. MS. reads Ne at accordingly.
As in the chambre was for hir departinge;
Bot forth she moot, wher-so she wepe or singe.

O firste moeuyng cruel firmament,
With thy diurnal sweigh that crowdest ay
And hurlest al from Est til Occident,
That naturelly wolde holde another way,
Thy crowding set the heuen in swich array
At the beginning of this fiers viage,
That cruel Mars hath slayn this mariaghe.

Infortunat ascendent tortuous,
Of which the lord is helplees falle,allas!
Out of his angle in-to the derkest hous.
O Mars, O Atazir, as in this cas!
O feble moone, vnhappy ben thy pas!
Thou knittest thee ther thou art not receyued,
Ther thou were wel, from thennes arrow weyued.

Imprudent emperour of Rome,allas!
Was ther no phi losophire in al thy toun?
Is no tyme bet than other in swich cas?
Of viage is ther non eleccioun,
Namely to folk of hey condiicioun,
Not whan a rote is of a birthe yknowe?
Allas! we ben to lewed or to slowe.

To shippe is brought this woful faire mayde
Solempnely with every circumstance.
‘Now Iesu crist be with yow alle,’ she sayde,
Ther nis no more but ‘farewel! faire Custance!’
She peyneth hir to make good countenance,
And forth I lete hir sayle in this manere,
And turne I wol agayn to my matere.

1 E. come; brought in the rest.
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

The mooder of the sowdan, welle of vices,
Espyed hath hir sones pleyn entente,
How he wol lete his olde sacrifices,
And ryght anon she for hir conseil sente;
And they ben come, to knowe what she mente.
And when assembled was this folk in-fere,
She sette hir doun, and sayde as ye shal here.

'Lordes,' quod she 1, 'ye knowen euerichon,
How that my sone in point is for to lete
The holy lawes of oure Alkaron,
Yeuen by goddes message 2 Makomete.
But oon auow to grete god I hete,
The lyf shal rather out of my body sterte
Than Makometes lawe out of myn herte!

What shulde vs tyden of this newe lawe
But thraldom to our bodies and penance?
And afterward in helle to be drawe
For we reneyed Mahoun our creance?
But, lorde, wol ye maken assurance,
As I shal seyn, assenting to my lore,
And I shall make vs sauf for cuermore?'

They sworen and assenten, every man,
To lyue with hir and dye, and by hir stonde;
And euerich, in the beste wyse he can,
To strengthen hir shal alle his frendes fonde;
And she hath this emprise ytake on honde,
Which ye shal heren that I shal deuyse,
And to hem alle she spak ryght in this wyse.

1 E. she seyde; quod she in the rest.
2 messager Corp., Petr., and Lands. MSS.; but see the note.
GROUP B.  THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

'We shul first feyne vs crisstendom to take,
Cold water shal not greue vs but a lyte;
And I shal swich a feste and reuel make,
That, as I trowe, I shal the sowdan quyte.
For though his wyf be crisstped neuer so whyte,
She shal haue nede to wasche awaye the rede,
Though she a font-ful water with hir lede.'

O sowdanesse, rote of iniquitee,
Virago, thou Semyram the secounde,
O serpent vnder femininitee,
Lyk to the serpent depe in helle ybounde,
O feyned womman, al that may confounde
Vertu and Innocence, thugh thy malice,
Is bred in thee, as nest of euery vice!

O Satan, enuiuous sin thilke day
That thou were chased fro our heritage,
Wel knowestow to wommen the olde way!
Thou madest Eua bringe vs in seruage.
Thou wolt fordoon this crissten marriage.
Thy instrument so, weylawey the whyle!
Makestow of wommen, whan thou wolt begyle.

This sowdanesse, whom I thus blame and warye,
Let priuely hir conseil goon her way.
What shulde I in this tale lenger tarye?
She rydeth to the sowdan on a day,
And seyde him, that she wold reneye hir lay,
And crisstendom of preestes handes fonge,
Repeniting hir she hethen was so longe,
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

Biseching him to doon hir that honour,  
That she moste han the cristen men to feste;  
‘To plesen hem I wol do my labour.’
The sowdan seith, ‘I wol doon at your heste,’  
And kneling thanketh hir of that requeste.
So glad he was, he niste what to seye;
She kiste hir sone, and hom she goth hir weye.  

Explicit prima pars. Sequitur pars secunda.

Arrayued ben this cristen folk to londe,  
In Surye, with a great solempe route,  
And hastily this sowdan sent his sonde,  
First to his mooder, and al the regne aboute,  
And seyde, his wyf was comen, out of doute,  
And preyde hir for to ryde agayn the queene,  
The honour of his regne to susteene.

Gret was the prees, and riche was tharray  
Of Suryens and Romayns met yfere;  
The mooder of the sowdan, riche and gay,  
Receyueth hir with al so glad a chere  
As any mooder myghte hir daughter dere,  
And to the nexte cite ther bisyde  
A softe pas solempnely they ryde.

Nought trowe I the triumphe of Iulius,  
Of which that Lucan maketh swich a bost,  
Was roialler, ne 1 more curious  
Than was thassembelee of this blissful host.  
But this scorpione, this wikked gost,  
The sowdanesse, for all hir flateringe,  
Caste vnder this ful mortally to stinge.

1 E. or; ve in the rest.
The sowdan comth him-self soone after this
So roially, that wonder is to telle,
And welcometh hir with al ioye and blis.
And thus in merthe and ioye I let hem dwelle.
The fruyt of this matere is that I telle.
Whan tyme cam, men thoughte it for the beste
That 1 reuel stinte, and men goon to hir reste.

The tym cam, this olde sowdanesse
Ordeyned hath this feste of which I tolde,
And to the feste cristen folk hem dresse
In general, ye I bothe yonge and olde.
Here may men feste and roialtee biholde,
And deyntees mo than I can yow deuyse,
But al to dere they boughte it er they ryse.

O sodeyn wo! that euer art successour
To worldly blisse, spreyn with bitternesse;
Thende 2 of the ioye of our worldly labour;
We occupieth the syn of our gladnesse.
Herke this conseil for thy sikernesse,
Vp-on thy glade day haue in thy mynde
The vnwar wo or harm that comth biynede.

For shortly 3 for to tellen at a word,
The sowdan and the cristen euerichone
Ben al tohewe and stiked at the bord,
But it were only dame Custance alone.
This olde sowdanesse, this 4 cursed crone,
Hath with her frendes doon this cursed dede,
For she hir-self wold al the contree lede.

---

1. E. The; That in the rest.
2. So in Camb.; the rest have The ende.
3. So in the rest; E. sooithy.
4. So in Petw. and Harl.; the rest omit this.
A certein tresor that she thider 3
And, soth to sayn, vitaille gret pl
They han hir yeuen, and clothes
And forth she sayleth in the salt
O my Custance, ful of benigne
tO emperoure yonge daughter de
He that is lord of fortune be thy

She blesseth hir, and with ful pitoot
Vn-to the croys of crist thus sayde

"O cleere, o welful 4 auter, holy crc
Reed of the lambes blood full of pr
That wesh the world fro the olde i
Me fro the feend, and fro his clawe
That day that I shal drenchen in t

Victorious tree, protecioum of trev
That only worthy were for to bere
The king of heuen with his wound
That solde his royall was witl
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE. 13

On which thy lymes faithfully extenden,
Me keep 1, and yif me myght my lyf tamenden.'
Yeres and dayes fleet 2 this creature
Thurghout the see of Grece vn-to the strayte
Of Marrok, as it was hir auenture; 465
On many a sory meel now may she bayte;
After her deeth ful often may she wayte,
Er that the wilde wavves wole hir dryue
Vn-to the place 3, ther she shal arryue.

Men myghten asken why she was not slayn?
Eek at the feste who myghte hir body saue?
And I answere to that demaunde agayn,
Who saued danyel in the horrible caue,
Ther every wyght saue he, maister and knaue,
Was with the leoun frete er he asterte?
No wyght but god, that he bar in his herte.

God list to shewe his wonderful miracle
In hir, for we shulde seen his myghty werkes;
Crist, which that is to every harm triacle,
By certein menes ofte, as knownen clerkes, 480
Doth thing for certein ende that ful derk is
to mannes wit, that for our ignorance
Ne conne not knowe his prudent puruiance.

Now, sith she was not at the feste yslawe,
Who kephte hir fro the drenching in the see?
Who kephte Ionas in the fisshes mawe
Til he was spouted vp at Niniee? 485
Wel may men knowe it was no wyght but he

1 Camb., Lands. kep: Heng., Petw., Harl. kepe; Corp. keepe; E. helpe.
2 E. feteth: but the form fleeth occurs in Heng., Corp., and Petw.
3 Probably read placō; Harl. alone inserts es after that.
That kepte peple Ebrayk fro hir drenching,
With drye feet thurgh-out the see passing.

Who bad the foure spirits of tempest,
That power han tanoyen lond and see,
'Bothe north and south, and also west and est,
Anoyeth neither see, ne lond, ne tree?'
Sothly the comaundour of that was he
That fro the tempest ay this womman kepte
As wel whan she wook as whan she slepte.

Wher myghte this womman mete and drinke haue?
Thre yeer and more how lasteth her vitaille?
Who fedde the Egypcien Marie in the caue,
Or in desert? no wyght but crist, sans faille.
Fyue thousand folk it was as gret meruaille
With loues fyue and fisshes two to fede.
God sente his foyson at hir grete nede.

She dryueth forth in-to our occcean
Thurgh-out our wilde see, til, atte laste,
Vnder an hold that nempnen I ne can,
Fer in Northumberlond the wawe hir caste,
And in the sond hir ship stiked so faste,
That thennes wolde it noght of al a tyde,
The wille of crist was that she shulde abyde.

The constable of the castel doun is fare
To seen this wrak, and al the ship he soughte,
And fond this wery womman ful of care;
He fond also the tresor that she broughte.
In hir langage mercy she bisoughte
The lyf out of hir body for to twinne,
Hir to deliuer of wo that she was inne.
A maner latyn corrupt was hir speche,
But algates ther-by was she understonde;
The constable, whan him list no lenger seche,
This woful womman brought he to the londe;
She kneleth doun, and thanketh goddes sonde.
But what she was she wolde no man seye,
For foul ne fayr, thogh that she shulde deye.

She seyde, she was so mased in the see
That she forgat hir mynde, by hir trewthe;
The constable hath of hir so gret pitee,
And eek his wyf, that they wepen for rewthe,
She was so diligent, with-outen sleuwe,
To serue and ples[e]n] euerich in that place
That alle hir louen that looken on hir face.

This constable and dame Hermengild his wyf
Were payens, and that contree eueri-where;
But Hermengild loue-de hir ryght as hir lyf,
And Custance hath so longe soiourne ² there,
In orisons, with many a bitter tere,
Til Iesu hath convuerted thurgh his grace
Dame Hermengild, constablesse of that place.

In al that lond no cristen durste route,
Alle cristen folk ben fled fro that contree
Thurgh payens, that conquereden al aboute
The plages of the North, by land and see;
To Walys fled the cristianitee
Of olde Britons, dweulling in this Ile;
Ther was hir refut for the mene whyle.

¹ E. and Camb. in; the rest on. ² Harl. only has herbe:wed
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

But yet nere cristen Britons so exiled
That ther nere somme that in hir priuitté
Honoured crist, and hethen folk bigiled;
And neigh the castel swiche ther dwelten three.

That oon of hem was blỳnd, and myghte not see
But it were with thilke yén of his mynde,
With whiche men seen, whan that they ben bynde.

Bryght was the sonne as in that someres day,
For which the constable and his wyf also
And Custance han ytake the ryghte way
Toward the see, a furlong wery or two,
To playen and to romen to and fro;
And in hir walk this bynde man they mette
Croked and old, with yén faste y-schette.

1 In name of Crist,’ cryede this bynde ¹ Britoun,
‘Dame Hermengild, yif me my syghte agayn.’
This lady wax affrayed of the soun,
Lest that hir housbond, shortly for to sayn,
Wolde hir for Iesu cristes loue han slayn,
Til Custance made hir bold, and bad hir werche
The wil of Crist, as daughter of his chirche.

The constable wax abasshed of that sight,
And seyde, ‘what amounteth al this fare?’
Custance answere, ‘sire, it is Cristes might
That helpeth folk out of the feendes snare.’
And so ferforth she gan our lay declare,
That she the constable, or that it were eue,
Conuerted ², and on Crist made ³ him bileue.

¹ E. olde; Harl. old; but the rest blỳnd or blỳnd.
² Harl. Converteth; Camb. Convertid; the rest Conuerteth.
³ E. maketh; Lansd. mæad; the rest made.
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE. 17

This constable was no-thing lord of this place
Of which I speke, ther he Custance fond,
But kepte it strongly, many wintres space,
Vnder Alla, king of al Northumberlond,
That was ful wys, and worthy of his hond
Agayn the Scottes, as men may wel here,
But turne I wol agayn to my mater.

Sathan, that euer vs waiteth to bigyle,
Sey of Custance al hir perfeccioun,
And caste anon how he myghte quyte hir whyle,
And made a yong knyght, that dwelte in that toun,
Loue hir so hote of foul affeccion,
That verraily him thoughte he shulde spille
But he of hir myghte ones haue his wille.

He woweth hir, but it auailleth nought,
She wolde do no sinne, by no weye;
And, for despit, he compassed in his thought
To maken hir on shamful deth to deye.
He wayteth whan the constable was aweye,
And priuely, vp-on a nyght, he crepte
In Hermengildes chambre whyl she slepte.

Wery, for-waked in her orisouns,
Slepeth Custance, and Hermengild also.
This knyght, thurgh Sathanas's temptaciouns,
Al softly is to the bed ygo,
And kitte the throte of Hermengild atwo,
And leyde the blody knyf by dame Custance,
And wente his weye, ther god yeue him meschance!

1 E. and Heng. Sathanas; Harl. Sathanas; but Sathanas in Corp., Petw...
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

Sone after comth this constable hoom agayn,
And eek Alla, that king was of that lond,
And sey his wyf despitously yslayn,
For which ful ofte he weep\(^1\) and wrong his hond,
And in the bed the blody knyf he fond
By dame Custance; allas! what myghte she seye?
For verray wo hir wit was al aweye.

To king Alla was told al this meschance,
And eek the tyme, and wher, and in what wyse
That in a ship was founden dame Custance,
As her-biforn that ye han herd deuyse.
The kinges herte of pitee gan agryse,
Whan he sey so benigne a creature
Falle in disese and in misauenture.

For as the lamb toward his deth is brought,
So stant this Innocent bfore the king;
This false knyght that hath this tresoun wrought
Berth\(^2\) hir on hond that she hath doon this thing.
But natheles, ther was gret mooring\(^3\)
Among the peple, and seyn, 'they can not gesse
That she hath doon so gret a wikkednesse.

For they han seyn hir euer so vertuous,
And louing Hermengild ryght as her lyf.'
Of this bar witnesse cuerich in that hous
Saue he that Hermengild slow with his knyf.
This gentil king hath caught a gret motyf
Of this witnesse, and thoughte he wolde enquire
Depper in this, a trewthe for to lere.

---

\(^1\) E. Hn. weep or wepe; Camb. Corp. Petw. wepte.
\(^2\) So in E; the rest Berth.
\(^3\) Harl. murmuryng; see note to l. 248.
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE. 19

Allas ! Custance ! thou hast no champioun
Ne fyghte canstow nought, so weyawley !
But he, that starf for our redempioun
And bond Sathan (and yit lyth ther he lay)
So be thy stronge champioun this day !
For, but-if Crist open miracle kythe,
Withouten gilt thou shalt be slayn as swythe.

She sette\(^1\) her doun on knees, and thus she sayde,
‘ Immortal god, that sauested Susanne
Fro false blame, and thow, merciful mayde,
Mary I mene, daughter to Seint Anne,
Bifore whos child anugeles singe Osanne,
If I be gittlees of this felonye,
My socour be, for \(^2\) elles I shal dye !’

Haue ye not seyn som tymeng a pale face,
Among a prees, of him that hath be lad
Toward his deth, wher as him gat no grace,
And swich a colour in his face hath had,
Men myghte knowe his face, that was bistad,
Amonges alle the faces in that route :
So stant Custance, and looketh her aboute.

O queenes, lyunige in prosperitee,
Duchesses, and ladyes euerichone,
Haueth som rewthe on hir aduersitee ;
An emperoures daughter stant allone ;
She hath no wight to whom to make hir mone.
O blood roial ! that stondest in this drede,
Fer ben thy frenedes at thy grete nede !

\(^1\) E. sit ; Heng. Camb. Petw. sette.
\(^2\) E. or ; the rest for.
A Briton book, writen with Eu
Was set, and on this book he:
She gilty was, and in the men:
A hand him smot vpon the ne-
That doun he fel atones as a s
And both his yên braste out of
In sight of euery body in that

A voys was herd in general au
And sayde, t'hou hast disclaun
The doughter of holy chirche i
Thus hastou doon, and yet hol
Of this meruaille agast was al t
As mased folk they stoden eue
For drede of wreche, saue Cus

Gret was the drede and eck the
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

This false knyght was slayn for his vntrewthe
By Iugement of Alla hatchily;
And yet Custance hadde of his dethe gret rewthe.
And after this Jesus, of his mercy,
Made Alla wedden ful solemnpnely
This holy mayden, that is so bright and sheene,
And thus hath Crist ymaad Custance a queene.

But who was woful, if I shal nat lye,
Of this wedding but Donegild, and na mo,
The kinges moder, ful of tirannye?
Hir thoughte hir cursed herte brast atwo;
She wolde nought hir sone had do so;
Hir thoughte a despit, that he sholde take
So strange a creature vn-to his make.

Me list nat of the chaf nor\(^1\) of the stree
Maken so long a tale, as of the corn.
What sholde I tellen of the roialtee
At mariag\(^2\), or which cours goth biforn,
Who bloweth in a\(^3\) trompe or in an horn?
The fruyt of euery tale is for to seye;
They ete, and drinke, and daunce, and singe, and pleye.

\(^1\) Ce, nor; E. or; the rest ne.
\(^2\) E. Hn. mariaes; Ht. this mariae; Lu. þe mariae; the rest mariae.
\(^3\) E. the; Hn. Pt. omit; the rest a.

\[\textit{Kynge Alla is called away to Scotland, to fight against enemies; he leaves Constance in the care of his Constable.}\]
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

The tyme is come, a knaue child she ber;
Mauricius at the fontstoone they him calle;
This Constable doth forth come a messager,
And wrooth vn-to his king, that cleped was Alle,
How that this blisful tyding is bifalle,
And othere tydings speedful for to seye;
He taketh the lettre, and forth he goth his weye.

This messager, to don his avantage,
Vn-to the kinges moder rydeth swythe,
And salueth hir ful fayre in his langage,
‘Madame,’ quod he, ‘ye may be glad and blythe,
And thanke’ god an hundred thousand sythe;
My lady queen hath child, with-outen doute,
To Ioye and blisse of* al this regne aboute.

Lo, heer the lettrees seled of this thing,
That I mot bere with al the haste I may;
If ye wol ought vn-to your sone the king,
I am your seruant, bothe nyght and day.’
Donegild answere, ‘as now at this tym, nay;
But heer al nyght I wol thou take thy reste,
Tomorwe wol I sey thee what me lest.’

This messager drank sadly ale and wyn,
And stolen were his lettrees priuyly
Out of his box, whyl he sleep as a swyn;
And countrefeted was ful subtilly
Another lettre, wrought ful sinfully,
Vn-to the king direct of this materere
Fro his Constable, as ye shul after here.

1 Cp. Hl. thanke; E. Hn. thanketh; Cm. thankede; Pt. Ln. thanketh.
2 E. Cm. to; the rest of.
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE. 23

The lettre spak, ' the queen deliuered was
Of so horrible a feendly creature,
That in the castel noon so hardy was
That any whyle dorste ther endure.
The moder was an elf, by aventure
Ycome, by charmes or by sorcereye,
And euer wyght 1 hateth hir companye.'

Wo was this king whan he this lettre had seyn,
But to no wyghte he tolde his sorwes sore,
But of his owen honde he wroot agayn,
'Welcome the sonde of crist for euermore
To me, that am now lerned in his lore;
Lord, welcom be thy lust and thy plesaunce,
My lust I putte al in thyn ordinaunce!

Kepeth this child, al be it foul or fayr,
And eek my wyf, vn-to myn hoom-cominge;
Crist, whan him list, may sende me an heyr
More agreable than this to my lykinge.'
This lettre he seleth, priuely wepinge,
Which to the messager was take sone,
And forth he goth; ther is no more to done.

O messager, fulfild of dronkenesse,
Strong is thy breeth, thy lymes salfren ay,
And thou biwreyest alle secrennesse.
Thy mynd is lorn, thou Ianglest as a Iay,
Thy face is turned in a newe array!
Ther dronkenesse regneth in any route,
Ther is no conseil hid, with-outen doute.

1 E. Hn. omit wyght.
Group B. The Tale of the Man of Lawe.

O Donegild, I ne haue noon english digne
Vn-to thy malice and thy tirannye!
And therfor to the fende I thee resigne,
Let him endyten of thy traitorye!
Fy, mannish, fy! o nay, [parfay], I lye,
Fy, friendly spirit, for I dar wel telle,
Though thou heer walke, thy spirit is in helle!

This messager comth fro the king agayn,
And at the kings modres court he lyghte,
And she was of this messager ful fayn,
And plesed him in al that euer she myghte.
He drank, and wel his girdel vnderpyghte.
He slepeth, and he snoreth in his gyse
Al nyght, vn-till the sonne gan aryse.

Eft were his lettres stolen euereichon
And countrefeted lettres in this wyse;
' The king comandeth his Constable anon,
Vp payne of hanging and of' hey Iuyse,
That he ne scholde suffren in no wyse
Custance in-with his regne for tabyde
Thre dayes and a quarter of a tyde;

But in the same ship as he hir fond
Hir and hir yonge son, and al hir gere,
He sholde putte, and croude hir fro the lond,
And charge hir that she neuer eft com there.'
O my Custance, wel may thy gost haue fere
And sleping in thy dreem been in penance,
When Donegild caste al this ordinance!

1 Hl. vn-to; the rest til; but vn-till (as in Tywhitt) seems better.
2 Hl. of; E. Hn. on; the rest corrupt.
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE. 25

This messager on morwe, whan he wook,
Vn-to the castel halt the nexte wey,
And to the Constable he the lettre took;
And whan that he this pitous lettre sey,
Ful ofte he seyde ‘allas!’ and ‘weylawe!’
‘Lord crist,’ quod he, ‘how may this world endure?
So ful of sinne is many a creature!

O myghty god, if that it be thy wille,
Sith thou art ryghtful Iuge, how may it be
That thou wolt suffren Innocents to spille,
And wikked folk regne in prosperite?
O good Custance, alas! so wo is me
That I mot be thy tormentour, or deye
On shames' deeth; ther is noon other weye!

Wepen both yonge and olde in al that place,
Whan that the king this cursed lettre sente,
And Custance, with a deedly pale face,
The ferthe day toward hir' ship she wente.
But natheles she taketh in good entente
The wille of Crist, and, kneling on the stronde,
She seyde, 'lord! ay wel-com be thy sonde!

He that me kepte fro the false blame
Why! I was on the londe amonges yow,
He can me kepe from harme and eek fro-shame
In salte see, al-though I se nat how.
As strong as euer he was, he is yet now.
In him triste I, and in his moder dere,
That is to me my seyl and eek my stere.'

1 So all but Hl., which has schamful.  2 E. Lr. the, the rest hir.
Hir litel child lay weping in hir arm,
And kneling, pitously to him she seyde,
'Pees, litel sone, I wol do thee noon harm.'
With that hir kerchief \(^1\) of \(^2\) hir heed she breyde,
And ouer his litel yēn she it leyde;
And in hir arm she lulleth it ful faste,
And in-to heuen hir yēn vp she caste. \(^3\)

'Moder,' quod she, 'and mayde bright, Marye,
Soth is that thurgh womannes eggement
Mankynd was lorn and damned ay to dye,
For which thy child was on a croys yrent;
Thy blisful yēn seye al his torment;
Than is ther no comparisoun bitwene
Thy wo and any wo man may sustene.

Thou sey thy child yslynn bifor thyhn yēn,
And yet now lyueth my litel \(^8\) child, parfay!
Now, lady bryght, to whom alle woful cryēn,
Thou glorie of wommanhede, thou fayre may,
Thou hauen of refut, bryghte sterre of day,
Rewe on my child, that of thy gentillesse
Rewest on euer rewful in distresse!

O litel child, allas! what is thy gilt,
That neuer wroughtest sinne as yet, parde,
Why wil thyn harde fader han thee spilt?
O mercy, dere Constable!' quod she;
'As lat my litel child dwelle heer with thee;
And if thou darst not sauen him, for blame,
So 's kis him ones in his fadres name!' \(^4\)

\(^1\) Ln. Hl. kerchef; Pt. keerchef; E. Hn. couerchief; Cm. couerchef; Cp. couerchef.
\(^2\) E. Hn. Cm. ouer (wrongly); the rest of.
\(^3\) E. La. om. litel; the rest have it.
\(^4\) E. Yet; the rest so.
GROUP B.  THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.  27

Ther-with she loketh bakward to the londe,
And seyde, 'far-wel, housbond retheweles'!
And vp she rist, and walketh doun the stronde
Toward the ship; hir folweth al the preees,
And euer she preyeth hir child to holde his pees;
And taketh hir leue, and with an holy entente
She blisseth hir; and in-to ship she wente.

Vtailled was the ship, it is no drede,
Habundantly for hir ful longe space,
And other necessaries that sholde nede
She hadde ynough, heried be goddes grace!
For wynd and weder almyghty god purchase
And bringe hir hoom! I can no bettre seye;
But in the see she dryueth forth hir weye.

Explicit secunda pars.  Sequitur pars tertia.

Alla the king comth hoom, sone after this,
Vn to his castel of the which I tolde,
And axeth wher his wyf and his child is.
The Constable gan aboute his herte colde,
And pelynly al the maner he him tolde
As ye han herd, I can telle it no bettre,
And sheweth the king his seel and [eek] his lettre,
And seyde, 'lord, as ye comaundde me
Vp payne of deeth, so haue I doon certeyn.'
This messager tormented was til he
Moste biknowe and tellen, plat and pleyn,
Fro nyght to nyght, in what place he had leyn.
And thus, by wit and subtil enqueringe,
Ymagined was by whom this harm gan springe.

E. Ls. looked; the rest looketh, loketh.
3 The word eek seems wanted; but is not in the MSS.
The hond was knowe that the lettre wrooth, And al the venim of this cursed dede, But in what wyse certeynly I noot. Theffect is this, that Alla, out of drede, His moder slow, that men may pleyly rede, For that she traytour was to hir ligeaunce. Thus endeth olde Donegild with meschaunce.

The sorwe that this Alla nyght and day Maketh for his wyf and for his child also, Ther is no tonge that it telle may. But now wol I vn-to Custance go, That fleteth in the see, in payne and wo, Fuye yeer and more, as lyked cristes sonde, Er that hir ship approched vn-to ¹ londe.

Vnder an hethen Castel, atte laste, Of which the name in my text nought I fynde, Custance and eek hir child the see vp-caste. Almighty god, that saueth ² al mankynde Haue on Custance and on hir child som mynde, That fallen is in hethen land eft-sone, In point to spille, as I shal shal telle yow sone.

Doun from the Castel comth ther many a wyght To gauren on this ship and on Custance. But shortly, from the Castel on a nyght The lordes styward—god yeue him meschaunce!— A theef, that had reneyed our creanche, Com in-to ³ ship allone, and seyde he sholde Hir lemmen be, wher-so she wolde or nolde.

¹ So Hn. Cp. Pt. Hl.; E. Ln. vn-to the; Cm. to the.
² E. saueth; the rest saueth.
³ E. Cm. in-to the; the rest omit the.
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE. 29

[The story relates that, by God's grace, the thief fell overboard and was drowned.]

How may this wayke womman han this strengthe
Hir to defende agayn this renegat?
O Golias, vnmeasurable of lengthe,
How myghte David make thee so mat,
So yong and of armure so desolat?
How dorste he loke vp-on thy dredful face?
Wel may men seen it nas but goddes grace!

Who yaf Judith corage or hardinesse
To sleen him, Olof ernus, in his tente,
And to deliueren out of wrecchednesse
The peple of god? I seye for this entente,
That ryght as god spirit of vigour sente
To hem, and saued hem out of meschance,
So sente he myght and vigour to Custance.

Forth goth hir ship thurgh-out the narwe mouth
Of Iubaltar and Septe, dryuing alway;
Som-tyme West, and som-tyme North and South,
And som-tyme Est, ful many a wery day,
Til cristes moder (blessed be she ay!)
Hath shapen, thurgh hir endeles goodnesse,
To make an ende of al hir heuinesse.

1 So E. Hl.; Ln. is; the rest was.
3 E. Oloferne; Hl. Oloferne; the rest Olofernus, Olefernus, or Olefernus; see note.
* E. Hl. alway; the rest ay. The latter would be better, but is hardly possible on account of its terminating l. 950.
Now lat vs stinte of Custance but a throwe,
And speke we of the Romayn Emperour,
That out of Surrye hath by lettrez knowe
The slaughter of cristen folk, and dishonour
Don to his daughter by a fals traytour,
I mene the cursed wikked sowdanesse,
That at the feste leet slean both more and lesse.

For which this emperour hath sent anoon
His senatour, with roial ordinance,
And othere lordez, got wot, many oon,
On Surryens to taken hey vengeance.
They brennen, slean, and bringe hem to meschance
Ful many a day; but shortly, this is thende,
Homward to Rome thei shapen hem to wende.

This senatour repaireth with victorie
To Romeward, sayling ful roially,
And mette the ship drying, as seith the storie,
In which Custance sit ful pitously.
No-thing ne¹ knew he what she was, ne why
She was in swich array; ne she nil seye
Of hir estaat, although² she sholde deye.

He bringeth hir to Rome, and to his wyf
He yaf hir, and hir yonge sone also;
And with the senatour she ladde her lyf.
Thus can our lady bringen out of wo
Woful Custance, and many another mo.
And longe tyme dwelled she in that place,
In holy werkes euer, as was hir grace.

¹ E. Cm. om. ne; the rest have it.
² Hl. although; Pt. though that; the rest though.
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE. 31

The senatoures wyf hir aunte was,
But for al that she knew hir neuer the more;
I wol no lenger tarien in this cas,
But to king Alla, which I spak of yore,
That for his wyf wepeth 1 and syketh sore,
I wol retourne, and lete I wol Custance
Vnder the senatoures gouernance.

King Alla, which that hadde his moder slayn,
Vpon a day fil in swich repentance,
That, if I shortly tellen shal and playn,
To Rome he comth, to receyuen his penance
And putte him in the popes ordinance
In hey and low, and Iesu Crist bisoughte
Foryeue his wikked werkes that he wroughte.

The fame anon through Rome toun 2 is born,
How Alla king shal come in pilgrimage,
By herbergeours that wenten him biforn;
For which the senatour, as was vsage,
Rood him agayn, and many of his linage,
As wel to shewen his hey magnificence
As to don any king a reuerence.

Greet chere doth this noble senatour
To king Alla, and he to him also;
Euerich of hem doth other greet honour;
And so bifel that, in a day or two,
This senatour is to king Alla go
To feste, and shortly, if I shal nat lye,
Custances sone wente in his companye.

1 So all but E., which puts weepeth after That.
2 E. through out the toun; the rest through Rome toun.
This Alla king hath of this child
And to the senator he sayd and said
'Whos is that fayre child that stand
'I noot,' quod he, '[parfay], and
A moder he hath, but fader hath
That I of wot'—but shortly, in a
He told Alla how that this child

Now was this child as lyk vn-to
As possible is a creature to be.
This Alla hath the face in remem
Of dame Custance, and ther-on m
If that the childes moder were au
That was his wyf, and priuely he
And spedde him fro the table that
'Parfay,' thoughte he, 'fantome is
I oughte deme, of skilful Jugemens

wyf is do
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE. 33

And, after noon, hoom with the senatour
Goth Alla, for to seen this wonder chaunce.
This senatour doth Alla greet honour,
And hastily he sente after Custaunce.
But trusteth wel, hir liste nat to daunce
Whan that she wiste wherefor was that sonde.
Vnnethe vp-on hir feet she myghte stonde. 1045

Whan Alla sey his wyf, fayre he hir grette,
And weep, that it was rewthe for to see.
For at the firste looke he on hir sette
He knew wel verrailly that it was she.
And she for sorwe as domb stant as a tre;
So was hir herte shet in hir distresse.
Whan she remembred his vnkyndenesse. 1050

Twyes she swowned in his owen syghte;
He weep, and him excuseth pitously:
‘Now god,’ quod he, ‘and alle his halwes bryghte
So wisly on my soule as haue mercy,
That of your harm as gitellees am I
As is Maurice my sone so lyk your face;
Elles the feend me fecche out of this place!’ 1060

Long was the sobbing and the bitter peyne
Er that her woful hertes myghte cesse;
Greet was the pite for to here hem pleyne
Thurgh whiche pleyntes gan her wo encrese.
I prey yow al my labour to relese;
I may nat telle her wo vn-till tomorwe,
I am so wery for to speke of sorwe. 1065

1 E. Pt. hastify; the rest hastily, hastily.
2 Hl. alle; which the rest omit.
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAW

But fynally, when that the soth is wist
That Alla gitellees was of hir wo,
I trowe an hundred tymes been they kist,
And swich a blisse is ther bitwix hem two
That, saue the Ioye that lasteth euermo,
Ther is noon lyk that any creature
Hath seyn or shal, whyl that the world may dure.

Tho prayde she hir housbond mekely,
In relief of hir longe pitous pyne,
That he wold preye hir fader specially
That, of his magestee, he wolde enclyne
To vouche sauf som day with him to dyne;
She preyde him eek, he sholde by no weye
Vn-to hir fader no word of hir seye.

Som men wold seyn, how that the child Maurice
Doth this message vn-to this emperour;
But, as I gesse, Alla was nat so nyce
To him, that was of so souereyn honour
As he that is of cristen folk the flour,
Sente any child, but it is bet to deme
He wente him-self, and so it may wel seme.

This emperour hath graunted gentilly
To come to dyner, as he him bisoughte;
And wel rede I, he loked bisily
Vp-on this child, and on his daughter thoughte.
Alla goth to his in, and, as him oughte,
Arrayed for this feste in euery wyse
As ferforth as his conning may suffyse.

1 So in all the seven MSS.  2 E. wolde; the rest sholde
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

The morwe cam, and Alla gan him dresse,
And eek his wyf, this emperour to mete;
And forth they ryde in Ioye and in gladnesse.
And whan she sey hir fader in the strete,
She lyghte doun, and salleth him to fete.
"Fader," quod she, "your yonge child Custance
Is now ful clen out of your remembrance.

I am your daughter Custance!" quod she,
"That whylom ye han sent vn-to Surrye.
It am I, fader, that in the salte see
Was put allone and dampned for to dye.
Now, good fader, mercy I yow crye,
Send me namore vn-to noon hethenesse,
But thonketh my lord heer of his kyndenesse."

Who can the pitous Ioye tellen al
Bitwix hem thre, sin they ben thus ymette?
But of my tale make an ende I shal;
The day goth faste, I wol no lenger lette,
This glade folk to dyner they hem sette;
In Ioye and blisse at mete I lete hem dwelle
A thousand fold wel more than I can telle.

This child Maurice was sithen emperour
Maad by the pope, and lyued cristenedly.
To Cristes chirche he dide gret honour;
But I lete al his storie passen by,
Of Custance is my tale specially.
In olde Romayn gestes may men fynde
Maurices lyf; I bere it nought in mynde.

So in all the MSS.; to be read as Custancē (three syllables). See the note.
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

This king Alla, whan he his tyme sey,
With his Custance, his holy wyf so swete,
To Engelond ben they come the ryghte wey,
Wher-as they lyue in Ioye and in quiete.
But litel whyl it lasteth, I yow hete,
Ioye of this world, for tyme wol nat abyde;
Fro day to nyght it changeth as the tyde.

Who lyued cuer in swich delty o day
That him ne moeued other conscience,
Or Ire, or talent, or som kin affray,
Envie, or pryde, or passion, or offence?
I ne sey but for this ende this sentence,
That litel whyl in Ioye or in plesance
Lasteth the blisse of Alla with Custance.

For deth, that taketh of hey and low his rente,
Whan passed was a yeer, euen as I gesse,
Out of this world this king Alla he hente,
For whom Custance hath ful gret heuynesse.
Now lat vs preyen god his soule blesse!
And dame Custance, synally to seye,
Towards the toun of Rome goth hir weye.

To Rome is come this holy creature,
And fyndeth ther hir frenches hole and sounde:
Now is she scaped al hir aventure;
And whan that she hir fader hath ysounde,
Doun on hir kneüs falleth she to grounde;
Wepyng for tendrenesse in herte blythe,
She herieth god an hundred thousand sythe.

1 E. som kynnes; Cm. sumkenys; Hl. som maner; Hn. Cp. Pt. som kyn; Ln. sumkin.
2 E. praye to; Hl. pray that; the rest preyen, prayen, preien, or preynt.
3 Supplied from Hl. The rest omit ther, but the omission spoils the line.
GROUP B. THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.  37

In vertu and in holy almes-dede
They lyuen alle, and neuer a-sonder wende;
Til deth departed hem, this lyf they lede.
And fareth now wel, my tale is at an ende.
Now Iesu Crist, that of his myght may sende
Ioye after wo, gouerne vs in his grace,
And kepe vs alle that ben in this place!  Amen.

Here endeth the tale of the man of Lawe.

[Here follows The Shipman's Prologue (miscalled in most MSS. The Squire's Prologue), ll. 1163-1190; printed in 'The Prioresses Tale, &c., ed. Skeat, p. 6. See that volume for an account of the est of Group B.]
The wordes of the Hoost to the Phisicien and the Pardoner.

Our hoste gan to swere as he were wood,
'Harro!,' quod he, 'by nayles and by blood,
This was a fals cherl and a false Justise!
As shamful deeth as herte may deuyse
Come to thise Iuges and her advocats!
Algate this sely mayde is slayn, alaz!
Alas! to dere boughte she beautee!
Wherfor I seye al day, as men may see,
That yiftes of fortune or of nature
Been cause of deeth to many a creature.
Hir beautee was hir deeth, I dar wel sayn;
Alas! so pitously as she was slayn! 8
Of bothe yiftes that I speke of now
Men han ful ofte more harm than prow.

1 E. false Iuges; but no other MS. inserts false.
2 Lines 291, 292, stand thus in E. Hn. Cm. Pt.; but Cp. has—So false upon his body and his bones The deuyl I bekenne him al at ones; so also Ln. Hl.
3 E. Hn. and; the rest or.
4 So E. Hn.; the rest of.
6 E. Hn. for harm; the rest omit for. Hl. omits ll. 299, 300.
GROUP C. WORDS OF THE HOST.

But trewely, myn owen mayster dere,
This is a pitous tale for to here.
But natheles, passe ouer, is¹ no fors;
I prey to god, so saue thy gentil cors,

Thyn Ypocras, and eek thy Galianes,
And euery boist ful of thy letuarie;
God blesse hem; and our lady seinte Marie!
So mot I theen, thou art a propre man,
And lyk a prelat, by seint Ronyan!

Seyde I nat wel? I can nat speke in terme;
But wel I wot, thou dost my herte to erme,
That I almost haue caught a cardiale.
By corpus bones! but I haue triacle,
Or elles a draught of moyste and corny ale,
Or but I here anon a mery tale,
Myn herte is lost for pitee of this mayde.
Thou bel amy, thou pardoner,' he seyde,
'Tel vs som mirthe or Iapes ryght anon.'
'It shall be doon,' quod he, 'by seint Ronyon!'

But first,' quod he, 'heer at this ale-stake
I wol both drinke, and eten of a cake.'

But² ryght anon thise gentils gonne to crye,
'Nay! lat him telle of vs no ribaudye³;
Tel vs som moral thing, that we may lere
Som wit, and thanne wol we gladly here.'
'I graunte, ywis,' quod he, 'but I mot thinke¼
Vp-on som honest thing, whyl that I drinke.

¹ Hl. this is; the rest omit this.
² E. Hn. And; the rest But.
³ E. Hn. Cp. Hl. ribaudye; Ln. rebaudie; Cm. rebaudrye; Pt. rybaudyre.
¼ For ll. 316, 317, Hl. has—Gladly, quod he, and sayde as ye schal heere.
But in the cuppe wil I me bethinke.
ror I can al by rote that I telle.
My theme is alwey oon, and euer was:

"Radix malorum est Cupiditas."

First I pronounce whennes that I co
And than my bulles shewe I, alle and s
Our lige lordes seel on my patente
That shewe I first, my body to werente,
That no man be so bold, ne preest ne c
Me to destourbe of Cristes holy werk;
And after that than telle I forth my tales
Bulles of popes and of cardinales,
Of patriarkes, and bishoppes I shewe;
And in Latyn I speke a wordes feue,
To saffron with my predicacioun,
And for to stire men\(^1\) to deuocioun.
Than shewe I forth my longe cristal stor
Ycrammed ful of cloutes and of bones;
Reliks been the
And it is hool anon; and furthermore,  
Of pokkes and of scabbe, and euery sore  
Shal euery sheep be hool, that of this welle  
Drinketh a draughte; tak kepe eek what I telle.  
If that the good-man, that the bestes oweth,  
Wol every wike, er that the cok him croweth,  
Fastinge, drinken of this welle a draughte,  
As thilke holy Iewe our eldres taughte,  
His bestes and his stoor shal multiplye.  
And, sirs, also it heleth Ialousye;  
For, though a man be falle in Ialous rage,  
Let maken with this water his potage,  
And neuer shal he more his wyfe mistriste,  
Though he the soth of hir defaute wiste.  
Heer is a miteyn eek, that ye may see.  
He that his hond wol putte in this miteyn,  
He shal haue multiplying of his greyn,  
Whan he hath sowen, be it whete or otres,  
So that he offre pens, or elles grotes.  
Good men and wommen, o thing warne I yow,  
If any wight be in this chirche now,  
That hath doon sinne horrible, that he  
Dar nat, for shame, of it yshriuen be,  
Swich folk shul haue no power ne no grace  
To offren to my reliks in this place.  
And who so fyndeth him out of swich blame,  
He wol com vp and offre in goddes name,
And I assoille him \(^1\) by the auctoritee
Which that by bulle ygraunted was to me.'

By this gaude haue I wonne, yeer by yeer,
An hundred mark sith I was Pardonere.
I stonde lyk a clerk in my pulpet,
And whan the lewed peple is doun yset,
I preche, so as ye haue herd biforn,
And telle an hundred false Iapes more.
Than peyne I me streche forth the nekke,
And est and west vpon the peple I bekke,
As doth a dowue sitting on a berne.
Myn hondes and my tonge goon so yerne,
That it is Ioye to se my bisynesse.
Of auairece and of swich cursednesse
Is al my preching, for to make hem fre
To yeue her pens, and namely vn-to me.
For my entent is nat but for to winne,
And no-thing for correccioun of sinne.
I rekke neuer, whan that \(^2\) they ben beryed,
Though that her soules goon a blakeberyed!
For certes, many a predicacioun
Comth ofte tyme of yuel entencioun;
Som for plesaunce of folk and flaterye,
To been auauenced by ypocrisyey,
And som for veyne glorie, and som for hate.
For, whan I dar noon other wayes debate,
Than wol I stinge him with my tonge smerte
In preching, so that he shal nat asterte
To been defamed falsly, if that he
Hath trespassed to my brethren or to me.
For, though I telle nought his propre name,
Men shal wel knowe that it is the same

\(^1\) E. Hl. hem; the rest him or hym.  \(^2\) E. Hl. omit that; the rest have it.
GROUP C. THE PARDONER'S PROLOGUE.

By signes and by othere circumstances.
Thus quyte I folk that doon vs displesances;
Thus spitte I out my venim vnder hewe
Of holynesse, to seme holy and trewe.
    But shortly myn entente I wol deuyse;
I preche of no-thing but for coueityse.
Therfor my theme is yet, and euer was—

"Radix malorum est cupiditas."

Thus can I preche agayn that same vice
Which that I vse, and that is avarice.
But, though my-self be gilty in that sinne,
Yet can I maken other folk to twinne
From avarice, and sore to repente.
But that is nat my principal entente.
I preche no-thing but for coueityse;
Of this matere it outhte ynough suffyse.
    Than telle I hem ensamples many oon
Of olde stories, longe tyme agoon:
For lewed peple louen tales olde;
Swich thinges can they wel reporte and holde.
What? trowe ye that, whyles
And winne gold and siluer for I tecche,
That I wol lyue in pouert wilfully?
Nay, nay, I thoughte it neuer trewely!
For I wol preche and begge in sondry londes;
I wol not do no labour with my hondes,
Ne make baskettes, and lyue therby,
Because I wol nat beggen ydelly.
I wol noon of the apostles counterfete;
I wol haue money, wolle, chese, and whete,

1 So Hn.; E. Pt. the whiles; Cm. that whilis that; Cp. Ln. whilcesthat; whiles.
GROUP C. THE PARDONERS TALE.

Al were it yeuen of the pourest \(^1\) page,
Or of the pourest widwe in a village,
Al sholde hir children sterue for famyne.
Nay! I wol drinke licour of the vyne!

But herketh, lordings, in conclusioun;
Your lyking is that I shal telle a tale.
Now haue I dronke a draughte of corny ale,
[Parfay], I hope I shal yow telle a thing
That shal, by resoun, been at your lyking.
For, though myself be a ful vicious man,
A moral tale yet I yow telle can,
Which I am wont to preche, for to winne.
Now holde your pees, my tale I wol beginne.

Heere bigynneth the Pardoners tale.

In Flaundres whylom was a companye
Of yonge folk, that haunteden folye,
As ryot, hasard, stewes, and tauernes,
Wher as, with harpes, lutes, and giternes,
They daunce and playe at deess bothe day and nyght,
And ete also and drinken ouer her nyght,
Thurgh which they doon the deucl sacrifice.
With-in that deues temple, in cursed wyse,
By superfluitee abhominable;
Her othes been so grete and so damnable,
That it is grisy for to here hem swere;
Our blissed lorde body they to-tere;
Hem thoughte Iewes\(^2\) rente him nought ymough;
And ech of hem at othere sinne lough.

\(^1\) Hl. prestes.
\(^2\) So Cp. Lm. Hl.; E. Hn. Crm. that Iewes; Pt. þe Iwes.
GROUP C. THE PARDONERES TALE.

And ryght anon than comen tombesteres
Fety and smale, and yonge fruytesteres,
Singers with harpes [eek, and] wafereres,
Whiche been the verray dueles officeres 480
To kindle and blowe the fyr of [luxurye],
That is annexed vn-to glotonye;
The holy writake I to my witnesse,
That luxurie is in wyn and dronkenesse.

Herodes (who so wel the stories soughte)\(^1\),
Whan he of wyn was replet at his feste,
Ryght at his owen table he yaf his heste 490
To slean the Baptist Iohn ful giltelees.
Senek seith eek\(^2\) a good word doutelees;
He seith he can no difference fynde
Bitwix a man that is out of his mynde
And a man which that is dronkelewe, 495
But that woodnesse, yfallen in a shrewe,
Persuereth lenger than doth dronkenesse.
O glotonye, ful of cursednesse,
O cause first of our confusioun,
O original of our dampancioun, 500
Til Crist had bought vs with his blood agayn!
Lo, how dere, shortly for to sayn,
Abought was thilke cursed vilanye;
Corrupt was al this world for glotonye!
Adam our fader, and his wyf also, 505
Fro Paradys to labour and to wo
Were duien for that vice, it is no drede;
For whyl that Adam fasted, as I rede,

E. Ha. Cm. Pt. Hl. agree here; Cp. Ln. have two additional lines, but are probably spurious.
\(^2\) Cp. Ln. eek; the rest omit it.
He was in Paradys; and whan that he
Eet of the fruyt defended on the tree, 510
Anon he was out cast to wo and peyne.
O glotonye, on thee wel oughte vs pleyne!
O, wiste a man how many maladies
Folwen of excesse and of glotonyes,
He wolde been the more mesurable 515
Of his dicte, sittinghe at his table.
Allas! the shorte throte, the tendre mouth,
Maketh that Est and West, and North and South,
In erthe, in eir, in water  men to-swinke
To gete a glotoun deyntee mete and drinke!
Of this matere, o Paul, wel canstow trete,
‘Mete vn-to wombe, and wombe eek vn-to mete,
Shal god destroyen bothe,’ as Paulus seith.
Allas! a foul thing is it, by my feith,
To seye this word, and fouler is the dede, 520
Whan man so drinketh of the whyte and rede,
That of his throte he maketh his pryuee,
Thurgh thilke cursed superfluitee.
The apostel weping scith ful pitiously,
‘Ther walken many of whiche yow told haue I, 530
I seye it now weping with pitous voys,
That thai been enemys of Cristes croys,
Of whiche the ende is deth, wombe is her god.’

How grete labour and cost is thee to fynde! 535
Thise cokes, how they stampen, and streyne, and grynde,
And turnen substaunce in-to accident,
To fulfille al thy likerous talent!

1 E. Hl. man; the rest men.
2 That thai is Tyrwhitt’s reading; Hl. Thay; but the rest have Ther, probably repeated by mistake from l. 530.
Out of the harde bones knokke they
The mary, for they caste nought a-wey
That may go thurgh the golet softe and swote;
Of spicerye, of leef, and bark, and rote
Shal been his sauce ymade by deltyt,
To make him yet a newer appetyt.
But certes, he that haunteth swich delices
Is deed, whyl that he lyueth in tho vices.
A [cursed] thing is wyn, and dronkenesse
Is ful of struyng and of wrecchednesse.
O dronke man, disfigured is thy face,
Sour is thy breeth, foul artow to embracce,
And thurgh thy dronke nose semeth the soun
As though thou seydest ay 'Sampsoun, Sampsoun';
And yet, god wot, Sampsoun drank neuer no wyn.
Thou fallest, as it were a stiked swyn,
Thy tonge is lost, and al thy honest cure;
For dronkenesse is verray sepulture
Of mannes wit and his discrucioun.
In whom that drinke hath dominacioun,
He can no conseil kepe, it is no drede.
Now kepe yow fro the whyte and fro the rede,
And namely fro the whyte wyn of Lepe,
That is to selle in Fishstrete or in Chepe.
This wyn of Spayne crepeth subtilly
In owther wynes, growing faste by,
Of which ther ryseth swich fumositee,
That whan a man hath dronken draughtes thre,
And weneth that he be at hoom in Chepe,
He is in Spayne, ryght at the toune of Lepe,
Nat at the Rochel, ne at Burdeux toun;
And thanne wol he seye, 'Sampsoun, Sampsoun.'
GROUP C. THE PARDONERES TALE.

But herkneth, lordings\(^1\), o word, I yow preye,
That alle the souereyn actes, dar I seye,
Of victories in the olde testament,
Thurgh verray god, that is omnipotent,
Were doon in abstinence and in preyere;
Loketh the Bible, and ther ye may it lere.

Loke, Attila, the grete conquerour,
Deyde in his sleep, with shame and dishonour,
Bledinge ay at his nose in dronkenesse;
A capitayn shoulde lyue in sobrenesse.
And ouer al this, auyseth yow ryght wel
What was comaunded vn-to Lamuel—
Nat Samuel, but Lamuel, seye I—
Redeth the Bible, and fynde it expresly
Of wyn yeuing to hem that han Iustise;
Namore of this, for it may wel suffise.

And now that\(^2\) I haue spoke of glotonye,
Now wol I yow defenden hasardrye.
Hasard is verray moder of lesinges,
And of deceit, and cursed forsweringes,
Blaspheme\(^3\) of Crist, manslaughtre, and wast also
Of catel and of tyme; and forthermo,
It is repreude and contrarie of honour
For to ben holde a commune hasardour.
And euer the heyer he is of estaat,
The more is he holden desolaat.
If that a prince vseth hasardrye,
In alle gouernaunce and policye
He is, as by commune opinoun,
Yholde the lasse in reputacioun.

\(^1\) E. lordes; the rest lordinges, lordynge, lordynge.
\(^2\) E. omits that; the rest have it.
\(^3\) E. Blasphemyng; the rest Blaspheme.
GROUP C. THE PARDONERES TALE.

Stilbon, that was a wys embassadour,
Was sent to Corinthe, in ful greet honour,
Fro Lacidomie, to make her alliaunce.
And whan he cam, him happede, par chaunce,
That alle the grettest that were of that lond,
Pleyinge atte hasard he hem fond.
For which, as sone as it myghte be,
He stal him hoom agayn to his contree,
And seyde, 'ther wol I nat lese my name ;
Ne I wol nat take on me so great defame,
Yow for to allye vn-to none hasardours.
Sendeth som othere wyse embassadours ;
For, by my trouthe, me were leuer dye,
Than I yow sholde to hasardours allye.
For ye that been so glorious in honours
Shul nat allyen yow with hasardours
As by my wil, ne as by my treete.'
This wyse philosophre thus seyde he.

Loke eek that to the king Demetrius
The king of Parthes, as the book seith vs,
Sente him a paire of dees of gold in scorn,
For he hadde vset hasard ther-biforn ;
For which he heeld his glorie or his renoun
At no value or reputacioun.
Lordes may fynden other maner pley
Honeste ynough to dryue the day awey.

Now wol I spoke of othes false and grete
A word or two, as olde bokes trete.
Gret swering is a thing abhominable,
And fals swering is yet more repreuable.

\[ In. Ny ; Cm. Nay (both put for Ne I) which shewes the scansion. \\
II. som ; which the rest omit. \\
In. Cm. Op. Pt. to ; which E. Lu. Hl. omit. \\
L. Hl. om. yet. \]
The heye god forbad swering at al,
Witnesse on Mathew; but in special
Of swering seith the holy Ieremye,
‘Thou shalt seye sooth thyn othes, and nat lye,
And swere in dome, and eek in ryghtwisnesse;’
But ydel swering is a cursednesse.
Bihold and se, that in the firste table
Of heye goddes hestes honorable,
How that the seconde heste of him is this—
‘Tak nat my name in ydel or amis.’
Lo, rather he forbedeth swich swering
Than homicyde or many a cursed thing;
I see that, as by ordre, thus it stondeth;
This knowen, that his hestes vnderstondeth,
How that the second heste of god is that.
And forther ouer, I wol thee telle al plat,
That vengeance shal nat parten from his hous,
That of his othes is to outrageous.
‘By goddes precious herte, and by his nayles,
And by the blode of Crist, that it is in Hayles,
Seuen is my chaunce, and thyn is cink and treye;
By goddes armes, if thou falsly playe,
This dagger shal thurgh-out thyn herte go’—
This fruyt cometh of the bicched bones two,
Forswering, ire, falsnesse, homicyde.
Now, for the loue of Crist that for vs dyde,
Leueth your othes, bothe grete and smale;
But, sirs, now wol I telle forth my tale.
Thise rytoure three, of whiche I telle,
Longe erst er pryme rong of any belle,

1 Hn. Cm. Hi. many a; E. any; Cp. Pt. Ln. any other.
2 So E. Cp.; Hl. bicchid; Ln. becched; Hn. Cm. bicche; Pt. thilk.
3 E. Hn. Leote; the rest Leueth.
GROUP C. THE PARDONERES TALE.

Were set hem in a tauerne for ° to drinke;
And as they satte, they herde a belle clinke
Biforn a cors, was caried to his graue;
That oon of hem gan callen to his knaue,
'Go bet,' quod he, 'and axe redily,
What cors is this that passeth heer forby;
And look that thou reporte his name wel.'
'Sir,' quod this boy, 'it nedeth neueradel.
It was me told er ye cam heer two houres;
He was, parde, an old felawe of youres;
And sodeynly he was ysslayn to-nyght,
For-drone, as he sat on his bench vpyrgh;
Ther cam a priuue theef; men clepeth deeth,
That in this contree al the peple sleeth,
And with his sperre he smoot his herte atwo,
And weneth his wey with-outen wordes mo.
He hath a thousand slayn this pestilence:
And, maister, er ye come in his presence,
Me thinketh that it were necessarie
For to be war of swich an aduersarie:
Beth redy for to mete him euermore.
Thus taughte me my dame, I sey namore.'
'By seinte Marie,' seyle this tauerner,
'The child seith sooth, for he hath slayn this yeer,
Henne ouer a myle, with-in a greet village,
Both man and womman, child and hyne, and page.
I trowe his habitacioun be there;
To been auysed greet wisdom it were,
Er that he dide a man a dishonour.'
'Ye, goddes armes,' quod this ryotour,

1 Cp. Pt. Hl. for; which the rest omit.
'Is it swich peril with him for to mete?
I shal him seke by weye and eek by strete,
I make auow to goddes digne bones!

Herkneth, felawes, we thre been al ones;
Lat ech of vs holde vp his hond til other,
And ech of vs bicomen otheres brother,
And we wol sleen this false traytour deeth;
He shal be slayn, which that so many sleeth,
By goddes dignitee, er it be nyght.'

Togidres han thise thre her trouthes plyght,
To lyue and dyen ech of hem for other,
As though he were his Owen yboren ¹ brother.
And vp they sterete al ² dronken, in this rage,
And forth they goon towards that village,
Of which the tauerne had spoke biforn,
And many a grisly ooth than han they sworn,
And Cristes blessed body they to-rente—
'Deeth shal be deed, if that they may him hente.'

Whan they goon nat fully half a myle,
Ryght as they wolde han troden ower a style,
An old man and a poure with hem mette.
This olde man ful mekely hem grette,
And seyde thus, 'now, lorde, god yow see!'

The proudest of thise ryotoures three
Answerde agayn, 'what? carl, with sory grace,
Why artow al forwrapped saue thy face?
Why lyuestow so longe in so greet age?'

This olde man gan loke in his visage,
And seyde thus, 'for I ne can nat fynde
A man, though that I walked in-to Ynde,
Neither in citee nor in no village,

¹ E. yboren; Hn. ybore; Cm. bore; Pt. born; Cp. Lm. Hr. sworn.
GROUP C. THE PARDONERES TALE.

That wolde chaunce his youthe for myn age;
And therfore mot I han myn age stille,
As longe time as it is goddes wille.

Ne deeth, alsa! ne wol nat han my lyf;
Thus walke I, lyk a restees caityf,
And on the ground, which is my modres gate,
I knokke with my staf, bothe erly and late,
And seye, "leue moder, leet me in!"
Lo, how I vanish, flesh, and blood, and skin!
Allas! whan shul my bones been at reste?
Moder, with yow wolde I chaungen my cheste,
That in my chambre longe tyme hath be,
Ye! for an heyre clowt to wrappe me!"
But yet to me she wol nat do that grace,
For which ful pale and welked is my face.

But, sirs, to yow it is no curteisy
to speken to an old man vilanye,
But he trespasses in worde, or elles in dede.
In holy writ ye may your-self wel rede,
"Agayns an old man, hoor vpon his heed,
Ye sholde aryse," wherfor I yeue yow reed,
Ne doth vn-to an old man noon harm now,
No more than\(^1\) ye wolde men dine to yow
In age, if that ye so longe abyde;
And god be with yow, wher ye go or ryde.
I mot go thider as I have to go.'

'Nay, olde cherl, by god, thou shalt nat so,'
Seyde this other hasardour anon,
'Thou partest nat so lyghtly, by seint Iohn!
Thou spak ryght now of thilke traitour deeth,
That in this contree alle our frenedes sleeth.

\(^1\) E. Ha. than that; the rest omit that.
GROUP C. THE PARDONERES TALE.

Haue heer my trouthe, as thou art his aspye,
Tel wher he is, or thou shalt it abye,
By god, and by the holy sacrament!
For soothly thou art oon of his assent,
To sleen vs yonge folk, thou false theef!
‘Now, sirs,’ quod he, ‘if that yow⁴ be so leef
To fynde deeth, turne vp this croked wey,
For in that groue I lafte him, by my sey,
Vnder a tree, and ther he wol abyde;
Nat for your bost he wol him no-thing hyde.
Se ye that ooke? ryght ther ye shul him fynde.
God saue yow, that boughte agayn mankynde,
And yow amende!’—thus seyde this olde man.
And euerich of thise rytotoues ran,
Til he cam to that tree, and ther they founde
Of florins fyne of golde ycoyned rounde
Wel ny an eigthe bussheles, as hem thoughte.
No lenger thanne after deeth they soughte,
But ech of hem so glad was of that syghte,
For that the florins been so fayre and bryghte,
That doun they sette hem by this precious hord.
The worste of hem he spake the firste word.
‘Brethren,’ quod he, ‘tak kepe what I seye;
My wit is greet, though that I bourde and pleye.
This tresor hath fortune vn-to vs yeuen,
In mirthe and Iolitee our lyf to lyuen,
And lyghtly as it comth, so wol we spende.
Ey! goddes precious dignitee! who wende
To-day, that we sholde han so fayr a grace?
But myght this gold be caried fro this place
Hoom to myn hous, or elles vn-to youres—

¹ E. Cm. ye; Hn. Hl. yow; Cp. Pt. Ln. to you.
GROUP C.  THE PARDONERES TALE.

For wel ye wot that al this gold is oures—
Than were we in hey felicitee.
But trewely, by daye it may nat be;
Men wolde seyn that we were theues stronge,
And for our owen tresor doon vs honge. 790
This tresor moste ycaried be by nyghte
As wysly and as slyly as it myghte.
Wherfore I rede that cut among vs alle
Be drawe, and lat se wher the cut wol falle;
And he that hath the cut with herte blythe
Shal renne to the 1 toune, and that ful swythe,
And bringe vs breed and wyn ful priuely.
And two of vs shul kepen subtilly
This tresor wel; and, if he wol nat tarie,
Whan it is nyght, we wol this tresor carie 800
By oon assent, wher as vs thinketh best.'
That oon of hem the cut broughte in his fest,
And bad him drawe, and loke wher it wolde 2 falle;
And it fil on the youngest of hem alle;
And forth toward the toun he wente anon. 805
And al so sone as that he was gon,
That oon of hem 3 spak thus vn-to that other,
'Thou knowest wel thou art my sworen 4 brother,
Thy profit wol I telle thee anon.
Thou wost wel that our felawe is agon; 810
And heer is gold, and that ful greet plente,
That shal departed been among vs thre.
But natheles, if I can shape it so
That it departed were among vs two,

1 Hl. La. the; which the rest omit.
2 E. Hn. Cp. wol; Hl. wil; Cm. Pt. La. wolde.
3 E. omits of hem; the rest have it.
4 This seems best; E. Hn. Pt. sworn; Cm. swore; Cp. La. Hl. sworne.
GROUP C. THE PARDONERES TALE.

Hadde I nat doon a frendes torn to thee?  §13
That other answerde, 'I not how that may be;
He wot how that the gold is with vs tweye,
What shal we doon, what shal we to him seye?'
'Shal it be conseil?' seyde the firste shrewe,
'And I shal tellen thee', in 2 wordes fewe,
What we shal doon, and bringe it wel aboute.'
'I graunte,' quod that other, 'out of doute,
That, by my trouthe, I shal thee nat biwreye.'
'Now,' quod the firste, 'thou wost wel we be tweye,
And two of vs shul strenger be than oon.
Lok whan that he is set, and ryght 3 anoon
Ar ys, as though thou woldest with him pleye;
And I shal ryue him thurgh the sydes tweye
Wylh that thou strogelest with him as in game,
And with thy dagger lok thou do the same;
And than shal al this gold departed be,
My dere frend, bitwixen me and thee;
Than may we bothe our lustes al fulfille,
And pleye at dees ryght at our owen wille.'
And thus acorded been thise shrewes tweye
To sleen the thriddle, as ye han herd me seye.

This yongest, which that wente vn-to the toun,
Ful ofte in herte he rolleth vp and doun
The beauete of thise florins newe and bryghte.
'O lord!' quod he, 'if so were that I myghte
Haue al this tresor to my self allone,
Ther is no man that lyueth vnder the trone
Of god, that sholde lyue so mery as I,'
And atte laste the feend, our enemye,

Hl. the; which the rest omit.
E. Hn. Cm. in a; the rest omit a.
E. Hn. Cm. that right; Hl. thou right; Cp. and thanne; Pt. Ls. and
I take and from Cp. Pt. Ls., and ryght from E. Hn. Cm. BL.
GROUP C. THE PARDONERES TALE.

Putte in his thought that he shold poysen beye,
With which he myghte sleen his felawes tweye;
For why the feend fond him in swich lyninge,
That he had leue him to sorwe bringe,
For this was outrely his ful entente
To sleen hem bothe, and neuer to repente.
And forth he goth, no lenger wolde he tarie,
Into the toun, vn-to a pothecarie,
And preyede him that he him wolde selle
Som poysen, that he myghte his rattles quelle;
And eek ther was a polcat in his hawe,
That, as he seyde, his capouns hadde yslawe,
And sayn he wolde wreke him, if he myghte,
On vermin, that destroyede him by nyghte.

The pothecarie answerede, 'and thou shalt haue
A thing that, al so god my soule saue,
In al this world ther nis no creature,
That ete or dronke hath of this confiture
Nought but the mountance of a corn of whete,
That he ne shal his lyf anon forlete;
Ye, sterue he shal, and that in lasse whyle
Than thou wolt gon a paas nat but a myle;
This poysen is so strong and violent.'

This cursed man hath in his hond yhent
This poysen in a box, and sith he ran
In-to the nexte strete, vn-to a man,
And borwed of him large botels thre;
And in the two his poysen poured he;
The thridde he kepe clene for his drinke.
For al the nyght he shoop him for to swinke

1 E. Cm. hem; the rest hym or him.
2 E. Hn. Cm. is; the rest nys or nis.
3 Hl. of; which the rest omit.
4 E. his owene; but the rest omit owene.
...they had cast his deeds
Right so they han him slayn, and th
And whan that this was doon, thus
'Now lat vs sitte and drinke, and m
And afterward we wol his body berie
And with that word it happede him,
To take the botel ther the poysen was
And drank, and yaf his felawe drinke,
For which anon they storuen bothe the.

But, certes, I suppose that Auicen
Wroot neuer in no canon, ne in no fe
Mo wonder signes of empoisoning
Than hadde thise wrecches two, er he
Thus ended been thise homicydes two.
And eek the false empoysoner also.

O cursed sinne, ful of cursednesse
O trayours homicyde, o wikkednesse
O glotonye, luxurie, and hasardrye th
Thou blasphemoour of Crist with vilan
And other prete of great profan new.
And ware yow fro the sinne of avarice.
Myn holy pardoun may yow alle warice,
So that ye ofre nobles or sterlinges,
Or elles siluer broches, spones, ringes.
Boweth your heed vnder this holy bulle!
Cometh\(^1\) vp, ye wyues, offreth of your wolle!
Your name\(^2\) I entre heer in my rolle anon;
In-to the blisse of heuen shul ye gon;
I yow assoile, by myn hey power,
Yow that wol ofre, as clene and eek as cleer
As ye were born; and, lo, sirs, thus I preche.
And Iesu Crist, that is our soules leche,
So graunte yow his pardon to receyue;
For that is best; I wol yow nat deceyue.

But sirs, o word forgat I in my tale,
I haue reliks and pardon in my male,
As fayre as any man in Engelond,
Whiche were me yeuen by the popes hond.
If any of yow wol, of deuocioun,
Offren, and han myn absoluicioun,
Cometh\(^3\) forth anon, and kneleth heer adoun,
And mekely receyueth my pardoun:
Or elles, taketh pardon as ye wende,
Al newe and fresh, at euery myles ende,
So that ye offren alwey newe and newe
Nobles and\(^4\) pens, which that be gode and trewe.
It is an honour to euerich that is heer,
That ye mowe haue a suffisant pardoneer
Tassoille yow, in contree as ye ryde,
For auentures which that may bityde.

\(^1\) E. Com; the rest Cometh, Comyth.
\(^2\) E. Hl. names; the rest name.
\(^3\) E. Hn. Com; the rest Cometh, Comyth.
\(^4\) E. Hn. or; the rest and.
Perauenture ther may fallen oon or two
Doun of his hors, and breke his nekke atwo.
Lok which a seurtee is it to yow alle
That I am in your felawship ysfalle,
That may assoille yow, both more and lasse,
Whan that the soule shal fro the body passe.
I rede that our host heer shal biginne,
For he is most envoluped in sinne.
Com forth, sir host, and offre first anon,
And thou shalt kisse the relikes eucrychon,
Ye, for a grote! vnboikel anon thy purs.'

'Nay, nay,' quod he, 'than haue I Cristes curs!
Lat be,' quod he, 'it shal nat be, so theech!'
Thou woldest make me kisse thyn olde breech,
And swere it were a relik of a seint!'

This pardonere answerde nat a word;
So wroth he was, no word ne wolde he seye.

'Now,' quod our host, 'I wol no lenger pleye
With thee, ne with noon other angry man.'
But ryght anon the worthy knyght bigan,
Whan that he sey that al the peple lough,
'Namore of this, for it is ryght ynoough;
Sir pardonere, be glad and mery of chere;
And ye, sir host, that ben to me so dere,
I prey yow that ye kisse the pardonere.
And pardonere, I prey thee, draw thee neer,
And, as we diden, lat vs laughe and pleye.'
Anon they kiste, and riden forth her weye.

Heere is ended the Pardoners tale.
GROUP G. THE SECOND NUNS TALE

The prologo of the Soconde Nonnes tale.

THE ministre and the norice vn-to vices,
Which that men clepe in English ydnelnesse,
That porter of the gate is of delices,
To eschue, and by hir contrarie hir oppresse,
That is to seyn, by leueful bisinesse,
Wel oughten we to doon al our entente,
Lest that the feend thurgh ydnelnesse vs hente.  

For he, that with his thousand cordes slye
Continuellly vs waiteth to biclappe,
Whan he may man in ydnelnesse espye,
He can so lyghtly cacche him in his trappe,
Til that a man be hent ryght by the lappe,
He nis nat war the feend hath him in honde;
Wel oughte vs werche, and ydelnes withstonde.

And though men dradden neuer for to dye,
Yet seen men wel by resoun doutelees,
That ydnelnesse is roten² slogardye,
Of which ther neuer comth no good encrees³;
And seen, that sloute hir⁴ holdeth in a lees
Only to slepe, and for to ete and drinke,
And to deouren al that othere swinke.

¹ Hn. Cm. Cp. Hl. hente ; E. shente, Pt. shent, Ln. chent, wrongly
² So E. Hn. Pt. Ln. ; Cm. rote ; Cp. hoten ; Hl. rote of.
³ E. Hn. no good encrees ; Cp. Pt. Ln. noon encrse ; Hl. good encrees ;
↔ encrees.
⁴ Cm. hire ; Pt. bure ; Hn. Cp. Ln. bir ; E. it ; Hl. he.
And thou, that flour
Of whom that Ber
to thee at my beginning
Thou comfort of vs wret
Thy marrets deeth, that
The eternal lyf, and of u
As man may after redeem
Thou mayde and moder,
Thou welle of mercy, sin
In whom that god, for be
That no desire the ma.
His same in node and be
Bar of thy body, and dweltest mayden pure,
The creatour of every creature.

Assembled is in thee magnificence
With mercy, goodnesse, and with swich pitee
That thou, that art the sonne of excellence,
Nat only helpest hem that prayen thee,
But ofte tyme, of thy benignitee,
Ful frely, er that men thyn help biseche,
Thou goost biforn, and art her lyues leche.

Now help, thou meke and blissful fayre mayde,
Me, flemed wrecche, in this desert of galle;
Think on the womman Cananee, that sayde
That whelpes eten somme of the crommes ale
That from her lordes table been yfalle;
And though that I, vnworthy sone of Eue,
Be sinful, yet accephe my bileue.

And, for that feith is deed with-outen werkes,
So for to worchen yif me wit and space,
That I be quit fro thennes that most derk is!
O thou, that art so fayr and ful of grace,
Be myn aduocat in that heye place
Ther as withouten ende is songe ‘Osanne,’
Thou Cristes moder, doughter dere of Anne!

And of thy lyghty my soule in prison lyghte,
That troubled is by the contagioun
Of my body, and also by the wyghte
Of erthly luste and fals affeccioune;
O hauen of refut, o saluacioun
Of hem that been in sorwe and in distresse,
Now help, for to my werk I wol me dresse.
GROUP G. THE SECONDE NONNES TALE.

Yet preye I yow that reden that I wryte,
Foryeue me, that I do no diligence
This ilke storie subtillly to endyte\(^1\);
For both haue I the wordes and sentence
Of him\(^2\) that at the seintes reuerence
The storie wroot, and folwe\(^3\) hir legende,
And preyth, that yc wol my werk amende.

[THE PROEM.]

Interpretacio nominis Cecilie, quam ponit frater Iacob
Ianuensis in legenda.

First wolde I yow\(^4\) the name of seint Cecilie
Expoune, as men may in hir storie see,
It is to seye in english 'heuene lilie,'
For pure chastnesse of virginitee;
Or, for she whytnesse hadde of honestee,
And grene of conscience, and of good fame
The sote savour\(^5\), 'lilie' was hir name.

Or Cecile is to seye 'the wey to blynde,'
For she ensample was by good techinge;
Or elles Cecile, as I writen synde,
Is ioyned, by a manere conioyninge
Of 'heuene' and 'lia'; and heer, in figuringe,
The 'heuene' is set for thought of holinesse,
And 'lia' for hir lasting bisinesse.

\(^1\) Hn. tendite (shewing the scansion).
\(^3\) Cm. folwe; E. Hn. Hl. folwen; Cp. Pt. Ln. folowen.
\(^4\) E. I pray; Cp. And pray I; the rest And pray (or prei, or preye).
\(^5\) E. omits yow; the rest retain it.
\(^6\) E. savour; the rest savour; see l. 229.
GROUP G. THE SECONDE NONNES TALE.

Cecile may eek be seyd in this manere,
‘Wanting of blyndnesse,’ for hir grete lyghte
Of sapience, and for hir thewes clere;
Or elles, lo! this maydens name bryghte
Of ‘heuene’ and ‘leos’ comth, for which by ryghte
Men myghte hir wel ‘the heuen of peple’ calle,
Ensampler of gode and wyse werkes alle.

For ‘leos’ ‘peple’ in english is to seye,
And ryght as men may in the heuene see
The sonne and mone and sterres euer wyse,
Ryght so men gostly, in this mayden free,
Seyen of feith the magnanimitee,
And eek the cleernesse hool of sapience,
And sondry werkes, bryghte of excellence.

And ryght so as thes philosophres wryte
That heuen is swift and round and eek brenninge,
Ryght so was fayre Cecilie the whyte
Ful swift and bys wyer in good werkinge,
And round and hool in good perseueringe,
And brenning wyer in charite ful bryghte;
Now haue I yow declared what she hyghte.

Explicit.

Here bigynneth the Seconde Nonnes tale, of the lyf of Seinte Cecile.

This mayden bryght Cecile, as hir lyf seith,
Was comen of Romayns, and of noble kynde,
And from hir cradel vp fostred in the feith.
Of Crist, and bar his gospel in hir mynde;
She neuer cessed, as I writen fynde,
Of hir preyere, and god to loue and drede,
Biseking him to kepe hir maydenhede.

And whan this mayden sholde vnto a man
Ywedded be, that was ful yong of age,
Which that ycleped was Valerian,
And day was comen of hir mariaghe,
She, ful devout and humble in hir corage,
Vnder hir robe of gold, that sat ful fayre,
Had next hir flesshe yclad hir in an heyre.

And whyl the organes 1 maden melodye,
To god alone in herte thus sang she;
'O lord, my soule and eek my body gye
Unwemmed, lest that I confounde be:'
And, for his loue that deyde upon a tree,
Euery seconde or thridde day she faste,
Ay biddinge in hir orisons ful faste.

[The tyme is comen, whan she moste] gon
With hir housbonde, as ofte is the manere,
And prieuely to him she seyde anon,
'O swete and wel biloued spouse dere,
Ther is a conseil, and ye wolde it here,
Which that ryght fayn I wolde vnto yow seye,
So that ye swere ye shul me nat biwrye.'

Valerian gan faste vnto hir swere,
That for no cas, ne thing that myghte be,
He sholde neuer mo biwreyen here;

1 Hl. Hn. organs; Ln. orgens; E. Orgues; Cp. Orgles; Pt. Orgel.
2 E. it; the rest I.
3 E. Ha. and; the rest or.
4 E. me; the rest it; see l. 150.
GROUP G. THE SECONDE NONNES TALE. 67

And thanne at erst to him thus seyde she,
' I haue an angel which that loueth me,
That with greet loue, wher so I wake or slepe,
Is redy ay my body for to kepe.'

Valerian, corrected as god wolde,
Answerde agayn, ' if I shal trusken thee,
Lat me that angel se, and him biholde;
And if that it a verray angel be,
Than wol I doon as thou hast preyed me;
And if thou loue another man, for sothe
Ryght with this swerd than wol I sle yow bothe.'

Cecile answerde anon ryght in this wyse,
' If that yow list, the angel shul ye see,
So that ye trowe in Crist and yow baptysse.
Goth forth to Via Apia,' quod she,
' That fro this toun ne stant but myles three,
And, to the poure folkes that ther dwelle,
Sey hem ryght thus, as that I shal yow telle.'

Telle hem that I, Cecile, yow to hem sente,
To shewn yow the gode Vrban the olde,
For secre nedes 1 and for good entente.
And whan that ye seint Vrban han biholde,
Telle him the wordes whiche I 2 to yow tolde;
And whan that he hath purged yow fro sinne,
Thanne shul ye se that angel, er ye twinne.'

1 E. thynge; the rest nedes, nedis, needes.
2 E. C. L. H. whiche pat I; but Hn. Cam. Pt. omit that.
Valerian is to the place ygon,
And ryght as him was taught by his lerninge,
He fond this holy olde Vrban anon
Among the seintes buriels lotinge.
And he anon, with-outen taryinge,
Dide his message; and whan that he it tolde,
Vrban for ioye his hondes gan vp holde.

The teres from his y'en leet he falle——
"Almyghty lord, o Iesu Crist," quod he,
"Sower of chast conseil, herde of vs alle,
The fruyt of thilke seed of chastitee
That thou hast sowe in Cecile tak to thee!"
Lo, lyk a bisy bee, with-outen gyle,
Thee serueth ay thyyn owen thrall Cecile!

For thilke spouse, that she took but now
Ful lyk a fiers leoun, she sendeth here,
As meke as euery was any lamb, to yow!'
And with that wordes, anon ther gan appere
An old man, clad in whyte clothes clere,
That hadde a book with lettre of golde in honde,
And gan biforn Valerian to stonde.

Valerian as deed fil doun for drede
When he him sey, and he vp hente him tho,
And on his book ryght thus he gan to rede——
'Oo Lord, oo feith, oo god with-outen mo,
Oo Cristendom, and fader of alle also,
Abouen alle and ' ouer al euerywhere '——
Thise wordes al with golde ywriten were.

1 E. Hl. right; *the rest* but.
2 E. biforo; Hl. to-form; *the rest* biforne, biforne, beforne.
4 E. omits and; *the rest* have it.
GROUP G. THE SECONDE NONNES TALE.

Whan this was rad, than seyde this olde man,  
Leuestow this thing or no? sey ye or nay.'
I leue al this thing,' quod Valerian,
'For sother thing than this, I dar wel say,
Vnder the heuen no wyght thinke may.'
Tho vanisshed the olde man, he niste where,
And Pope Vrban him cristened ryght there.

Valerian gooth hoom, and fynt Cecilie
With-inne his chambre with an angel stonde;
This angel hadde of roses and of lilie
Corones two, the which he bar in honde;
And first to Cecile, as I vnderstonde,
He yaf that oon, and after gan he take
That other to Valerian, hir make.

'With body clene and with vnwemmed thought
Kepeth ay wel thise corones,' quod he;*
'Fro Paradys to yow haue I hem brought,
Ne neuer mo ne shal they roten be,
Ne lese her sote sauour, trusteth me;
Ne neuer wyght shal seen hem with his ye,
But he be chaast and hate vilanye.

And thou, Valerian, for thou so sone
Assentedest to good conseil also,
Sey what thee list, and thou shalt han thy bone.'
'I haue a brother,' quod Valerian tho,
'That in this world I loue no man so.
I pray yow that my brother may han grace
To knowe the trouthe, as I do in this place.'

* E. oother; the rest soother.
* E. Hn. Cm. this; Pt. that; Cp. Ln. Hl. the; see note.
* E. three; Hl. tuo quod he; the rest quod he.
The angel sayde, 'god lyketh thy requeste,
And bothe, with the palm of martirdom,
Ye shullen come vnto his blisful feste.'
And with that word Tiburce his brother com.
And whan that he the sauour vndernom
Which that the roses and the lilies caste,
With-inne his herte he gan to wondre faste,

And sayde, 'I wondre this tym of the yeer
Whennes that sote sauour cometh so
Of rose and lilies that I smelle heer.
For though I hadde hem in myn hondes two,
The sauour myghte in me no depper go.
The sote ^ smel that in myn herte I fynde
Hath chaunged me al in another kynde.'

Valerian sayde, 'two corones han we,
Snow-whyte and rose-reed, that shynen clere,
Whiche that thyn yen han no myght to see;
And as thou smelst hem thurgh my preyere,
So shaltow seen hem, leue brother dere,
If it so be thou wolt, withouten sloute,
Bileue aryght and knowen verray trouthe.'

Tiburce answere, 'seistow this to me
In sothnesse, or in dreem I herkne this?'
'In dremes,' quod Valerian, 'han we be
Vnto this tym, brother myn, ywis.
But now at erst in trouthe our dwelling is.'
'How wostow this,' quod Tiburce, 'in what wyse?'
Quod Valerian, 'that shal I thee deuyse.'

---

^ The MSS. have sweete here; but in l. 247 we find only sote, sote, sote, except sweete in Pr.; in l. 229 we find E. swoote; Rn. swoote; Cm. sote; Hl. swoote; Cp. Pt. Ln. sweete.
GROUP G. THE SECONDE NONNES TALE. 71

The angel of god hath me the 1 trouthe ytaught
Which thou shalt seen, if that thou wolt reneye
The ydoles and be clene, and elles nought,—
And of the miracle of thise corones tweye
Seint Ambrose in his preface list to seye;
Solempnely this noble doctour dere
Commendeth it 2, and seith in this manere:

The palm of martirdom for to receyue,
Seint Cecile, fulfild of goddes yifte,
The world and eek hir chambre gan she weyue;
Witness Tyburces and Valerians 3 shrifte,
To whiche god of his bountee wolde shifte
Corones two of floures wel smellinge,
And made his angel hem the corones bringe:

The mayde hath broght thise 4 men to blisse aboue;
The world hath wist what it is worth, certyn,
Deuocioun of chastitee to loue.—
Tho shewede him Cecile al 5 open and pleyn
That alle ydoles nis but a thing in veyn;
For they been dombe, and therto they been deue,
And charged him his ydoles for to leue.

'Who so that troweth nat this, a beste he is,'
Quod tho Tiburce, 'if that I shal nat lye.'
And she gan kisse his brest, that herde this,
And was ful glad he coude trouthe espye.
'This day I take thee for myn allye,'
Seyde this blissful fayre mayde dere;
And after that she seyde as ye may here:

1 E. Ln. Hl. omit the; the rest have it.
2 E. hym; the rest it.
3 The MSS. have Cecilies, wrongly; see note.
4 E. Hn. omit thise; but the rest retain it, except Cm., which has brought it to bysse.
5 Cp. Pt. Ln. omit al; but the rest retain it.
Lo, ryght so as the loue of Crist,' quod she,
Made me thy brotheres wyf, ryght in that wyse
Anon for myn alle ye heer take I thee,
Sin that thou wolt thyn ydoles despysse.
Go with thy brother now, and thee baptysye,
And make thee clene; so that thou mowe biholde
The angels face of which thy brother told.'

Tiburce answere and seyde, 'brother dere,
First tel me whider I shal, and to what man?'
'To whom?' quod he, 'com forth with ryght good chere,
I wol thee lede vnto the pope Vrban.'
'Til Vrban? brother myn, Valerian,'
Quod tho Tiburce, 'woltow me thider lede?'
Me thinketh that it were a wonder dede.

Ne menestow nat Vrban,' quod he tho,
'That is so ofte dampned to be deed,
And woneth in halkes alwey to and fro,
And dar nat ones putte forth his heed?
Men sholde him brennen in a fyr so reed
If he were founde, or that men myghte him spye;
And we also, to bere him companye—

And whyl we seken thilke diuinitee
That is yhid in heuene priuely,
Algate ybrend in this world shul we be'
To whom Cecile answere boldly,
'Men myghten dreden wel and skilfully
This lyf to lese, myn owen dere brother,
If this were lyuinge only and non other.

1 E. Ha. Cm. that 1; the rest omit that.
GROUP G. THE SECONDE NONNES TALE.

But ther is better lyf in other place,
That neuer shal be lost, ne dred thee nought,
Which goddes sone vs tolde thurgh his grace;
That fadres sone hath alle thinges wrought;
And al that wrought is with a skilful thought,
The gost, that fro the fader gan procede,
Hath sowed hem, withouten any drede.

By word and by miracle goddes sone,
Whan he was in this world, declared here
That ther was other lyf ther men may wone.'
To whom answerde Tiburce, 'o suster dere,
Ne seydestow ryght now in this manere,
Ther nis but o god, lord in sothfastnesse;
And now of three how maystow bere witnesse?'

'That shal I telle,' quod she, 'er I go.
Ryght as a man hath sapiences three,
Memorie, engyn, and intellect also,
So, in o² being of diuinitee,
Thre persones may ther ryght wel be.'
Tho gan she him ful bisily to preche
Of Cristes come, and of his peynes teche,

And many pointes of his passioun;
How goddes sone in this world was withholde,
To doon mankynde pleyn remissioun,
That was ybounde in sinne and cares colde:
Al this thing she vnto Tiburce tolde.
And after this Tiburce, in good entente,
With Valerian to pope Vrban he wente,

¹ E. thynge ywroght; Hn. Cm. thynge was wrought.
² E. omite o; the rest have it.
GROUP G. THE SECONDE NONNES TALE.

That thanked god; and with glad herte and lyght
He cristned him, and made him in that place
Parfit in his lerninge, goddes knyght.
And after this Tiburce gat swich grace,
That every day he sey, in tyme and space,
The angel of god; and every maner bone
That he god axed, it was sped ful sone.

It were ful hard by ordre for to seyn
How many wondres Jesus for hem wroughte;
But atte laste, to tellen short and pleyn,
The sergeants of the toun of Rome hem soughte,
And hem biforn Almache the prefect broughte,
Which hem apposed¹, and knew al her entente,
And to the image of Jupiter hem sente,

And seyde, 'who so wol nat sacrifyse,
Swap of his heed, this is² my sentence here.'
Anon thise martirs that I yow deyuse
Oon Maximus, that was an officere
Of the Prefectes and his corniculere,
Hem hente; and whan he forth the seintes ladde,
Him-self he weep, for pitee that he hadde.

Whan Maximus had herd the seintes lore,
He gat him of the tormentoures leue,
And ladde hem to his hous withoute more;
And with her preching, er that it were eue,
They gonnen fro the tormentours to reue,
And fro Maxime, and fro his folk echone
The false feith, to trowe in god allone.

¹ Hl. apposed; the rest opposed, wrongly; see the note.
² E. Cm. Hl. omit is; the rest have it.
GROUP G. THE SECONDE NONNES TALE.

Cecilie cam, whan it was woxen nyght,
With prestes that hem cristnede alle yfere,
And afterward, whan day was woxen lyght,
Cecile hem seyde with a ful sobre \(^1\) chere,
‘Now, Cristes owen knyghtes leue and dere,
Caste alle awey the werkes of derknesse,
And armeth yow in armoure of bryghtnesse.

Ye han for sothe ydoo a greet bataille,
Your cours is doon, your feith han ye conserued,
Goth to the corone of lyf that may nat faille;
The ryghtful Iuge, which that ye han serued,
Shall yeue it yow, as ye han it deserued.’
And whan this thing was seyd as I deuyse,
Men ladde hem forth to doon the sacrificye.

But whan they weren to the place brought,
To tellen shortly the conclusion,
They nolde encense ne sacrifice ryght nought,
But on hir knees they setten hem adoun
With humble herte and sad deuocioun,
And losten bothe hir hedes in the place.
Hir soules wenten to the king of grace.

This Maximus, that sey this thing bityde,
With pitous teres tolde it anon ryght,
That he her soules sey to heuen glyde
With angels ful of cleerness and of lyght,
And with his \(^{8}\) word conuerted many a wyght;
For which Almachius dide him so to-bete \(^{8}\)
With whippe of leed, til he his \(^{4}\) lyf gan lete.

---

\(^1\) E. Hn. Hl. ful stedefast; Cm. ful sobere; Cp. Pt. Ln. sobre.
\(^2\) E. this; the rest his.
\(^{3}\) E. Hn. Cm. Hl. so bote; Cp. Pt. Ln. so to-bete; see the note.
\(^{4}\) E. the; the rest his.
Cecile him took and buryed him anon
By Tiburce and Valerian softly,
Within her burying-place, under the stoon.
And after this Almachius hastily
Bad his ministres fechen openly
Cecile, so that she myghte in his presence
Doon sacrifice, and Iupiter encense.

But they, converted at her wyse lore,
Wepten ful sore, and yauen ful credence
Vnto her word, and cryden more and more,
'Crist, goddes sone withouten difference,
Is verray god, this is al our sentence,
That hath so good a servant him to serue;
This with o voys we trowen, though we sterue!

Almachius, that herde of this doinge,
Bad fecchen Cecile, that he myghte hir see,
And alderfirst, lo! this was his axinge,
'What maner womman artow?' tho quod he.
'I am a gentil womman born,' quod she.
'I axe thee,' quod he, 'though it thee greue,
Of thy religioun and of thy bileue.'

'Ye han bigonne your questioun folily,'
Quod she, 'that wolden two answeres conclude
In oo demande; ye axed lewedly.'
Almache answerde vnto that similitude,
'Of whennes comth thy answering so rude?'
'Of whennes?' quod she, whan that she was freyne
'Of conscience and of good feith vnseyned.'

1 E. omits al; the rest have it.
2 Cp. Pt. Ln. tho; which the rest omit.
GROUP G. THE SECONDE NONNES TALE.

Almachius seyde, 'ne takestow noon hede
Of my power?' and she anserwe him this—
'Your myght, quod she, 'ful litle is to drede;
For euer mortal mannes power nis
But lyk a bladdre, ful of wynd, ywis.
For with a nedles poyn, whan it is blowe,
May al the bost of it be leyd ful lowe.'

'Ful wrongfully bigonne thou,' quod he,
'And yet in wrong is thy perseuerance;
Wostow nat how our myghty princes free
Han thus comanded and maad ordinaunce,
That euer cristen wyght shal han penaunce
But if that he his cristendom withseye,
And goon al quit, if he wol it reyne?'

'Your princes eren, as your nobley doth,'
Quod tho Cecile, 'and with a wood sentence
Ye make vs gilty, and it 1 is nat soth;
For ye, that knowen wel our innocence,
For as muche as we doon a reuereence
To Crist, and for we bere a cristen name,
Ye putte on vs a cryme, and eek a blame.

But we that knowen thilke name so
For vertuous, we may it nat withseye.'
Almache anserwe, 'chees oon of thise two,
Do sacrifice, or cristendom reneye,
That thou mow now escapen by that weye.'
At which the holy blisful fayre mayde
Gan for to laughe, and to the Iuge seyde,

1 Hn. Hl. this; Cm. Cp. Pt. Ln. thus; E. omits.
2 E. Hn. Cm. omit it; the rest have it.
GROUP G. THE SEconde NONNES TALE.

'O Iuge, confus in thy nycetee,
Wolt that I reneye innocence,
To make me a wikked wyght?' quod she;

'Lo! he dissimuleth here in audience,
He stareth and 1 woodeth in his aduertence!'
To whom Almachius, 'vnsely wrecche,
Ne wostow nat how far my myght may strecche?'

Han nought our myghty princes to me yeuen,
Ye, bothe power and auctoritee
To maken folk to deyen or to lyuen?
Why spekestow so proudly than to me?'
'I speke nought but stedfastly,' quod she,
'Nat proudly, for I seye2, as for my syde,
We haten deedly thilke vice of pryde.

And if thou drede nat a soth to here,
Than wol I shewe al openly, by ryght,
That thou hast maad a ful gret lesing here.
Thou seyst, thy princes han thee yeuen myght
Bothe for to sleen and for to quike a wyght;
Thou, that ne mayst but only lyf bireue,
Thou hast noon other power ne no leue!

But thou mayst seyn, thy princes han thee maked
Ministre of deth; for if thou speke of mo,
Thou lyest, for thy power is ful naked.'
'Do wey thy boldnes,' seyde Almachius tho,
'And sacrifice to our goddes, er thou go;
I recche nat what wrong that thou me profre,
For I can suffre it as a philosophre;

1 E. and he; the rest omit he.
2 E. speke; the rest seye.
GROUP G. THE SECONDE NONNES TALE. 79

But thilke wronges may I nat endure
That thou spekest of our goddes here,' quod he.
Cecile answerde, 'o nyce creature,
Thou seydest no word sin thou spak to me,
That I ne knew therwith thy nycetee;
And that thou were, in euerie maner wyse,
A lwed officer and a veyn Iustise.

Ther lakketh no thing to thyn utter yên
That thou nart blynd, for thing that we seen alle
That it is stoon, that men may wel espyn,
That ilke stoon a god thou wolt it calle.
I rede thee, lat thyn hand vpon it falle,
And taste it wel, and stoen thou shalt it fynde,
Sin that thou seest nat with thyn yên blynde.

It is a shame that the peple shal
So scorne thee, and laughe at thy folye;
For communly men wot it wel oueral,
That myghty god is in his heuenes hye,
And thise images, wel thou mayst espye,
To thee ne to hem-self¹ mowe nought profyte,
For in effect they been nat worth a myte.'

Thise wordes and swiche othere seyde she,
And he weex wroth, and bad men sholde hir lede
Hom til hir hous, ' and in hir hous,' quod he,
'Brenne hir ryght in a bath of flambes rede.'
And as he bad, ryght so was doon in dede;
For in a bath they gonne hir faste shetten,
And nyght and day greet fyr they vnder betten.

¹ E. Ln. insert ne before mowe; the rest omit it.
The longe nyght and eek a day also,
For al the fyr and eek the bathes hete,
She sat al cold, and seelede no wo,
It made hir nat a droppe for to swete.
But in that bath hir lyf she moste lete;
For he, Almachius, with ful wikke entente
To sleen hir in the bath his sonde sente.

Thre strokes in the nekke he smoot hir tho,
The tormentour, but for no maner chaunce
He myghte nought smyte al hir nekke atwo;
And for ther was that tyne an ordinacne,
That no man sholde doon man swich penaunce
The ferthe strook to smyteyn, softe or sore,
This tormentour ne dorste do namore.

But half-deed, with hir nekke ycoruen there,
He lefte hir lye, and on his wey is went.
The cristien folk, which that aboute hir were,
With shetes han the blood ful faire yhent.
Thre dayes lyued she in this torment,
And never cessed hem the feith to teche;
That she hadde fostred, hem she gan to preche;

And hem she yaf hir moebles and hir thing,
And to the pope Urban bitook hem tho,
And seyde, 'I axed this at heuene king,
To han respyt thre dayes and namo,
To recomende to yow, er that I go,
Thise soules, lo! and that I myghte do werche
Here of myn hous perpetuely a cherche.'

1 E. Hn. a ful; Cm. a; the rest a.
2 E. men; the rest man.
3 Cm. is went; the rest he went: (or be went) wrongly: see the note.
4 E. at; the rest of; see G 631.
Seint Vrban, with his deknes, priuely
The ¹ body fette, and buried it by nyghte
Among his othere seintes honestly.
Hir hous the chirche of seint Cecilie hyghte;
Seint Vrban halwed it, as he wel myghte;
In which, into this day, in noble wyse,
Men doon to Crist and to his seint seruyse.

Heere is ended the Seconde Nonnes tale.

¹ E. This; the rest The.
GROUP G. THE CANON’S YEOMAN’S TALE.

The prologue of the Chanons yemannes tale.

Whan ended was the lyf of seint Cecile,
Er we had ridden fully fyue myle, 553
At Boughton vnder Blee vs gan atake
A man, that clothed was in clothes blake,
And vndernethe he wered a surlys. 8
His hakeney, that was al pomely grys,
So swatte, that it wonder was to see;
It semed he had priked myles three.
The hors eek that his yeman rood vpon
So swatte, that vnnenethye myghte it gon.
Aboute the peytrel stood the soom ful hye,
He was of seme al flecked as a pye. 9
A male twesfald on his croper lay,
It semed that he caried lyt array.
Al lyght for somer rood this worthy man,
And in myn herte wondren I bigan
What that he was, til that I vnderstood
How that his cloke was sowed to his hood;
For which, when I had longe awysed me,
I demede him som chanon for to be.

1 E. toold was al; Cm. told was; the rest ended was.
3 So E.; the rest have And vnder that he hadde a whit surplis.
5 E. which pat; the rest omit which.
6 E. as he; Cm. that he; the rest be. 8 E. hakeney; the rest hort.
* E. omit ii. 564, 565; the rest retain them.
7 E. vpon; the rest on. 8 E. to wondren; the rest omit to.
GROUP G. THE CANON'S YEOMAN'S PROLOGUE.

His hat heng at his bak doun by a laas,
For he had riden more than trot or paas;
He had ay priked lyk as he were wood.
A clote-leaf he hadde vnder his hood
For swote, and for to kepe his heed from het
But it was ioye for to seen him swete!
His forhode dropped as a stillatorie,
Were ful of plantayn and of paritorie.
And whan that he was come, he gan to crye,
'God saue,' quod he, 'this ioly companye!
Faste haue I priked,' quod he, 'for your sake,
By cause that I wolde yow atake,
To ryden in this mery companye.'
His yeman eek was ful of curteysye,
And seyde, 'sirs, now in the morwe tyde
Out of your hostelrye I sey you ryde,
And warned heere my lord and my souerayn,
Which that to ryden with yow is ful fayn,
For his despore; he loueth dailiaunce.'

'Frend, for thy warning god yeue thee good" chaunce,'
Than seyde our host, 'for certes 4, it wolde seme
Thy lord were wys, and so I may wel deme;
He is ful iocund also, dar I leye.
Can he aught telle a mery tale or tweye,
With which he glade may this companye?'

'Who, sir? my lord? ye, ye, withouten lye,
He can of murthe, and eek of Iolite
Nat but ynough; also sir, trusteth me,
And ye him knewe as wel as do I,
Ye wolde wondre how wel and craftily 6

1 E. som; the rest this.
2 E. omits good.
3 E. omits that.
4 E. certein; the rest certes.
5 So E. Cm.; the rest thriftily.
He coude werke, and that in sondry wyse.
He hath take on him many a greet empryse,
Which were ful hard for any that is here
To bringe aboute, but they of him it lere.
As homly as he rit amonges yow,
If ye him knewe, it wolde be for your prow;
Ye wolde nat forgon his aqueyntaunce
For mochel good, I dar leye in balaunce
Al that I haue in my possessioun.
He is a man of hey discrecioun,
I warne yow wel, he is a passing man.'
 'Wel,' quod our host, 'I pray thee, tel me than,
Is he a clerk, or noon? tel what he is.'
 'Nay, he is gretter than a clerk, ywis,'
Seyde this yeman, 'and in wordes fewe,
Host, of his craft som-what I wol yow shewe.
I seye, my lord can swich subtillitee—
(But al his craft ye may nat wite at me ;
And som-what helpe I yet to his werkinge)—
That al this ground on which we been rydinge,
Til that we come to Caunterbury toun,
He coude al-clene turne it vp so doun,
And paue it al of siluer and of gold.'
And whan this yeman hadde thus ytold
Vnto our host, he seyde, 'benedicite /
This thing is wonder merneillous to me,
Sin that thy lord is of so hey prudence,
By cause of which men sholdhe him reuerence,
That of his worship rekkelth he so lyte;
His oversloppe nis nat worth a myte,

1 E. for; Hl. of; the rest at.
2 E. this tale; Cm. this; the rest thus.
As in effect, to him, so mot I go!
It is al baudy and to-tore also.
Why is thy lord so sluttish, I thee preye,
And is of power better cloth to beye,
If that his dede accorde with thy speche?
Telle me that, and that I thee bische.'

'Why?' quod this yeman, 'where to axe ye me?'
God help me so, for he shal neuer thee!
(But I wol nat auowe that I seye,
And therfor kepe it secre, I yow preye).
He is to wys, in feith, as I bilee;
That that is ouerdoon, it wol nat preue
Aryght, as clerkes seyn, it is a vice.
Wherfor in that I holde him lewed and nyce.
For whan a man hath ouer-greet a wit,
Ful oft him happeth to misusen it;
So doth my lord, and that me greueth sore.
God it amende, I can sey yow namore.'

'Ther-of no fors, good yeman,' quod our host;
'Sin of the conning of thy lord thou wost,
Tel how he doth, I pray thee hertyly,
Sin that he is so crafty and so sly.
Wher dwellen ye, if it to telle be?'

'In the suburbes of a toun,' quod he,
'Lurkinge in hernes and in lanes blynde,
Wher as thise robbours and thise theues by kynde
Holden her pryue fereful residence,
As thay that dar nat shewen her presence;
So faren we, if I shal seye the sothe.'

'Now,' quod our host, 'yit 1 lat me talke 2 to thee;

1 Cm. Hl. yit, which the rest omit.
2 E. telle; Cm. speke; the rest talka.
We blundren euer and pouren in th
And for al that we fayle of our desy
For euer we lakken our 1 conclusion
To mochel folk we doon illusion,
And borwe gold, be it a pound or t
Or ten, or twelue, or many sommes
And make hem wenen, at the lest y
That of a pound we coude make two
Yet is it fals, but ay we han good ho
It for to doon, and after it we grope.
But that science is so fer vs biforn,
We mowen nat, al though we hadde i
It ouertake, it slit awey so faste;
It wol vs maken beggers atte laste.'

Wyl this yeman was thus in his tal
This chanoun droug him neer, and he
Which this yeman spak, for suspicIon
And eek discouerest that thou sholdest hyde.'

'Ye,' quod our host, 'telle on, what so bityde;
Of al his threating rekke nat a myte!'

'In feith,' quod he, 'namore I do but lyte.'
And whan this chanon sey it wolde nat be,
But his yeman wolde telle his priuyte,
He fledde awaye for verry sorwe and shame.

'A!' quod the yeman, 'heer shall aryse game,
Al that I can anon now wol I telle.
Sin he is gon, the foule fend him quelle!
For neuer her-after wol I with him mete
For penye ne for pound, I yow bihete!
He that me broughte first vnto that game,
Er that he deye, sorwe haue he and shame!
For it is ernest to me, by my feith;
That fele I wel, what so any man seith.
And yet, for al my smert and al my grieve,
For al my sorwe, labour, and meschief,
I coude neuer leue it in no wyse.
Now wolde god my wit myghte suffye
To tellen al that longeth to that art!
But natheles yow wol I tellen part;
Sin that my lord is gon, I wol nat spare;
Swich thing as that I knowe, I wol declare.—

Heere endeth the prologue of the Chanouns yemannes tale.

---

1 So E.; *the rest this.*
2 So E. Cm.; Cp. recche I; Hl. Pt. Lc. recche thee.
3 So Hl. Cp. Pt. Lc.; E. *omits after, having heer only.*
4 E. *that; the rest so.*
5 E. And; *the rest But.*
Heer biginneth the Chanouns yeman his tale.

[Prima pars.]

With this chanoun I dwelt haue seuen yeer,
And of his science am I neuer the neer.
Al that I hadde, I haue ylost ther-by;
And god wot, so hath many mo than I.
Ther I was wont to be ryght fresh and gay
Of clothing and of other good array,
Now may I were an hose vpon myn heed;
And wher my colour was bothe fresh and reed,
Now is it wan and of a ¹ leden hewe;
Who so it vseth, sore shal he rewe.
And of my swink yet blered is myn yë,
Lo! which auantage is to multiplye!
That slyding science hath me maad so bare,
That I haue no good, wher that euer I fare;
And yet I am endetted so ther-by
Of gold that I haue borwed, treweley,
That whyl I lyue, I shal it quyte neuer.
lat every man be war by me for euer!
What maner man that casteth him ther-to,
If he continue, I holde his thrift ydo.
So ² helpe me god, ther-by shal he nat winne,
But empte his purs, and make his wittes thinne.
And whan he, thurgh his madnes and folye,
Hath lost his owen good thurgh ³upartye,
Thanne he excyteth other folk ther-to,
To lese her good as he him-self hath do.
For vnto shrewes ioye it is and ese
To haue her felawes in peyne and diseese;

¹ E. omisit a. ² E. Pt. Lm. For so; but Cq. Hl. omit For.
GROUP G. THE CHANOUNS YEMANNE S TALE. 89

Thus was I ones lerned of a clerke.
Of that no charge, I wol speke of our werke.
  When we been ther as we shul exerçye
Our eluash craft, we semen wonder wyse,
Our termes been so clergial and so queynte.
I blowe the fyr til that myn herte seynte.

What sholde I telle ech proporcioun
Of thinges whiche that we werche vpon,
As on fyue or sixe ounces, may wol be,
Of siluer or som other quantite,
And bisie me to telle yow the names
Of orpiment, brent bones, yren squames,
That into poudre grounden been ful smal?
And in an erthen potte how 1 put is al,
And salt yput in, and also pepeyr 2,
Biform thise poudres that I speke of heer,
And wel ycouered with a lampe 3 of glas,
And mocchel other thing which that ther was?
And of the pot and glasses enluting,
That of the eyre myghte passe ou特 no thing?
And of the esy fyr and smart also,
Which that was maad, and of the care and wo
That we hadde in our matires sublyming,
And in amalgameing and calcening
Of quik siluer, yclept Mercurie crude?
For alle our sleightes we can nat conclude.
Our orpiment and sublymed Mercurie,
Our grounden litarge eek on 4 the porphurie,

1 E. omits how; the rest have it.
2 The MSS. have pepeyr, paupere. Tyrwhitt reads pepeyr.
3 The MSS. have lampe, or laumpe. See the note.
4 E. in; Cm. &; the rest on.
GROUP G. THE CHANOUNS YEMANNES TALE.

Of¹ ech of thise of ounces a certeyn
Nought helpeth vs, our labour is in veyn.
Ne eek our spirites ascenciaun,
Ne our materes that lyen al fixe adoun,
Mowe in our werking no thing vs auayle. 780
For lost is al our labour and trauayle,
And al the cost, a² twenty deuel weye,
Is lost also, which we vpon it leye.
Ther is also ful many another thing
That is vnto our craft a pertening;
Though I by ordre hem nat rehearse can,
By cause that I am a lewed man,
Yet wol I telle hem as they come to mynde,
Though I ne can nat sette hem in her kynde;
As bole armoniak, verdewrees, boras, 790
And sondry vessels maad of erthe and glas,
Our [many botels] and our descensorsies,
Violes, croslets, and sublymatories,
Cucurbites, and alembykes eek,
And othere swiche, dere ynough a leek. 795
Nat nedeth it for to rehearse hem alle,
Watres rubifying and boles galle,
Arsenik, sal armoniak, and brimstoone;
And herbes coude I telle eek many oon,
As egremoin, valerian, and lunarie,
And othere swiche, if that me liste tarie.
Our lampes brenning bothe nyght and day,
To bringe aboute our craft, if that³ we may.
Our fourneys eek of calcinacioun,
And of watres albificacioun, 800

¹ E. And; the rest Of.
² E. Cm. a; Ln. in; the rest en.
³ E. purpos if; the rest craft if that.
GROUP G. THE CHANOUNS YEMANNES TALE. 91

Vnslekked lym, chalk, and gleyre of aney, Poudres diuere, asshes, [and muk], and cley, Cered pokets, sal peter, vitriole; And diuers fyres maad of wode and cole; Sal tartre, alkaly, and sal preparat, And combust materes and coagulat, Cley maad with hors or* mannes heer, and olle Of tartre, alum, glas, berm, wort, and argoile, Resalgar, and our materes enbibing; And eek of our materes encorporing, And of our siluer citrinacioun, Our cementing and fermentacioun, Our ingottes, testes, and many mo.

I wol yow telle, as was me taught also, The foure spirites and the bodies seuene, By ordre, as ofte I herde my lord hem neuene. The firste spirit quik-siluer called is, The second orpiment, the thridde, ywis, Sal armoniak, and the ferthe brimstoon. The bodies seuene eek, lo! hem heer anoon: Sol gold is, and Luna siluer we threpe, Mars yren, Mercurie quik-siluer we clepe, Saturnus leed, and Jupiter is tin, And Venus coper, by my fader kin!

This cursed craft who so wol exerceye, He shal no good han that him may suffye; For al the good he spendeth ther-aboute, He lese shal, ther-of habe I no doute. Who so that listeth outen his folye, Lat him come forth, and lerne multiplye;

1 The MSS. all retain an. 2 Misswritten pottes in E.
3 E. and; the rest or. 4 Axcent alum on the u.
5 E. And of ours; the rest omit And of. 6 E. seuene; the rest foure.
7 E. omne so; the rest have it.
And ebery man that ought hath in his cofre,
Lat him appere, and wexe a philosofre.
Ascaunce that craft is so lyght to lere?
Nay, nay, god wot, al be he monk or frere,
Preest or chanoun, or any other wyght,
Though he sitte at his book bothe day and nyght,
In lernynge of this eluise nyre loke,
Al is in veyn, and parde, mouchel more!
To lerne a lewed man this substilte,
Fy! spek nat ther-of, for it wol nat be;
Al  
conhe he letterure, or conne he noon,
As in effect, he shal fynde it al oon.
For bothe two, by my sauacioun,
Conclucen, in multiplicitacioun,
Ylyke wel, whan they han al ydo;
This is to seyn, they saylen bothe two.
Yet forgat I to make rehersaille
Of watres corosif and of lymaille,
And of bodies mollificacioun,
And also of her induracioun,
Oyles, ablucions, and metal fusible,
To tellen al wolde passen any bible
That owther is; wherfor, as for the beste,
Of alle thise names now wol I me reste.
For, as I trowe, I haue yow told ynow
To reythe a feend, al loke he neuer so row.
A! nay! lat be; the philosophres stoon,
Elixir clept, we sechens faste echoun;
For, hadde we him, than were we  
siker ynow.
But, vnto god of heuen I make avow,
For al our craft, whan we han al ydo,
And  
al our sleighte, he wol nat come vs to.

1 E. Cm. And; the rest Al.  2 E. it; the rest we.
3 E. With; the rest And.
GROUP G. THE CHANOUNS YEMANNE TALE. 93

He hath ymaad vs¹ spenden mochel good,
For sorwe of which almost we wexen wood,
But that good hope crepeth in our herte, 870
Supposinge euer², though we sore smerte,
To be releued by him afterward;
Swich supposing and hope is sharp and hard;
I warne yow wel, it is to seken euer;
That futur temps hath maad men to³ disseuer 875
In trust therof, from al that euer they hadde.
Yet of that art they can nat wexen sadde,
For vnto hem it is a bitter swete;
So semeth it; for nadde they but a shete
Which that they myghte wrappe hem inne a⁴ nyght, 880
And a bak⁵ to walken inne by day-lyght,
They wolde hem selle and spenden on this⁶ craft;
They can nat stinte til no thing be laft.
And euermore, wher that euer they goon,
Men may hem knowe by smel of brimstoon; 885
For al the world, they stinken as a goot;
Her sauour is so rammish and so hoot,
That, though a man from hem a myle⁷ be,
The sauour wol infecte him, trusteth⁸ me;
Lo⁹, thus by smelling¹⁰ and threedbare array 890
If that men list, this folk they knowe may.
And if a man wol aske hem pryuely,
Why they been clothed so vnthrifitly,
They ryght anon wol rownen in his ere,
And seyn, that if that they espyed were, 895

¹ Cm. l-mad vs; Hl. i-made vs; E. maad vs; the rest vs made.
² E. omits euer; the rest have it.
³ Cm. to, which the rest omit.
⁴ E. Inne at; the rest in a.
⁵ E. brat; the rest bak; see note.
⁶ E. the; the rest this.
⁷ E. a Mile from hem; the rest from hem a myle.
⁸ E. trust; the rest trusteth.
⁹ E. And; the rest Lo.
¹⁰ E. smel; the rest smellyng.
Men wolde hem slee, by cause of her science;
Lo, thus this folk bitrayen innocence!
   Passe ouer this; I go my tale vn-to.
Er than the pot be on the fyr ydo,
   Of metals with a certeyn quantite,
My lord hem tempreth, and no man but he—
   Now he is goon, I dar seyn boldely—
For, as men seyn, he can doon craftily;
   Algate I wot wel he hath swich a name,
And yet ful ofte he renneth in a blame;
And wite ye how? ful ofte it happeth so,
The pot tobreketh, and farewell! al is go!
Thise metals been of so greet violence,
   Our walles mowe nat make hem resistence,
But if they weren wrought of lym and stoon;
They percen so, and thurgh the wal they goon,
   And somme of hem sinken in-to the ground—
Thus han we lost by tymes many a pound—
   And somme are scatered al the floor aboute,
Somme lepe in-to the roof; with-outen doute,
   Though that the feend nought in our syghte him shewe,
I trowe he with vs be, that ilke shrewel
In helle wher that he is lord* and sire,
Nis ther more wo, ne more rancour ne ire.
   Whan that our pot is broke, as I haue sayd,
Euer man chit, and halt him yuel apayd.
   Som seyde, it was long* on the fyr-making,
Som seyde, nay! it was on the blowing;
   (Than was I fered, for that was myn office);
'Strawl' quod the thridde, 'ye been lewed and nyce,
GROUP G. THE CHANOUNS YEMANNES TALE. 95

It was nat tempred as it oughte be.'

'Nay!' quod the fyrte, 'stint, and herkne me;
By cause our fyr ne was nat maad of beech,
That is the cause, and other noon, so theeke!'
I can nat telle wher-on it was long 1,
But wel I wot greet stryf is vs 2 among.

'What!' quod my lord, 'ther is namore to done,
of thise perils I wold be war eft-sone;
I am ryght siker that the pot was crase;
Be as be may, be ye no thing amase;
As vsage is, lat swepe the floor as swythe,
Plukke vp your hertes, and beth gladde and blythe.'

The mullok on an hepe ysweyped 3 was,
And on the floor ycast a canevas,
And al this mullok in a syve ythrowe,
And sifted, and ypiked many a throwe.

'Parde,' quod oon, 'somwhat of our metal
Yet is ther heer, though that we han nat al.
Al-though this thing mishapped haue as now,
Another tyme it may be wel ynow,
Vs moste putte our good in auenture;
A marchant, parde! may nat ay endure,
Trusteth me wel, in his prosperite;
Somtym his good is drenched in the see,
And somtym comth it sauf vn-to the londe.'

'Pees!' quod my lord, 'the next tyme I wol 4 fonde
To bringe our craft al in another plyte;
And but I do, sirs 5, lat me han the wyte;
Ther was defaute in som what, wel I wot.'

Another seyde, the fyr was ouer hot:— 955

---

1 Cm. Hl. long; the rest along; see l. 922.  2 E. vs is; the rest is vs.
2 Cm. I-sweepid; Ls. yswepped; E. swepe; Cp. Pt. Hl. ysweoped.
3 E. shal; the rest wol, wil, wele.
4 E. omits sir; the rest have it.
But, be it hot or cold, I dar seye this, 
That we conclude euermore amis. 
We fayle of that which that we wolden haue, 
And in our madnesse euermore we raue. 
And whan we been togidres euerichoon, 
Euer man semeth a Salomon. 
But al thing which that shyneth as the gold 
Nis nat gold, as that I haue herd it t told; 
Ne euer appel that is fair at ye 
Ne is nat good, what so men clappe or crye. 
Ryght so, lo! fareth it amonges vs; 
He that semeth the wysest, by Iesus! 
Is most fool, whan it cometh to the preef; 
And he that semeth trewest is a theef; 
That shul ye knowe, er that I fro yow wende, 
By that I of my tale haue maad an ende.

Explicit prima pars. El sequitur pars secunda.

Ther is a chanoun of religioun 
Amonges vs, wolde infecte al a toun, 
Though it as greet were as was Ninieue, 
Rome, Alisaundre, Troye, and othere three. 
His sleightes and his infinit falsnesse 
Ther coude no man wryten, as I gesse, 
Though that he myghte lyue a thousand yeer. 
In al this world of falsheide nis his peer; 
For in his termes so he wolde him wynde, 
And speke his wordes in so sly a kynde,

1 E. And; the rest But. 
2 E. euer; the rest al, alle. 
3 Cm. schynuth; Ln. schyneth; Hl. schineneth; E. scinet; Cp. semeth. 
4 Cp. Pt. Lm. it; E. Cm. Hl. omit it. 
5 E. to; the rest at. 
6 E. Nis; the rest Ne is. 
7 E. omit to; the rest have it. 
8 E. was; the rest is. Cf. 1. 987. 
9 E. Hl. sleighte; the rest sleights. 
10 E. lyue myghte; the rest myghte lyue. 
11 E. nis; Ln. be is; the rest nis, nys.
GROUP G. THE CHANOUNS YEMANNES TALE. 97

Whan he commune shal with any wyght,
That he wol make him doten anon ryght,
But it a seende, as him-seluen is.
Ful many a man hath he bigyled er this,
And wol, if that he lyue may a whyle;
And yet men ryde and goon ful many a myle
Him for to seke and haue his aqyentaunce,
Nought knowinge of his false gouernaunce.
And if you list to yeue me audience,
I wol it tellen heer in your presence.

But worshipful chanouns religious,
Ne demeth nat that I sclaundre¹ your hous,
Al-though² my tale of a chanoun be.
Of euery ordre som shrew is, parde,
And god forbede that al a companye
Sholde rewe a singuler mannes folye.
To sclaundre yow is no thing myn entente,
But to correcten that is mis I mente.
This tale was nat only told for yow,
But eek for othere mo ; ye wot wel how
That, among Cristes apostelles twelue,
Ther nas no traytour but Iudas him-selue.
Than why sholde al the remenant haue blame³
That gyltles were ? by yow I seye the same.
Saue only this, if ye wol herkne me,
If any Iudas in your couent be,
Remeueth him bitymes, I yow rede,
If shame or los may causen any dred.
And beth no thing displesed, I yow preye,
But in this cas herkneth what I shal seye.

¹ E. desclaudre ; the rest sclaundre ; see l. 998.
² E. Al-though that; the rest omit that.
³ E. Hl. a blame; the rest omit a.
In London was a preest, an ' annuelleer,
That therin dwelled hadde\(^2\) many a yeer,
Which was so plesaunt and so seruisable
Vnto the wyf, wher as he was at table,
That she wolde suffre him no thing for to paye
For bord ne clothing, wente he neuer so gaye;
And spending siluer hadde he ryght ynow.
Therof no fors; I wol procede as now,
And telle forth my tale of the chanoun,
That broughthe this preest to confusioun.

This false chanoun cam vp-on a day
Vnto this preestes chambre, wher he lay,
Biseching him to lene him a certeyn
Of gold, and he wolde quyte it him ageyn.
‘Lene me a mark,’ quod he, ‘but dayes three,
And at my day I wol it quyten thee.
And if so be that thou me fynde fals,'
Another day do hange me by the hals!'

This preest him took a mark, and that as swythe,
And this chanoun him thanked ofte sithe,
And took his leue, and wente forth his weye,
And at the thridde day broughte his moneye,
And to the preest he took his gold agayn,
Wherof this preest was wonder glad and sayn.
‘Certes,’ quod he, ‘no thing anoyeth me
To lene a man a noble, or two or thre,
Or what thing were in my possessioun,
Whan he so trewe is of condicioun,
That in no wyse he breke wol his day;
To swich a man I can neuer seye nay.’

\(^1\) E. omits an; the rest have it.
\(^2\) E. had dwelled; the rest dwelled hadde (or had).
GROUP G. THE CHANOUNS YEMANNES TALE. 99

'What I' quod this chanoun, 'sholde I be vntrewe?
Nay, that were thing¹ yfallen al of-newe.
Trouthe is a thing that I wol euer kepe
Vn-to² that day in which that I shal crepe
In-to my graue, and³ elles god forbide;
Bileueth this as siker as your⁴ crede.
God thanke I, and in good tyme be it sayd,
That ther was neuer man yet yuel apayd
For gold ne siluer that he to me lente,
Ne neuer falshede in myn herte I mente.
And sir,' quod he, 'now of my priuete,
Sin ye so goodlich han been vn-to me,
And kythed to me so greet gentillesse,
Somwhat to quyte with your kyndenesse,
I wol yow shewe, and, if⁶ yow list to lere,
I wol yow teche pleyly the manere,
How I can werken in philosophye.
Taketh good heed, ye shul wel seen at ye,
That I wol doon a maistrie er I go.'

'Ye,' quod the preest, 'ye, sir⁴, and wol ye so?
Marie! ther-of I pray yow hertely!'

'At your comandement, sir, trewey,'
Quod the chanoun, 'and elles god forbide!'

Lo, how this theef coude his seruye bede!

Ful soth it is, that swich profred seruyse
Stinketh, as witenesse this olde wyse;
And that ful sone I wol it verifie
In this chanoun, rote of al trecherye,
That euer-more delty hath and gladnesse—

Swich feendly thoughtes in his herte impresse—

¹ E. Cm. a thynge; the rest omit a. ² E. Lm. In-to; the rest Vn-to.
³ E. or; the rest and.
⁴ E. the; Hl. your; the rest is your.
⁵ E. if that; the rest and if (or yf).
⁶ After sir, E. wrongly inserts quod he.
O graceless, ful blinde is thy conceit.
No thing ne artow war of the deceit
Which that this fox yshapen hath to
His wyly wrenches thou ne mayst na

Wherfor, to go to the conclusion,
That refereth to thy confusion,
Unhappy man! anon I wol me hye
To tellen thyn vnwit and thy s folye,
And eek the falsnesse of that other wy
As ferforth as that my conning may.

This chanoun was my lord, ye wold,
Sir host, in feith, and by the hevenes.
It was another chanoun, and nat he,
That can an hundred fold more subtlette.
He hath betrayed folkes many tyme;
Of his falshede it dulles me to ryme.
Euer whan that I speke of his falshede,
GROUP G. THE CHANOUNS YEMANNE TALE.

‘Sir,’ quod he to the preest, ‘lat your man gon
For quik-siluer, that we it hadde ¹ anon;
And lat him bringen ounces two or three;
And whan he comth, as faste shul ye see
A wonder thing which ye sey neuer er this.’

Sir,’ quod the preest, ‘it shall be doon, ywis.’
He bad his seruaunt fecchen him this thing,
And he al redy was at his bidding,
And wente him forth, and cam anon agayn
With this quik-siluer, sothly for to sayn,
And took thise ounces thre to the chanoun;
And he hem ² leyde fayre and wel adoun,
And bad the seruaunt coles for to bringe,
That he anon myghte go to his werkinge.

The coles ryght anon weren yyet,
And this chanoun took out a crosselet
Of his bosom, and shewed it the ³ preest.
‘This instrument,’ quod he, ‘which that thou seest,
Tak in thyn hand, and put thy-self ther-inne
Of this quik-siluer an ounce, and heer biginne,
In the name of Crist, to wexe a philosofre.
Ther been ful fewe, whiche that ⁴ I wolde profre
To shewen hem thus muche of my science.
For ye shul seen heer, by experience,
That this quik-siluer wol I mortifye
Ryght in your syghte anon, withouten ⁵ lye,
And make it ⁶ as good siluer and as fyn
As ther is any in your purs or myn,

¹ E. Cm. hadde it; the rest it hadde.  ² E. Cm. hem; the rest it.
³ E. to the; the rest omit to.
⁴ E. to which; Cm. to which that; the rest which that.
⁵ E. I wol nat; H. with-outen; Cm. with-outyn; the rest withoute (or ither)
⁶ E. omits it; the rest have it.
Or elleswher, and make it malliable;
And elles, holdeth me fals and vnable
Amonges folk for euer to appere!
I haue a poudre heer, that coste me dere,
Shal make al good, for it is cause of al
My conning, which that I yow shall swen shal.
Voydeth your man, and lat him be ther-oute,
And shet the dore, whyls we been aboute
Our priuetee, that no man vs espye
Whyls that we werke in this philosophye.'
Al as he bad, fulfilled was in dede,
This ilke servaut anon-ryght out yede,
And his maister shette the dore anon,
And to her labour speedily they gon.

This preest, at this cursed chanouns bidding,
Vp-on the fyr anon sette this thing,
And blew the fyr, and bisied him ful faste;
And this chanoun in-to the croslet caste
A poudre, noot I wher-of that it was
Ymaad, other of chalk, other 2 of glas,
Or som what elles, was nat worth a flye,
To llynde with the preest; and bad him hye
The coles for to couchen al aboue
The croslet, ' for, in tokening I thee loue,'
Quod this chanoun, ' thyne owene hondes two
Shul werchen 3 al thing which shal heer be do.'

'Graunt mercy,' quod the preest, and was ful glad
And couched coles 4 as the 5 chanoun bad.
And whyle he bisy was, this feendly wreche,
This fals chanoun, the foule feend him fescce!
GROUP G. THE CHANOUNS YEMANNES TALE. 103

Out of his bosom took a bechen cole,
In which ful subtilly was maad an hole,
And ther-in put was of siluer lymaille
An ounce, and stopped was, with-outen fayle,
The hole with wex, to kepe the lymail in.
And vnderstondeth, that this false gin
Was nat maad ther, but it was maad bfore;
And othere thinges I shal telle more
Herafterward, which that he with him broughte;
Er he cam ther, him to bigyle he thoughte,
And so he dide, er that they wente atwinn;
Til he had torned him, he coude not blinne.
It dulleth me whan that I of him speke,
On his falshe fayn wolde I me wreke,
If I wiste how; but he is heer and ther;
He is so variant, he abit no wher.

But taketh heed now, sirs, for goddes loue!
He took his cole of which I spak aboue,
And in his hond he baar it priuely.
And whyles the preest couched busily
The coles, as I tolde yow er this,
This chanoun seyde, 'frend, ye doon amis;
That is nat couched as it oughte be;
But sone I shal amenden it,' quod he.
'Now lat me medle therwith but a whyle,
For of yow haue I pite, by seint Gyle!
Ye been ryght hoot, I se wel how ye sweete,
Haue heer a cloth, and wype awaye the wete.'
And whyles that the preest wypped his face,
This chanoun took his cole with harde grace.

1 E. he took; the rest omit he.  2 E. Cp. that he; the rest omit that.
3 E. this; the rest his; see l. 1189.  4 Read this? See ll. 1184, 1030.
5 So E.; Cm. with sorry grace (see l. 665). Most MSS. have 'threw his
we, and maketh l. 1188 and with him wyped has.'
And leyde it vp aboue, on the midward
Of the croslet, and blew wel afterward,
Till that the coles gonne faste brenne.

' Now yeue vs drinke,' quod the chanoun thenne,
' As swythe al shal be wel, I vndertake;
Sitte we doun, and lat vs mery make.'

And whan that this chanounes bechen cole
Was brent, all the lymaille, out of the hole,
Into the croslet fil anon adoun;
And so it moste nedes, by resoun,
Sin it so euen aboue couched was;
But ther-of wiste the preest no thing, alas!
He demed alle the coles yliche good,
For of that sleighte he no thing vnderstood.
And whan this alcamistre sey his tyme,
' Ris vp,' quod he, 'sir preest, and stondeth by me;
And for I wot wel ingot haue I noon,
Goth, walketh forth, and brynge vs a chalk-stoon;
For I wol make oon of the same shap
That is an ingot, if I may han hap.
And bringeth eek with yow a bolle or a panne,
Ful of water, and ye shul se wel thanne
How that our bisinesse shal thryue and preue.
And yet, for ye shul han no misbileue
Ne wrong conceit of me in your absence,
I ne wol nat been out of your presence,
But go with yow, and come with yow ageyn.'
The chambre dore, shortly for to seyn,
They opened and sheteth, and wente her wey.
And withth with hem they carieden the key,
And come agayn with-outen any delay.
What sholde I tarien al the longe day?
He took the chalk, and shoop it in the wyse
Of an ingot, as I shal yow dewyse.
I seye, he took out of his owen sleue,
A teyne of siluer (yuel moot he cheue!)
Which that ne\(^1\) was nat but an ounce of weighte;
And taketh heed now of his cursed sleighte!
He shoop his ingot, in lengthe and eek\(^2\) in brede,
Of this\(^3\) teyne, with-outen any drede,
So slyly, that the preest it nat espyde;
And in his sleue agayn he gan it hyde;
And fro the fyr he took vp his materere,
And in thingot putte it with mery chere,
And in the water-vessel he it caste
Whan that him luste, and bad the preest as faste,
'Look what ther is\(^4\), put in thyn hand and grope,
Thow fynde shalt ther siluer, as I hope;
What, [by myn honour,] sholde it elles be?
Shauing of siluer siluer is, parde!'
He putte his hond in, and took vp a teyne
Of siluer fyn, and glad in every veyne
Was this preest, whan he sey that\(^5\) it was so.
'Goddes blessing, and his modres also,
And alle halwes haue ye, sir chanoun,
Seyde this preest, 'and I her malisoun,
But and ye vouche-sauf to techen me
This noble craft and this subtilite;

---

1. Cm. ne; \textit{which the rest omit.}
2. E. eck; \textit{which the rest omit.}
3. Tyrwhitt reads Of thilke; \textit{I propose—As of this teyne.}
4. E. What that heer is; \textit{the rest} Look what ther is.
5. E. \\textit{omits} ll. 1233, 1239.
6. E. Hl. \textit{omits} that; \textit{it is found in} Cm. Cp. Pt. Ln.
I wol be your in al that euer I may!

Quod the chanoun, 'yet wol I make assay
The second tyme, that ye may taken hede
And been expert of this, and in your nede
Another day assaye in myn absence
This discipline and this crafty science.
Lat take another ounce, quod he tho,
'Of quik-siluer, with-outen wordes mo,
And do ther-with as ye han doon er this
With that other, which that now siluer is.'

This preest him bisieth in al that he can
To doon as this chanoun, this cursed man,
Comanded him, and faste he blew the fyr,
For to come to the effect of his desyr.
And this chanoun, ryght in the mene whyle,
Al redy was, the preest eft to bigyle,
And, for a countenaunce, in his honde he bar
An holwe stikke, (tak keep and be war!)
In thende of which an ounce, and namore,
Of siluer lymail put was, as biforn
Was in his cole, and stopped with wax wel
For to kepe in his lymail every del.
And whyl this preest was in his businesse,
This chanoun with his stikke gan him dresse
To him anon, and his pouder caste in
As he did er; (the deuel out of his skin
Him torne, I pray to god, for his falshede;
For he was euer fals in thought and dede);
And with this stikke aboue the croset,
That was ordeyned with that false get.

1 E. preest; the rest chanoun. 9 E. omits Was; the rest have it.
2 E. terre; Cm. Pr. turne; the rest torne.
3 E. Cm. Iet (=jet); Hl. get; Ln. gett; Cp. Pr. gette.
GROUP G. THE CHANOUNS YEMANNES TALE. 107

He stired the coles til relente gan
The wex agayn the fyr, as every man,
But it a fool be, wot wel it mot nede,
And al that in the stikke was out yede,
And in the croset hastily it fel. 1280

Now gode sirs, what wol ye bet than wel? 1
Whan that this preeest thus was bigyled ageyn 2,
Supposing nought but trewthe, soth to seyn,
He was so glad, that I can 3 nat expresse 1285
In no manere his mirthe and his gladnesse,
And to the chanoun he profred eftsonde
Body and good; 'ye,' quod the chanoun sone,
'Though poure I be, crafty thou shalt me fynde;
I warne thee, yet is ther more bihynde.
Is ther any coper her-inne?' seyde he.
'Ye,' quod the preeest, 'sir, I trowe wel ther be.'
'Elles go by vs som, and that as swythe,
Now, gode sir, go forth thy wey and hy the.' 1295

He wente his wey, and with the coper cam,
And this chanoun it in his hondes nam,
And of that coper weyed out but an ounce.
Al to simple is my tongue to pronounce,
As ministre of my wit, the doublenesse 1300
Of this chanoun, rote of al cursednesse.
He semed frendly to hem that knewe him nought,
But he was feendly bothe in herte and thought.
It werieth me to telle of his falsnesse,
And nathelees yet wol I it expresse, 1305
To thentent that men may be war therby,
And for noon other cause, trewey.

2 Cp. Pt. Ln. But buyed him faste, and was wonder fayn.
3 E. ne kan; the rest omit ne.
GROUP G. THE CHANOUNS YEMANNES TALE.

He putte his 1 ounce of coper in the croslet,
And on the fyr as swythe he hath it set,
And caste in poudre, and made the preest to blowe,
And in his werking for to stoupe lowe,
As he dide er, and al nas but a Iape;
Ryght as him liste, the preest he made his ape;
And afterward in thingot he it caste,
And in the panne putte it at the taste
Of water, and 2 in he putte his owen hond.
And in his sleue, (as ye biforn-hond
Herde me telle,) he 3 hadde a siluer teyne.
He slyly took it out, this cursed heyne—
Vnwhiting this preest of his false craft—
And in the pannes botme he hath it laft;
And in the water rombled to and fro,
And wonder priuely took vp also
The coper teyne, nought knowing this preest,
And hidde it, and him hente by the breest,
And to him spak, and thus seyde in his game,
' Stoupeth adoun, [parde], ye be to blame,
Helpeth me now, as I 4 dide yow whyl-er,
Putte in your hond, and loketh what is ther.'
This preest took vp this siluer teyne anon,
And thanne seyde the chanoun, 'lat vs gon
With thise thre teynes, which that we han wrought,
To som goldsmith, and wite if they been ought.
For, by my feith, I nolde, for myn hooch,
But if that they were siluer, syn and good,
And that as swythe preued shal it 5 be.'

Vn-to the goldsmith with thise teynes three

1 Cm. his; E. the; the rest this.
2 E. the water; the rest water and.
3 E. omits he; the rest have it.
4 E. a; the rest I.
5 E. it shal; Ln. schal he; the rest shal it.
They went, and put this teynes in assay
To fyr and hamer; myghte no man say nay,
But that they weren as hem oughte be.
This sotted preest, who was gladder than he?
Was neuer brid gladder agayn the day,
Ne nyghtingale, in the sesoun of May,
Nas neuer noon¹ that luste bet to singe;
Ne lady lustier in carolinge
Or for to speke of love and wommanhede,
Ne knyght in armes to doon an hardy dede,
To stonde in grace of his lady dere,
Than had this preest this sory craft to lere;
And to the chanoun thus he spak and seyde,
‘For loue of god, that for vs alle deye, ¹³⁵⁰
And as I may desere it vn-to yow,
What shall this receit coste? telleth now I.’
‘By our lady,’ quod this chanoun, ‘it is dere,
I warne yow wel; for, saue I and a fre, ¹³⁵⁵
In Engelond ther can no man it make.’
‘No fors,’ quod he, ‘now, sir, for goddes sake,
What shal I paye? telleth me, I preye.’
‘Ywis,’ quod he, ‘it is ful dere, I seye;
Sir, at o word, if that thee list it haue, ¹³⁶⁰
Ye shul paye fourty pound, so god me saue!
And, nere the frendship that ye dide er this
To me, ye sholde paye more, y-wis.’
This preest the somme of fourty pound anon
Of nobles fette, and took hem euerichon
To this chanoun, for this ilke receit;
Al his werking nas but fraude and deceit.
‘Sir preest,’ he seyde, ‘I kepe han no loos
Of my craft, for I wolde it kept were cloos.’ ¹³⁶⁵
¹ E. man; the rest noon (non).
And as ye loue me, kepeth it secre; 1272
For, and men knewen al my sotilde,
[Parde], they wolden han so greet enuye
To me, by cause of my philosophye,
I sholde be deed, ther were noon other weye.'

'God it forbede!' quod the preest, 'what sey ye?'
Yet hadde I leuer spenden al the good 1376
Which that I haue (and 1 elles wexe I wood !)
Than that ye sholden falle in swich mescheef.'

'For your good wil, sir, haue ye ryght good preef,'
Quod the chanoun, 'and farwel, grant mercy #' 1380
He wente his wey and neuer the preest him sy
After that day; and whan that this preest sholde
Maken assay, at swich tyme as he wolde,
Of this receit, farwel! it wolde nat be!
Lo, thus byiaped and bigyled was he!
Thus maketh he his introduccioun
To bringe folk to her 8 destruccion,—

Considereth, sirs, how that, in ech estaat,
Bitwixe men and gold ther is debaat
So fercorth, that vnnethes is ther noon. 1390
This multiplying blent so many oon,
That in good feith I trowe that it be
The cause grettest of swich scarsete.
Philosophres spaken so mistily
In this craft, that men can nat come therby,
For any wit that men han now a dayes.
They mowe wel chiteren, as doon thise 8 Iayes,
And in her termes sette her lust and peyne,
But to her purpos shul they neuer atteyne.

1 E. or; the rest and.
2 E. Cm. omit her.
3 E. as that doon; Cm. as don; the rest as doon thise.
GROUP G.  THE CHANOUNS YEMANfES TALE.  111

A man may lyghtly lerne, if he haue ought,
To multiplye, and bringe his good to nought!
   Lo! swich a lucre is in this lusty game,
A mannes mirthe it wol torne vn-to grame,
And empten also grete and heuy purses,
And maken folk for to purchasen curses
Of hem, that han her good therto ylent.
O! fy! for shame! they that han been brennt,
Allas! can thei nat flee the fyres hete?
Ye that it vse, I rede ye it lete,
Lest ye lese al; for bet than neuer is late.
Neuer to thruye were to long a date.
Though ye prolle ay, ye shul it neuer fynde;
Ye been as bolde as is Bayard the blynde,
That blundreth forth, and peril casteth noon;
He is as bold to renne agayn a spoon
As for to gon besydes in the weye.
So fare ye that multiplye, I seye.
If that your yenh can nat seen aryght,
Loke that your mynde lakke nought his syght.
For, though ye loke neuer so brode, and stare,
Ye shul nat winne a myte2 in that chaffare,
But wasten al that ye may rape and renne.
Withdrawe the fryr, lest it to faste brenne;
Medleth namore with that art, I mene,
For, if ye doon, yourth thrift is goon ful clene.
And ryght as swythe I wol yow tellen here,
What3 philosophres seyn in this matere.
   Lo, thus seith Arnold of the newe toun,
As his Rosarie maketh mencioun;

1 E. omits O; the rest have it.
2 E. Cm. no thynge wynne; the rest nat wynne a myte.
3 Hl. What; Cm. What that ye; the rest What that the (badly).
He seith ryght thus, with-outen any lye,
'Ther may no man Mercurie mortisye,
But it be with his brother knowleching;
Lo, how ¹ that he, which that first seyde this thing,
Of philosophres fader was ², Hermes;
He seith, how that the dragoun, doutelee,
Ne deyth nat, but if that he be slayn
With his brother; and that is for to sayn,
By the dragoun, Mercurie and noon other
He vnderstood; and brimstoon by his brother,
That out of sol and luna were ydraue.
And therfor, seyde he, 'tak heed to my sawe,
Let no man bisy him this art for to seche,
But if that he thentenciou and specche
Of philosophres vnderstonde can;
And if he do, he is a lewed man.
For this science and this conning,' quod he,
'Is of the secre of secrees ³, parde.'
Also ther was a disciple of Plato,
That on a tyme seyde his maister to,
As his book Senior wol bere witnesse,
And this was his demande in soothfastnesse:
'Tel me the name of the priuy stool?'
And Plato answerde vnto him anoon,
'Tak the stool that Titanos men name.'
'Which is that?' quod he. 'Magnesia is the same,'
Seyde Plato. 'Ye, sir, and is it thus?'
This is ignotum per ignotius.
What is Magnesia, good sir, I yow preye?'
'It is a water that is maad, I seye,

¹ Hl. Lo how; the rest How; see l. 1428.
² E. first was; the rest omit first.
³ E. Cnt. of the secretes; Pt. of secretes; Hl. of secreta; La. of secretes.
GROUP G. THE CHANOUNS YEMANNES TALE. 113

Of elementes foure, quod Plato.
‘Tel me the rote,’ good sir, quod he tho,
‘Of that water, if that it be your wil?’
‘Nay, nay,’ quod Plato, ‘certein, that I nil.
The philosophres sworn were euerichoon,
That they sholden discouere it vn-to noon,
Ne in no book it wryte in no manere;
For vn-to god it is so leef and dere
That he wol nat that it discouered be,
But wher it lyketh to his deite
Man for tenspyre, and eek for to defende
Whom that him lyketh; lo, this is the ende.’
Than thus conclude I; sith that god of heuene
Ne wol nat that the philosophres neuene
How that a man shal come vn-to this stoon,
I rede as for the beste, let it goon.
For who so maketh god his aduersarie,
As for to werche any thing in contrarie
Of his wil, certes neuer shal he thryue,
Though that he multiplye terme of his lyue.
And ther a poynyt; for ended is my tale;
God sende euvery trewe man bote of his bale!—

Heere is ended the Chanouns Yemannes tale.

1 E. roote; the rest roche, rooche, roches.
2 Cm. that; which the rest omit.
3 So the Lichfield MS.; the rest have Crist; see l. 1476.
4 So Hl.; the rest conclude I thus. 5 E. vs; the rest as.
6 E. Cm. omit his; the rest have it.
GROUP H. THE MANCIPLE'S PROLOGU

Heere folweth the Prologue of the Mauncip Tale.

Wite ye nat wher ther stant a litel toun
Which that ycleped is Bob-vp-and-doun,
Vnder the Blee, in Caunterbury weye?
Ther gan our hoste for to Iape and pleye,
And seyde, 'sirs, what! Dun is in the myre!
Is ther no man, for preyer ne for hyre,
That wol awake our felawe heer by hynde?
A theef myghte him ful lyghtly robbe and bynde.
Se how he nappeth! se, for cockkes bones,
As he wol faire from his hors at ones.
Is that a cook of Londoun, with meschaunce?
Do him come forth, he knoweth his penaunce,
For he shal telle a tale, by my fey!
Al-though it be nat worth a botel hey.
Awake, thou cook,' quod he, 'god yeue the sorwe
What eyleth the to slepe by the morwe?
Hastow had fleen al nyght, or artow dronke,

So that thou mayst nat holden vp thyn heed?
This cook, that was ful pale and no-thing reed,

1 E. Hn. Woot; Cp. Hl. Wot; Cm. Wote; Pt. Ln. Wete; but better, as in l. 82.
2 Cm. here; E. Hn. Hl. al; the rest insert neither.
3 So Cp. Hl.; E. see how; Hn. Cm. see how.
Seyd to our host, 'so god my soule blesse,  
As ther is falle on me swich heunesse,  
Not I nat why, that me were leuer slepe  
Than the beste galoun wyn 4 in Chepe.'

'Wel,' quod the maunciple, 'if it may doon ese
To thee, sir cook, and to no wyght displesse
Which that heer rydeth in this companye,
And that our host wol of his curteisye,
I wol as 4 now excuse thee of thy tale;
For, in good feith, thy visage is ful pale,
Thyn yên daswen 8 eek, as that me thinketh,
And wel I wol, thy breeth ful soure stinketh,
That sheweth wel thou art not wel disposed;
Of me, certein, thou shalt nat been yglomered.
Se how he ganeth, lo, this drunken wyght,
As though he wolde vs swolwe 4 anon ryght.

. . . . . . .
Thy cursed breeth infecte wol vs alle;
Fy, stinking swyn, fy! soule mot thee 6 falle!
A! taketh heed, sirs, of this lusty man.
Now, swete sir, wol ye Iusten atte fan?
Ther-to me thinketh ye been wel yshape!
I trowe that ye dronken han wyn ape,
And that is whan men pleyen with a straw.'
And with this speche the cook wex wroth and wraw,
And on the maunciple he gan nodde faste
For lakke of speche, and doun the hors him caste,
Wher as he lay, til that men him vp 4 took;
This was a fayr chiuache of a cook!

Hl. wyn that is; the rest omit that is; see note.
E. omits as; the rest have it.
So E. Hz. Hz.; Cm. daswe; Cp. daswen; Pt. dasen; Ln. dasowepe.
So Cp. Lp.; the rest swolwe vs.
E. thou; the rest thee or the.
E. Hz. vp hym; the rest him vp.
Allas! he nadde holde him by his ladel! 
And, er that he agayn were in his sadel, 
Ther was greet showuung bothe to and fro, 
To lifte him vp, and mochel care and wo, 
So vnweldy was this sory pallod gost. 
And to the maunciple than spak our host, 
‘By-caurse drink hath dominacioun
Vpon this man, by my sauacioun, 
I trowe he lewedly 1 wold telle his tale. 
For, were it wyn, or old or moyste ale, 
That he hath dronke, he speketh in his nose, 
And fneseth 2 haste, and eck he hath the pose. 
He hath also to do more than ynough 
To kepe him and his capel out of slough; 
And, if he selle from his capel est-sone, 
Than shul we alle haue ynough to done, 
In liftinge vp his heuy dronken cors. 
Tel on thy tale, of him make I no fors.

But yet, maunciple, in feith thou art to nyce, 
Thus openly repreue him of his vyce. 
Another day he wol, perauentre, 
Reclayme thee, and bringe thee to luer; 
I mene, he speke wol of smale thinges, 
As for to pinchen at thy rekeninges, 
That wer not honeste, if it cam to preef.’
‘No,’ quod the maunciple, ‘that were a³ greet meschë 
So myghte he lyghtly bringe me in the snare.
Yet hadde I leuer payen for the mare 
Which ⁴ he rit on, than he shold with me stryue:
I wol nat wraethe him, al-so mot I thrueye!

¹ E. Cm. Ln. put lewedly before he.
² So E. Hn. Cp. Ln.; Cm. Hl. suseth; Pt. galpeth.
³ All the 7 MSS. retain a; see the note. Hl. omit No.
⁴ E. Which that; the rest omit that.
GROUP H. THE MANCIPLE'S PROLOGUE.

That that I spake, I seyde it in my bourde,
And wite ye what? I haue heer, in a gourde,
A draught of wyn, ye, of a rype grape,
And ryght anon ye shul seen a good Iape.
This cook shal drinke ther-of, if I may;
Vp peyne of deeth, he wol nat sey me nay!'
And certeinly, to telle as it was,
Of this vessel the cook drank faste, alas!
What neded him? he drank ynombre biforn.
And whan he hadde pouped in this horn,
To the maunciple he took the gourde agayn;
And of that drink the cook was wonder fayn,
And thanked him in swich wyse as he coude.

Than gan our host to laughen wonder loude,
And seyde, 'I se wel, it is necessarie,
Wher that we goon, good drink we with us carie,
For that wol turne rancour and disease
Tacord and loue, and many a wrong apese.
O thou Bacchus, yblessed be thy name,
That so canst turnen ernest in-to game!
Worship and thank be to thy deitee!
Of that mater ye gete namore of me.
Tel on thy tale, maunciple, I thee prey.'
'Wel, sir,' quod he, 'now herkneth what I seye.'

[Here follows The Manciple's Tale, ll. 105-362, with which Group H ends.]

1 E. Pt. if that; the rest omit that.
2 So K.; Cm. nedith hym; Hn. Hl. neded it; the rest needeth it.
3 E. that; the rest good.
4 So E. Hn.; Cm. Cp. Ln. Hl. To acord; Pt. To pees.
5 Hl. thou; which the rest omit.
By that the maunciple h
The sonne fro the south
So lowe, that he nas nat
Degreés nyne and twenty
Foure of the clokke it w
For eleven foot, or litel r
My shade was at thilke
Of swich feet as my leng
In six feet equal of propc
Ther-with the mones ex
I mene Libra, alwey gart
As we were enthringe at a
For which our host, as he
As in this cas, our Ioly co
Seyde in this wyse, 'lordi
Now laketh vs no tales n
Fulfilled is my sentence an
GROUP I. THE PARSON'S PROLOGUE.

Or art a person? sey soth, by my sey!
Be what thou be, ne brek thou nat our pley;
For eyer man, saue thou, hath told his tale,
Vnbokel, and shew vs what is in thy male;
For trewely, me thinketh, by thy chere,
Thou sholdes knitte vp wel a greet mater.
Tel vs a tale anon, for cokkes bones!

This persone him anserde, al at ones,
'Thou getest fable noon ytold for me;
For Paul, that wrytet vnto Timothee,
Repreueth hem that weyuen sothfastnesse
And tellen fables and swich wrecchednesse.
Why sholde I sown draf out of my feste,
When I may sown whele, if that me leste?
For which I seye, if that yow list to here
Moralitee and vertuous mater,
And than that ye wol yeue me audience,
I wol ful yyn, at Cristes reuerence,
Do yow plesaunce leueful, as I can.
But trusteth wel, I am a Southren man,
I can nat geste—rom, ram, ruf—by lettre,
Ne, god wot, rym holde I but litel bettre;
And therfor, if yow list, I wol not close.
I wol yow telle a mery tale in prose
To knitte vp al this feste, and make an ende.
And Iesu, for his grace, wit me sende
To shewe yow the wey, in this viage,
Of thilke perfet glorious pilgrimage
That hyghte Ierusalem celestial.
And, if ye vouche sauf, anon I shal
Biginne vpon my tale, for which I preye
Telle your ayms, I can no bettre seye.

H. him; which the rest omit. 2 E. omits ful; the rest have it.
But natheles, this meditacioun
I putte it ay vnder correccioun
Of clerkes, for I am nat textuel;
I take but the 1 sentens, trusteth wel.
Therfor I make protestacioun
That I wol stonde to correccioun.'

Vp-on this word we han assented sone,
For, as vs 2 semed, it was for to done,
To enden in som vertuous sentence,
And for to yeue him space and audience;
And bede our host he sholde to him seye,
That alle we to telle his tale him preye.

Our host hadde the wordes for vs alle:—
‘Sir preest,’ quod he, ‘now fayre yow bifalle!
Sey what yow list, and we wol gladly here’—
And with that word he seyde in this manere—
‘Telleth,’ quod he, ‘your meditacioun.
But hasteth yow, the sonne wol adoun;
Beth fructuous, and that in litel space,
And to do wel god sende yow his grace!’

Explicit prohemium.

[Here follows The Parson’s Tale, with which Group I end

1 E. omit the; the rest have it.  2 So E.; the rest it, which is in,
NOTES.

TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE (GROUP B).

greeng closely with The Man of Lawes Tale, is found in
Gower's Confessio Amantis, from which Tyrwhitt supposed
: borrowed it. But I have shewn, in the Preface, that
ion is later than Chaucer's, and that Chaucer and Gower
like indebted to the version of the story in French prose
: Trivet) in MS. Arundel 56, printed for the Chaucer
872. In some places Chaucer agrees with this French
: closely, but he makes variations and additions at pleasure.

inety-eight lines of the preceding Prologue are written in
order to link the Tale to the others of the series; but there is
how which of the other tales it was intended to follow.
a more special Prologue of thirty-five lines, in five stanzas
: each; so that the first line in the Tale is l. 134 of Group
1 of the fragments into which the Canterbury Tales are
ving to the incomplete state in which Chaucer left them.

a final e occurs, it is, in general, to be pronounced as a
ble, unless elided before a vowel or a following. In like
nd -ed generally form distinct syllables. There are, in
cent reasons for the full pronunciation of these final
these cannot here be stated. The reader is referred to
on of Chaucer's Prologue and Knightes Tale (Clarendon
p. xlv. and to the Preface to my edition of The Prioresse
i.-lxxii. for general rules; and to Ellis's Early English
for a full discussion of the subject. In the first stanza,
the word trewe is disyllabic, being plural: heue is so,
a dative case governed by the prep. of, which formerly
itive, though now associated with the idea of a possessive
so, because modified from the A. S. disyllabic niue.
39) is a gerund, and gerunds are commonly marked by
one or -en (A. S. -anne). Ware is disyllabic, being the
sometimes an e is sounded in the middle of a word, as in
ee syllables). Observe also clothes (A.S. cledæs). In some
, such as companye, the pronunciation of the e final is less
ems to partake of poetic license; yet there is nothing very
the assumption, since the same word contains four
syllables to this day, and is accented on the penultimate, both in Spanish and Italian; cf. Span. *compañía* and Ital. *compagnia*. Again, such words as *gracce*, *space*, from the Latin *gratiam*, *stadium*, may fairly be allowed two syllables; especially when we find *causze* (Lat. *causam*) with two syllables: *Cant. Tales*, 4142, 5705. If, however, the final *e* be followed by a vowel, or (in some cases) by the letter *h*, it is elided, or to speak more strictly. slurred over by rapid pronunciation. This is the case in the words *dwelle* (134), *riche*, *saddle* (135), and *riche* again (137). Chaucer's lines, if read with attention, are beautifully melodious.


1. 143. *Were it*, whether it were.


1. 145. The final *e* in *Rome* is pronounced, as in l. 142; but the words *the ende* are to be run together, forming but one syllable, *thende*, according to Chaucer's usual practice; cf. note to l. 255. Indeed, in l. 423, it is actually so spelt; just as, in l. 150, we have *theexcellent*, and in l. 151, *themperoures*.

1. 151. *Themperoures*, the emperor's. Gower calls him Tiberius Constantine, who was Emperor (not of Rome, but) of the East, a.d. 378, and was succeeded, as in the story, by Maurice, a.d. 582. His capital was Constantinople, whither merchants from Syria could easily repair; but the greater fame of Rome caused the substitution of the Western for the Eastern capital.

1. 156. *God him see*, God protect him. See note to C. 715.

1. 161. *At Europe*. In the margin of MSS. E. Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. is written the note *‘Europa est terrae pars mundi’.*

1. 166. *Miroir*, mirror. Such French words are frequently accented on the last syllable. Cf. *ministe* in l. 168.

1. 171. *Han doon fraught*, have caused to be freighted. All the MSS. have *fraught*, not *fraughte*. In the Glossary to Specimens of English, I marked *fraught* as being the infinitive mood, as Dr. Stratmann supposes, though he notes the lack of the final *e*. I have now no doubt that *fraught* is nothing but the past participle, as in William of Palerne, l. 7232—

> 'And feithliche *fraught* ful of fine wines,' which is said of a ship. The use of this past participle after a perfect tense is a most remarkable idiom, but there is no doubt about its occurrence in the Clerkes Tale, Group E. 1098, where we find 'Hath doon you *kept*,' where Tyrwhitt has altered *kept* to *kepe*. On the other hand, Tyrwhitt actually notes the occurrence of 'Hath doon *wrought*,' in Kn. Tale, 1055, which he calls an irregularity. A better name for it is *idiom*. I find similar instances of it in another author of the same period.
THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE. 123

'Thai strak his hed of, and syne it
Thai haf gert saltit in-til a kyt.'

Barbour's Bruce, ed. Skeat, xviii. 167.

I.e. they have caused it (to be) salted. And again—

'Of Cwynygame the mast party
He gert hold till his sensory ;' id. viii. 13.

Compare also the following—

'And thai sall let thame trumprit ill;' id. xix. 712.

I.e. and they shall consider themselves as evilly deceived.

The infinitive appears to have been fraughten, though the earliest certain examples of this form seem to be those in Shakespeare, Cymb. i. 1. 126, Temp. i. 2. 13. The proper form of the pp. was fraughted (as in Marlowe, 2 Tamb. i. 2. 33), but the loss of final -ed in past participles of verbs of which the stem ends in t is common ; cf. set, put, &c. Hence this form fraught as a pp. in the present instance. It is a Scandinavian word, from Swed. frakta, Dan. frauge. At a later period we find freight, the mod. E. form. The vowel-change is due to the fact that there was an intermediate form freit, borrowed from the French form fret of the Scandinavian word. This form fret disturbed the vowel-sound, without wholly destroying the recollection of the original guttural gh, due to the Swed. k. For an example of fret, we have only to consult the old black-letter editions of Chaucer printed in 1532 and 1561, which give us the present line in the form—'These marchastes han don fret her ships new.'

1. 185. Seriously, with great minuteness of detail. Used by Fabyan, who says that 'to reherce ceryously' all the conquests of Henry V would fill a volume; Chron., ed. Ellis, p. 589. It is the Low Latin seriose, used in two senses; (1) seriously, gravely; (2) minutely, fully. In the latter case it is perhaps to be referred to the Lat. series, not serius. A similar word, ceretally (Lat. seriatism), is found three times in the Romance of Parthenay, ed. Skeat, with the sense of in due order.

1. 190. This refers to the old belief in astrology and the casting of nativities. Cf. Prov. 414-418.

1. 197. Tyrwhitt shews that this stanza is imitated closely from some Latin lines, some of which are quoted in the margin of many MSS. of Chaucer. He quotes them at length from the Megacosmos of Bernardus Silvestris, a poet of the twelfth century (extant in MS. Bodley 1265). The lines are as follows, it being premised that those printed in italics are cited in the margin of MSS. E. Hn. Cp. Pt. and Ln. :—

'Preiacect in stellis series, quam longior ætas
Explicit et spatius temporis ordo sui,
Sceptræ Phoronei, fratrum discordia Thébis,
Flamma Phaethonitis, Deculationis aqve.
In stellis Codri paupertas, copia Croesi,
Incestus Paridis, Hippolytique pudor.
NOTES TO GROUP B.

In stellis Priami species, audacia Turni,
Sensus Ulixem, Herculeusque vigor.
In stellis pugil est Pollux et nauta Typhis,
Et Cicero rhetor et geometra Thales.
In stellis lepidum dictat Maro, Milo figurat,
Fulgurat in Latia nobilitate Nero.
Astra notat Persis, Aegyptus parturit arces,
Grecia docta legit, praetita Roma gerit.'

The names Ektor (Hector), &c. are too well known to require comment.
The death of Turnus is told at the end of Virgil's Aeneid.
ll. 207, 208. Here haue seems to be used as the form of the auxiliary verb, whilst han (for hauen) signifies possession. See han again in l. 241.
1. 224. Mahoun, Mahomet. The French version does not mention Mahomet. This is an anachronism on Chaucer's part; the Emperor Tiberius II died A.D. 583, when Mahomet was but twelve years old.
1. 218. I pray you holde, I pray you to hold. Here holde is the infin subtle mood. The imperative plural would be holdeke; see sawke, next line.
1. 236. Maumettrye, idolatry; from the Mid. E. maumet, an idol, corrupted from Mahomet. The confusion introduced by using the word Mahomet for an idol may partly account for the anachronism in l. 224. The Mahometans were falsely supposed by our forefathers to be idolaters.
1. 242. Not, put for ne wot, know not.
1. 248. An imperfect line. There are a few such lines in Chaucer, in which the caesural pause seems to count for a syllable. Scan it thus:—
That them | per′ur || of his gret | noblesse || Again, l. 621 below may be read in a similar manner:—
But nā | thelēs || thēr | was gret | mooring ||
1. 253. 'So, when Ethelbert married Bertha, daughter of the Christian King Charibert, she brought with her, to the court of her husband, a Gallican bishop named Leudhard, who was permitted to celebrate mass in the ancient British Church of St. Martin, at Canterbury.' Note in Bell's Chaucer.
1. 255. Ynow, being plural, may take a final e; we should then read th′ende, as explained in note to l. 145. The pl. inoshe occurs in the Ornulum.
1. 263. Alle and some, collectively and individually; one and all. See Cler. Tale, E. 941.
1. 277. The word alle, being plural, is dissyllabic. Thing is often a plural form, being an A.S. neuter noun. The words ouer, ever, never are, in Chaucer, generally monosyllables, or nearly so; just as o′er, e′er, ne′er are treated as monosyllables by our poets in general. Hence the scaniong is—′O′er al | le thing ′; &c.
1. 289. Of course the substitution of Theseus for the Ylion of the MSS.
THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

is a conjectural emendation; still it was Theseus who burnt Thebes, as Chaucer himself says; Kn. Tale, 132. Tyrwhitt reads 'Or Ylion brent, or Thebes the citee.' Of course he means brende, past tense, not brent, the past participle; and his conjecture amounts to inserting or before Thebes. Nevertheless, the bolder emendation reads better, as it makes this line the exact parallel of the preceding one. Indeed, Tyrwhitt saw this, and even proposed to read Philip in place of Ylion. Tyrwhitt well observes that 'Thebes the citee' is a French phrase. He quotes 'dedans Renes la cite,' Froissart, v. i. c. 225.

I. 295. In the margin of the Ellesmere MS. is written—'Vnde Ptholomeus, libro i. cap. 8. Primi motus celi duo sunt, quorum vnus est qui mouet totum semper ab Oriente in Occidentem vno modo super orbis, &c. Item alter vero motus est qui mouet orbem stellarum curricinium contra motum primum, videlicet, ab Occidente in Orientem super alios duos polos.' The old astronomy imagined nine spheres revolving round the central stationary earth; of the seven innermost, each carried with it one of the seven planets, viz. the Moon, Venus, Mercury, Sun, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn; the eighth sphere, that of the fixed stars, had a slow motion from west to east, to account for the precession of the equinoxes, whilst the ninth or outermost sphere, called the primum mobile, or the sphere of first motion, had a diurnal revolution from east to west, carrying everything with it. This exactly corresponds with Chaucer's language. He addresses the outermost sphere or primum mobile (which is the ninth if reckoning from within, but the first from without), and accuses it of carrying with it everything in its irresistible westward motion; a motion contrary to that of the 'natural' motion, viz. that in which the sun advances along the signs of the zodiac. The result was that the evil influence of the planet Mars prevented the marriage. It is clear that Chaucer was thinking of certain passages in Boethius, as will appear from consulting his own translation of Boethius, ed. Morris, pp. 21, 22, 106, and 110. I quote a few lines to shew this:

'O jou maker of þe whele þat bereþ þe sterres, whiche þat art fastned to þi perdurable chayere, and turnest þe heuene wiþ a rauiyssyng swesige, and constreines þe sterres to suffren þi lawe;' pp. 21, 22.

'þe region of þe fire þat eschaufþ by þe swithe moewyng of þe firma-
ment;' p. 110.

The original is—

'O stelliferi conditor orbis
Qui perpetuo nixus solio
Rapidum calum turbine ursas,
Legemque pati sidera cogis,'
Boeth. Cons. Phil. lib. i. met. 5.

'Quique agili motu calet atheris;' id. lib. iv. met. 1.
Compare also the following passage:—

'The earth, in roundness of a perfect ball,
Which as a point but of this mighty all
Wise Nature fixed, that permanent doth stay,
Whereas the spheres by a diurnal sway
Of the first Mover carried are about.'

Drayton: The Man in the Moon.

1. 299. Crowding, pushing. This is still a familiar word in East Anglia. Forby, in his Glossary of the East Anglian Dialect, says—

'Crowd, v. to push, shove, or press close. To the word, in its common acceptation, number seems necessary. With us, one individual can crowd another.' To crowd a wheelbarrow means to push it. The expression 'crowd in a barwe,' i.e. wheeled or pushed along in a wheelbarrow, occurs in the Paston Letters, A.D. 1477, ed. Girardner, iii. 215.

1. 302. A planet is said to ascend directly, when in a direct sign; but tortuously, when in a tortuous sign. The tortuous signs are those which ascend most obliquely to the horizon, viz. the signs from Capricornus to Gemini inclusive. Chaucer tells us this himself: see his Treatise on the Astrolabe, ed. Skeat, part ii. sect. 28. The most 'tortuous' of these are the two middle ones, Pisces and Aries. Of these two, Aries is called the mansion of Mars, and we may perhaps suppose the ascending sign to be Aries, the lord of which (Mars) is said to have fallen 'from his angle into the darkest house.' The words 'angle' and 'house' are used technically. The whole sphere was divided into twelve equal parts, or 'houses.' Of these, four were termed 'angles,' four others 'successents,' and the rest 'cadents.' It appears that Mars was not then situate in an 'angle' or lucky 'house,' but in the unluckiest of the four 'cadent houses,' and so in the darkest house of all. See the explanation in Chaucer's Astrolabe, ed. Skeat; pref. p. iii.

1. 306. The meaning of Atavis has long remained undiscovered. But by the kind help of Mr. Bensly, one of the sub-librarians of the Cambridge University Library, I am enabled to explain it. Atavis or atavis is the Spanish spelling of the Arabic al-atasir, influence, given at p. 351 of Richardson's Pers. Dict., ed. 1829. It is a noun derived from asar, a verb of the second conjugation, meaning to leave a mark on, from the substantive asar, a mark; the latter substantive is given at p. 20 of the same work. Its use in astrology is commented upon by Dozy, who gives it in the form atacir, in his Glossaire des Mots Espagnols dérivés de l'Arabique, p. 207. It signifies the influence of a star or planet upon other stars, or upon the fortunes of men. In the present case it is clearly used in a bad sense; we may therefore translate it by 'evil influence.' On this common deterioration in the meaning of words, see Trench, Study of Words, p. 52. The word craft, for example, is a very similar instance; it originally meant skill, and hence, a trade.
and we find star-craft used in particular to signify the science of astronomy.

1. 307. 'Thou art in conjunction in an unfavourable position; from the position in which thou wast favourably placed thou art moved away.'

1. 312. 'Is there no choice as to when to fix the voyage? ' The favourable moment for commencing a voyage was one of the points on which it was considered desirable to have an astrologer's opinion. Travelling, at that time, was a serious matter. Yet this was only one of the many undertakings which required, as was thought, to be begun at a favourable moment. Whole books were written on 'elections,' i.e. favourable times for commencing operations of all kinds. Chaucer was thinking, in particular, of the following passage, which is written in the margins of the Ellesmere and Hengwrt MSS. 'Omnes concordati sunt quod elecciones sint debiles nisi in diuitibus: habent enim isti, licet debiliten-
tur eorum elecciones, radicem, i. [id est] natuitates corum, que confortat omnem planetam debilem in itinere.' The sense of which is—'For all are agreed, that “elections” are weak, except in the case of the rich; for these, although their elections be weakened, have a “root” of their own, that is to say, their nativities (or horoscopes); which root strengthens every planet that is of weak influence with respect to a journey.' This is extracted, says Tyrwhitt, from a Liber Electionum by a certain Zael; see MS. Harl. 80; MS. Bodley 1648. This is a very fair example of the jargon to be found in old books on astrology. The old astrologers used to alter their predictions almost at pleasure, by stating that their results depended on several causes, which partly counteracted one another; an arrangement of which the convenience is obvious. Thus, if the aspect of the planets at the time inquired about appeared to be adverse to a journey, it might still be the case (they said) that such evil aspect might be overcome by the fortunate aspect of the inquirer's horoscope; or, conversely, an ill aspect in the horoscope could be counteracted by a fit election of a time for action. A rich man would probably be fitted with a fortunate horoscope, or else why should he buy one? Such horoscope depended on the aspect of the heavens at the time of birth or ‘nativity,’ and, in particular, upon the ‘ascendant’ at that time; i.e. upon the planets lying nearest to the point of the zodiac which happened, at that moment, to be ascending, i.e. just appearing above the horizon. So Chaucer, in his Treatise on the Astro-
labe, ed. Skeat, bk. ii. § 4, explains the matter, saying—'The ascendant sothly, as wel in alle natuitez as in questionus and eleccions of tymes, is a thing which pat these Astrologiens gretyly obseren; &c. The curious reader may find much more to the same effect in the same Treatise, with directions to 'make roots' in pt. ii. § 44.

The curious may further consult the Epitome Astrologiae of Johannes Hispaleins. The whole of Book iv. of that work is 'De Electionibus.'

Lydgate, in his Siege of Thebes, just at the beginning, describes the astronomers as casting the horoscope of the infant Oedipus. They were expected

‘to yeue a judgement,
The roote i-take at the ascendent,
Truly sought out, by minute and degres,
The selfe houre of his natuitle,
Not foryet the heauenly mansions
Clerely searched by smale fraccions,’ &c.

To take a different example, Ashmole, in his Theatrum Chemicum, 1652, says in a note on p. 450—‘Generally in all Elections the Efficacy of the Stars are (sic) used, as it were by a certaine application made thereof to those unformed Natures that are to be wrought upon; whereby to further the working thereof, and make them more available to our purpose. . . . . . And by such Elections as good use may be made of the Celestiall influences, as a Physitian doth of the variety of herbes. . . . . . But Nativities are the Radices of Elections, and therefore we ought chiefly to looke backe upon them as the principal Root and Foundation of all Operations; and next to them the quality of the Thing we intend to fit must be respected, so that, by an apt position of Heaven, and fortifying the Planets and Houses in the Nativity of the Operator, and making them agree with the thing signified, the impression made by that influence will abundantly augment the Operation,’ &c.; with much more to the same effect. Several passages in Norton’s Ordinall, printed in the same volume (see pp. 60, 100), shew clearly what is meant by Chaucer in his Prologue, ll. 415–7. The Doctor could ‘fortune a person’s ascendent,’ i.e. render his horoscope lucky, by the election of a time, suitable to that horoscope, when the prescribed remedies were to be applied.

1. 314. Roote is the astrological term for the epoch from which to reckon. The exact moment of a nativity being known, the astrologers were supposed to be able to calculate everything else. See the last note.

1. 332. Albaron, the Koran; al is the Arabic article.

1. 333. Here Makomete is used instead of Mahom (l. 224). See Irving’s Life of Mahomet.

Message, messenger. This is a correct form, according to the usages of Middle English; cf. l. 144. In like manner, we find prison used to mean a prisoner, which is often puzzling at first sight.

1. 340. ‘Because we denied Mahomet, our (object of) belief.’

1. 360. ‘O serpent under the form of woman, like that Serpent that is bound in hell.’ The allusion here is not a little curious. It clearly refers to the old belief that the serpent who tempted Eve
peared to her with a woman's head, and it is sometimes so represented. Observed it, for instance, in the chapter-house of Salisbury Cathedral; d see the woodcut at p. 73 of Wright's History of Caricature and 'otesque in Art. In Peter Comestor's Historia Liberi Genesis, we read Satan—'Elegit etiam quoddam genus serpentinis (vt ait Beda) virgineum itum habens.' In the alliterative Troy Book, ed. Panton and Donald- n, p. 144, the Tempter is called Lyuyaton (i. e. Leviathan), and it is id of him that he

Hade a face vne fowmet as a fre maydon,' l. 4451.

1d, again, in Piers the Fowman, B. xviii. 385, Satan is compared to a usarde [lizard] with a lady visage.' In the Ancren Riwe, p. 207, we e gravely informed that a scorpion is a kind of serpent that has a face mewhat like that of a woman, and puts on a pleasant couteance. o remember this gives peculiar force to l. 370, 371.

l. 367. Knowestow is probably a trisyllable; and the olde to be read olde. But in l. 371, the word Makestow, being differently placed in the, is to be read with the e slurred over, almost a dissylable.

l. 380. Moste, might. It is not always used like the modern must.

l. 401. See Lucan's Pharsalia.

l. 404. There are undoubtedly a few lines in Chaucer, in which the st foot consists of one syllable only; this is one of them, the word at standing by itself as a foot. So also in B. 497, G. 331, &c. See llis's Early English Pronunciation, pp. 333, 649. This peculiarity was pointed out by me in 1866, in the Aldine edition of Chaucer, i. 174, or the sense of scorpion, see the extract from the Ancren Riwe, in ote to l. 360. So also wikked gost means the Evil Spirit, the Tempter.

l. 421. Pronounce ever rapidly, and accent successor on the first syllable. In the margin of MSS. E., Ha., Pt., and Cp. is the following ote: 'Nota, de inopinato dolore. Semper mundane leticie tristicia spentina succedit. Mundana igitur felicitas multis amaritudinis est expersa. Extrema gaudii luctus occupat. Audi ergo salubre consilium; die bonorum ne immemor sis malorum.' These maxims seem to be ceps taken from different authors. I have found one of them in boethius, De Consolatione Philosophiae, lib. ii. pr. 4: 'Quam multis amaritudinis humanae felicitatis dulcedo expersa est;' which Chaucer translated by—'Pe sweinetnesse of mannes wellfylnesse is ysprand with wyse bitternesses;' ed. Morris, p. 42: and the same expression is repeated here, in l. 412. Gower quotes the same passage from Boethius in the nologue to his Confessio Amantis. The next sentence is from Prov. iv. 13:—'Ritus dolore miscibitur, et extrema gaudii luctus occupat.' With the last clause, in ll. 426, 427, compare Eccl. xi. 8.

l. 438. Compare Trivet's French prose version:—'Deunt ele list estorie beene de vitaille, de payn quest aple bisquit, & de peis, & de feues, de ore, & de meel, & de vyn, pur sustenance de la vie de la pacele pur VOL. III.
NOTES TO GROUP B.

tres saunt; e en cele mef fit mettre la richesse & le tresour que lempire Tiberius avoit maunde oue la pucelle Constaunce, sa fille; e en cele real fist la soudaine mettre la pucelle saunt sigle, & sauntz neuiroun, & sauntz chescune maner de cide de homme.' I.e. 'Then she caused a ship to be stored with victuals, with bread that is called biscuit, with peas, beans, sugar, honey, and wine, to sustain the maiden's life for three years. And in this ship she caused to be placed the riches and treasure which the Emperor Tiberius had sent with the maid Constance his daughter; and in this ship the Sultane caused the maiden to be put, without sail or oar, or any kind of human aid.'

Foot-hot, hastily. It occurs in Gower, in The Romaunt of the Rose, l. 3827, and in Barbour's Bruce, iii. 418, xiii. 454. Compare the term hotrode, explained by Sir W. Scott to mean the pursuit of marauders with bloodhounds; see note 3 II to the Lay of the Last Minstrel. We also find hot for, i.e. immediately, in the Debate of the Body and the Soul, l. 451.

II. 451-462. Compare these lines with verses 3 and 5 of the hymn 'Lustra sex qui iam peregit' in the office of Lauds from Passion Sunday to Wednesday in Holy Week inclusive, in the Roman breviary.

'Crux fidelis, inter omnes
Arbor una nobilis:
Silua talem nulla profert
Fronde, flore, germine:
Dulce ferrum, dulce lignum,
Dulce pondus sustinent. . .

Sola digna tu suisti
Ferre mundi uictimam;
Atque portum preparare,
Arca mundo naufragio,
Quam sacer cruor perunxit,
Fusus Agni corpore.'

See the translation in Hymns Ancient and Modern, No. 97, part i (new edition), beginning—'Now the thirty years accomplished.'

I. 460. Hymn and here, him and her, i.e. man and woman; as in Piers the Plowman, A. Pass. i. l. 100. The allusion is to the supposed power of the cross over evil spirits. See The Legends of the Holy Roode, ed. Morris; especially the story of the Invention of the Cross by St. Helen, p. 169—'And anon, as he had made the [sign of the] crosse, he gete multitude of deuyles vanished awaye;' or, in the Latin original, 'statimque ut editit signum crucis, omnis illa daemonum multitudine euanuit;' Aurca Legenda, ed. Grasse, and ed. p. 311. Cf. Piers Plowman, B. xviii. 429-431.

I. 461. The reading of this line is certain, and must not be altered. But it is impossible to part the line without at once noticing that, for the moment, Chaucer suddenly changes the subject of Constance's above.
THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

transfers the word thy so as to refer to Christ instead of only to the
This change was probably due to a momentary confusion in the
mind rather than to any deliberate intention. The doctrine of
critics, that authors cannot err, and that if they seem to err, the
must be altered, is a very narrow one. If a critic cannot learn in any
way that it is possible for an author to err, he might at any rate
it from his own experience. I would therefore propose to let the
done rather than to put his for thy. The general sense is plain.
464. See of Greece, here put for the Mediterranean Sea.
465. Marrak, Morocco; alluding to the Strait of Gibraltar; cf. l. 947.
474. Ther, where; as usual.
475. 'Was eaten by the lion ere he could escape.' Cf. l. 437.
491. See Revelation vii. 1-3.
497. Here As seems to form a foot by itself. See note to l. 404.
500. Alluding to St. Mary the Egyptian (Maria Egipciaca), who,
ing to the legend, after a youth spent in debauchery, lived entirely
for the last forty-seven years of her life in the wilderness beyond
Jordan. She lived in the fifth century. Her day is April 9. See
Jameson's Sacred and Legendary Art; Rutheuf, ed. Jubinal, ii.
150; Maundeville's Travels, ed. Halliwell, p. 96; Aurea Legenda
Irascse, cap. i. vi. She was often confused with St. Mary Magdalen.
508. Northumberland, the district, not the county. Yorkshire is, in
meant, as the French version expressly mentions the Humber.
510. Of al a lyde, for the whole of an haur.
512. The constable; named Elda by Trivet and Gower.
519. Trivet says that she answered Elda in his own language, 'en
neys,' in Saxon, for she had learnt many languages in her youth.
525. The word dye seems to have had two pronunciations; in l. 644
dye, with a different rime. In fact, Mr. Cromie's 'Ryme-Index' to
cer proves the point. On the one hand dye rimes to awye,
ye, dreye, preyse, seye, twye, weye; and on the other dye rimes to
rye, bigamye, compaignye, Emelye, genteryse, lye, maladye, &c.
527. Forgot him mynde, lost her memory.
531. The final e in plese is preserved from elision by the cæsural
1. Or, we may read plesen; yet the MSS. have plese.
578. Alla, i.e. Aella, king of Northumberland, a.d. 560-567; the
whose name Gregory (afterwards Pope) turned, by a pun, into Alle-
according to the version of the celebrated story about Gregory and
English slaves, as given in Beda, Eccl. Hist. b. ii. c. 1.
584. Quyte her whyle, repay her time; i.e. her pains, trouble; as
we say 'it is worth while.' Wile is not intended.
85. 'The plot of the knight against Constance, and also her sub-
ant adventure with the steward, are both to be found, with some
ons, in a story in the Gesta Romanorum, ch. 101; MS. Harl.
NOTES TO GROUP B.

2270. Ocleeve has versified the whole story;* Tywhitt. See the Preface for further information. Compare the conduct of Iachimo, in Cymeline.

1. 620. Berth hir on hond, affirms falsely; lit. bears her in hand. Chaucer uses the phrase ‘to bere in hond’ with the sense of false affirmation, sometimes with the idea of accusing falsely, as here and in the Wyf of Bathes Prologue. C. T. 5975; and sometimes with that of persuading falsely, C. T. 5814. 5963. In Shakespeare the sense is rather — to keep in expectation, to amuse with false pretences;’ Nares’s Glossary. Barbour uses it in the more general sense of ‘to affirm,’ or to make a statement,’ whether falsely or truly.

1. 634. ‘And bound Satan; and he still lies where he (then) lay.’ In the Apocryphal Gospel of Nicodemus, Christ descends into hell, and (according to some versions) binds him with chains; see Piers Plowman, B. xviii. 401.

1. 639. Susannah; see the story of Susannah, in the Apocrypha.

1. 641. The Virgin’s mother is called Anna in the Apocryphal Gospel of James. Her day is July 26. See Aurea Legenda, ed. Gräasse, cap. cxxxi; Cowper’s Apocryphal Gospels, p. 4.

1. 645. Here pale is pronounced as a disyllable.

1. 647. ‘Where that he gat (could get) for himself no favour.’

1. 660. ‘For pite renneth some in gentil herte;’ Knightes Tale, l. 903. And see note to Sq. Tale, F. 479.

1. 664. V’s noun, deliberate with ourselves, consider the matter again. Compare the law-phrase Le roi s’aviser, by which the king refuses assent to a measure proposed. ‘We will consider whom to appoint as judge.’

1. 666. I.e. a copy of the Gospels in Welsh or British, called in the French prose version ‘liure des Evangelistes.’ Agreements were sometimes written on the fly-leaves of copies of the Gospels, as may be seen in two copies of the A.S. version of them.

1. 669. A very similar miracle is recorded in the old alliterative romance of Joseph of Arimathea, l. 362. The French version has: — ‘a peine auoit fini la parole, qu’uee mayn close, com poyn de homme, apparut deuant Elda et quant questoient en presence, et ferri tiel coup en le hater le feloun, que ambedeux les eus lui enuolent de la teste, & les dents hors de la bouche; & le feloun chait abatu a la terre; et aeco dist vne voz en le oyance de touz: Aduersus filiam matris ecclesie ponendas scandalum; hec fecisti, et tacui.’ I.e. ‘Scarcely had he ended the word, when a closed hand, like a man’s fist, appeared before Elda and all who were in the presence, and smote such a blow on the nape of the felon’s neck that both his eyes flew out of his head, and the teeth out of his mouth; and the felon fell smitten down to the earth; and therupon a voice said in the hearing of all, “Against the daughter of Mother Church thou was laying a scandal; this hast thou done, and I hold my peace.”’
THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

reading tacui suggests that, in l. 676, the word holde should rather be held; but the MSS. do not recognise this reading.

1. 697. Hir thoughte, it seemed to her; thoughte is here impersonal; so in l. 699. The French text adds that Domulde (Donegild) was, moreover, jealous of hearing the praises of Constance's beauty.

1. 701. Me list nat, it pleases me not, I do not wish to. He does not wish to give every detail. In this matter Chaucer is often very judicious; Gower and others often give the more unimportant matters as fully as the rest. Cf. l. 706; and see Suymeres Tale, F. 401.


1. 707. Trivet says—Puis a vn demy aan passe, vint nouele al Roy que les gentz de Albanie, que souz est Escotz, furent passes leur boundes et guerryrent les terres le Roy. Donant par commun counseil, le Roi assemble son ost de rebouter ses enemis. Et auant son departir vers Escoce, bailla la Reine Constance sa femme en la garde Elda, le Conestable du chastel, et a Lucius, levesque de Bangor; si lour chargea que quant cle fut deliueres densunt, qui lui feisoient hastieurement sauvoir la nouele; i.e. 'Then, after half-a-year, news came to the king that the people of Albania, who are the Scots, had passed their bounds, and warned on the king's lands. Then by common counsel the king gathered his host to rebut his foes. And before his departure towards Scotland, he committed Queen Constance his wife to the keeping of Elda, the constable of the castle, and of Lucius, bishop of Bangor, and charged them that when she was delivered, they should hastily let him know the news.'

1. 712. Knawe child, male child; as in Clekeres Tale, E. 444.

1. 723. At the fontstoo, i.e. at his baptism; French text—'al baptisme fu nome Moris.'

1. 729. To don his avantage, to suit his convenience. He hoped, by going only a little out of his way, to tell Donegild the news also, and to receive a reward for doing so. Trivet says that the old Queen was then at Knareborough, situated 'between England and Scotland, as in an intermediate place.' Its exact site is less than seventeen miles west of York. Donegild pretends to be very pleased at the news, and gives the man a rich present.

1. 730. Lettres; so in all 7 MSS.; Tyrwhitt reads lettre. But it is right as it is. Lettres is sometimes used, like Lat litera, in a singular sense, and the French text has 'les lettres.' Examples occur in Piers Plowman, B. ix. 38; Bruce, ii. 80. See l. 744, and note to l. 747.

1. 738. If ye wol ought, if you wish (to say) anything.

1. 740. Donegild is disyllabic here, as in l. 695, but in l. 805 it appears to have three syllables. I have before remarked that Chaucer alters proper names so as to suit his metre; see Pref. to Prioresses Tale, p. lxiii. l. 13, or p. lxiv. l. 12 (2nd ed.).

1. 743. Sadly, steadily, with the idea of long continuance.
1. 747. *Lettre*; here the singular form is used, but it is a matter of difference. Exactly the same variation occurs in Barbour's *Bruce,* ii. 'And, among othir, *lettres ar gayn* To the byschop off Androwis towne, That tauld how slayn wes that baroun. The *lettir tauld hym* all the deid,' &c.

This circumstance, of exchanging the messenger's letters for forgetting, is found in Matthew Paris's account of the Life of Ósfra the first Wats, pp. 965-968. See the Preface.

1. 748. *Direct,* directed, addressed; French text 'maunder.'

1. 751. Pronounce *horrible* as in French.

1. 752. The last word in this line should certainly be *nas* (not), as has kindly been pointed out to me; though the seven M have *was.* By this alteration we secure a true rime.

1. 754. *Elf*; French text—'le Pu maluzech esprir en four femme,' she was an evil spirit in form of woman. *Elf* is the A. Icel. *álfur,* G. *alp* and *elfe*; Shakespeare writes *ouphes for elves.*

Edda distinguishes between Ljósálfar, the elves of light, and Dók elves of darkness; the latter are not elsewhere mentioned except in modern fairy tales or in old writers. In the Alvismál, elves dwars are clearly distinguished as different. The abode of the Elves is 'Alheimar, fairy land, and their king the god Frey, the god of light. In the fairy tales the Elves haunt the hills; hence their Huldufólk, hidden people; respecting their origin, life, and custom—

1. 769. *Take,* handed over, delivered. *Take* often means to hand over in Middle English: very seldom to convey or bring.

1. 771. In the margin of MSS. E., Hn., C., and Pt. is written—turpis ebrios, cui fetor in ore, tremor in corpore, qui promit stulta, occultu, cuius, mens alienatur, facies transformatur? nullum e. immutatur, ubi regnat ebrietas.' This is no doubt the original of the lines in *Donne* of the same title, 171-177; cf. note to C. 561. There is nothing answering to it in *Donne*.

1. 778. 'O Donegild, I have no language fit to tell,' &c.

1. 782. *Mannish,* man-like, i.e. harsh and cruel, not mild and like a woman. But Chaucer is not satisfied with the epithet, and he ought rather to call her 'fiend-like.'
THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

1. 789. 'He stowed away plenty (of wine) under his girdle,' i.e. drank is fill.  
2. 794. Pronounce constibut much as if it were French, with an accent on a. In l. 808 the accent is on o. Lastly, in l. 858 all three syllables are fully sounded.  
3. 798. 'Three days and a quarter of an hour;' i.e. she was to be allowed only three days, and after that to start off as soon as possible. Ides (like nis in Icelandic) sometimes means an hour. The French text says—'deynz quatre jours,' within four days.  
4. 801. Crowde, push; see ll. 296, 299 above.  
5. 813–826. Lines 813–819 are not in the French, and ll. 820–826 are cut at all close to the original.  
6. 827–833. The French text only has—'en esperance que dure omencement amenera dieu a bon syn, et qil me purra en la mere uuer, qi en mere et en terre est de toute puissanc.'  
7. 835. The beautiful stanzas in ll. 834–868 are all Chaucer's own; and the next stanza, ll. 869–875, the French text gives but the merest hint.  
8. 842. Eggelement, incitement. The same word is used in other descriptions of the Fall. Thus, in Piers Plowman, B, i. 65, it is said that Adam and Eve he egged to ille; and in Allit. Poems, 1. Morris, B. 241, it is said of Adam that 'thurghe the eggyng of Eue ete of an apple.'  
10. 873. Purchace, provide, make provision. So in Troilus, bk. ii. 125, the line 'And of some goodly answer you purchase' means—and provide yourself with some kind answer, i.e. be ready with a kind reply.  
11. 875–884. Much abridged from the French text.  
12. 885. Tormented, tortured. However, the French text says the messenger acknowledged his drunkenness freely. Examination by torture was so common, that Chaucer seems to have regarded the mention of it as being the most simple way of telling the story.  
13. 893. Out of drede, without doubt, certainly; cf. l. 869. The other quality common expression out of doute comes to much the same thing, because doute in Middle-English has in general the meaning of fear or read, not of hesitation. See Group E. 634, 1155; and Pro. 487.  
14. 894. Pleynly rede, fully read, read at length. In fact, Chaucer judiciously omits the details of the French text, where we read that King Ælla shushed into his mother's room with a drawn sword as she lay asleep, caused her by crying 'traitress! in a loud voice, and, after hearing the ill confession which she made in the extremity of her terror, slew her and cut her to pieces as she lay in bed.  
15. 901. Fleteth, floats. French text—'le quinte an de cest exil, come se fut flotant sur le mere,' &c.  
16. 905. The name of the castle is certainly not given in the French.
text, which merely says it was "un chastel dun Admiral de paece:" a castle of an admiral of the Pagans.


1. 913. Shortly, briefly: because the poet considerably abridges this part of the narrative. The steward's name was Thelous.

1. 930. These two stanzas are wholly Chaucer's, plainly written as a parallel passage to that in II. 470-504 above.

1. 934. Golius, Goliath. See 1 Samuel xviii. 25.

1. 940. See the story of Holofernes in the Monkes Tale, B. 3741; and the note. I select the spelling Oloferne here, because it is that of the majority of the MSS., and agrees with the title De Oloferne in the Monkes Tale.

1. 947. In l. 465 Chaucer mentions the 'Strait of Marrok,' i.e. Morocco, though there is no mention of it in the French text; so here he alludes to it again, but by a different name, viz. 'the mouth of Juhalter and Septe.' Juhaltar (Gibraltar) is from the Arabic jahul hirik, i.e. the mountain of Tarik; who was the leader of a band of Saracens that made a descent upon Spain in the eighth century. Septe is Ceuta, on the opposite coast of Africa.

1. 956. Shortly, briefly; because Chaucer here again abridges the original, which relates how the Romans burnt the Sultanness, and slew more than 11,000 of the Saracens, without a single death or even wound on their own side.

1. 967. Servatour. His name was Arsemius of Cappadocia: his wife's name was Helen. Accent victorie on the o.

1. 969. As seith the storie, as the history says. The French text relates this circumstance fully.

1. 971. The French text says that, though Arsemius did not recognise Constance, she, on her part, recognised him at once, though she did not reveal it.

1. 981. Aun'e. Helen, the wife of Arsemius, was daughter of Sallustius, brother of the Emperor Tiberius, and Constance's uncle. Thus Helen was really Constance's first cousin. Chaucer may have altered it purposely: but it looks as if he had glanced at the sentence—Cec heleyne, la nece Constance, taunt tendrement anu sa nece,' &c., and had read it as—'This Helen . . . loved her niece so tenderly.' In reality, the word nece means 'cousin' here, being applied to Helen as well as to Constance.

1. 982. She, i.e. Helen: for Constance knew Helen.

1. 991. To receyuen, i.e. to submit himself to any penance which the Pope might see fit to impose upon him. Journeys to Rome were actually made by English kings; Alfred was sent to Rome as a boy, and his father, Æthelwulf, also spent a year there, but (as the Chronicle Tells us) he went 'mid micelre weordnesse,' with much pomp.
1. 994. *Wikked werkes*; especially the murder of his mother, as Trivet says. See note to l. 894.


1. 1009. *Som men wolde sayn*, some relate the story by saying. The expression occurs again in l. 1086. On the strength of it, Tyrwhitt concluded that Chaucer here refers to Gower, who tells the story of Constance in Book ii. of his Confessio Amantis. He observes that Gower's version of the story includes both the circumstances which are introduced by this expression. But this is not conclusive. It appears, rather, that Gower's version of the story is the later one of the two, and there is no reason why the expression *som men* may not refer to Nicholas Trivet, who also makes mention of these circumstances. See this further discussed in the Preface. In the present instance the French text has—

‘A ceo temps de la venuz le Roi a Rome, comensca Moris son diseotise aain. Cist estoit apris priuement de sa mere Constance, qe, quant il irret a la feste ou son seignur le senatour,’ &c.; i.e. At this time of the king's coming to Rome, Maurice began his eighteenth year. He was secretly instructed by his mother Constance, that, when he should go to the feast with his lord the senator, &c. See also the note to l. 1086 below.

1. 1014. *Mettes space*, time of eating. This circumstance strikingly resembles the story of young Roland, who, whilst still a child, was instructed by his mother Bertha to appear before his uncle Charlemagne, by way of introducing himself. The story is well told in Uhland's ballad entitled 'Klein Roland,' a translation of which is given at pp. 335-340 of my 'Ballads and Songs of Uhland.'

‘They had but waited a little while,  
When Roland returns more bold;  
With hasty step to the king he comes,  
And seizes his cup of gold.  
“What ho, there! stop! you saucy imp!”  
Are the words they loudly ring.  
But Roland clutches the beaker still  
With eyes fast fixed on the king.  
The king at the first looked fierce and dark,  
But soon perforce he smiled—  
“Thou comest,” he said, “into golden halls  
As though they were woodlands wild,”’ &c.

The result is also similar; Bertha is reconciled to Charlemagne, much as Custance is to Ælla.

1. 1034. *Aught*, in any way, at all; lit. 'a whith.'

NOTES TO GROUP B.

'Than took I with myn hondes tweye
The arwe, and ful faste it out plughte,
And in the pulling sore I syghte.'

1. 1036. That he myghte, as fast as he could.
1. 1038. 'I ought to suppose, in accordance with reasonable opinion.'
Chaucer tells the story quite in his own way. There is no trace of
ll. 1038–1042 in the French, and scarcely any of ll. 1048–1071, which is
all in his own excellent strain.
1. 1056. Shet, shut, closed. Compare the description of Griselda in
the Clerkes Tale, E. 1058–1061.
1. 1058. Both tuye and Owen are dissyllabic.
1. 1061. Alle his haloes, all His saints. Hence the term All-hallow-
mas, i.e. All Saints' day.
1. 1061. Wisly, certainly. As haue, I pray that he may have; see
note to l. 859 above. 'I pray He may so surely have mercy on my
soul, as that I am as innocent of your suffering as Maurice my son is
like you in the face.'
1. 1078. After this line, the French text tells us that King Ella
presented himself before Pope Pelagius, who absolved him for the death
of his mother.
1. 1086. Here again Tyrwhitt supposes Chaucer to follow Gower.
But, in fact, Chaucer and Gower both consulted Trivet, who says
here—'Constance change son fittz Morice del messager [or message]
... Et puis, quant Morice estoit deuant le Roi, CPU venus, oue le
compaigne honoraible, et auoit son message est de part le Roi son
pere,' &c.; i.e. 'Constance charged her son Maurice with the message
... and then, when Maurice was come before the emperor, with the
honourable company, and had done his message on behalf of the king
his father,' &c.
1. 1090. As he; used much as we should now use 'as one.' It refers
to the Emperor, of course.
1. 1091. Sentes, elliptical for 'as that he would send.' Tyrwhitt reads
send; but it is best to leave an expression like this as it stands in the
MSS. It was probably a colloquial idiom; and, in the next line, we have
wente. Observe that sente is in the subjunctive mood, and is equivalent
to 'he would send,'
1. 1107. Chaucer so frequently varies the length and accent of a pro-
per name that there is no objection to the supposition that we are here to
read Custance in three syllables, with an accent on the first syllable. In
exactly the same way, we find Grisilda in three syllables (E. 948),
though in most other passages it is Grisild. We have had Custance,
accented on the first syllable, several times; see ll. 438, 556, 566,
576, &c.; also Custaince, three syllables, ll. 194, 214, 319, 671, &c.
Tyrwhitt inserts a second you before Custune, but without authority.
Perhaps it improves the line, but it is better to leave the text untouched.

1. 1109. *It am I*; it is I. It is the usual idiom. So in the A.S. version of St. John vi. 20, we find *ic hyt eom,* i.e. I it am, and in a Dutch New Testament, A.D. 1700, I find *Ick ben t,* i.e. I am it. The Meeso-Gothic version omits it, having simply *Ik im;* so does Wyclif's, which has *I am.* Tyndale, A.D. 1526, has *it ys I.*


1. 1123. The French text tells us that he was named Maurice of Cappadocia, and was also known, in Latin, as *Mauritius Christianissimus Imperator.* Trivet tells us no more about him, except that he accounts for the title *of Cappadocia* by saying that Arsenius (the senator who found Constance and Maurice and took care of them) was a Cappadocian. Gibbon says—The Emperor Maurice derived his origin from ancient Rome; but his immediate parents were settled at Arabissus in Cappadocia; and their singular felicity preserved them alive to behold and partake the fortune of their august son.... Maurice ascended the throne at the mature age of 43 years; and he reigned above 20 years over the east and over himself.' Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire, cap. xiv. He was murdered, with all his seven children, by his successor, Phocas the Usurper; Nov. 27, A.D. 602. His accession was in A.D. 582.

1. 1127. The statement 'I bere it not in mynde,' i.e. I do not remember it, may be taken to mean that Chaucer could find nothing about Maurice in his French text beyond the epithet *Christianissimus,* which he has skillfully expanded into l. 1123. He vaguely refers us to *old Romayn gestes,* that is, to lives of the Roman emperors, for he can hardly mean the *Gesta Romanorum* in this instance. In the Marchauntes Tale, where he really refers to the *Gesta,* he uses the definite article, and calls them *the Romain gestes,* C. T. 10158. Gibbon refers us to Evagrius, lib. v. and lib. vi.; Theophylact, Simocatta; Theophanes, Zonaras, and Cedrenus.

1. 1132. In the margin of MSS. E., Hn., Cp., Pt. is written—A mane usque ad vesperam mutabilitatem. Tenent tympanum et gaudent ad somum organi, &c.'

1. 1135. In the margin of MSS. E., Hn.. Cp., Pt. is written—*Quis vnum vnicam diem totam duxit in sua dilectione vel delectatione iocondam? quem in aliqua parte diei reatus conscientia, vel impetus Ire, vel motus concupiscencia non turbauerit? quem liitor Inuidie, vel Ardor Auaricie, vel tumor superbia non vexauerit? quem aliqua inactura vel offensa, vel passio non commoverit, &c.* Cp. Pt. insert inde before non *turbauerit.* This corresponds to nothing in the French text, but is what Chaucer in l. 1139 calls 'a sentence,' i.e. a choice saying.
NOTES TO GROUP C.

1. 1143. I grew. I suppose. Chaucer somewhat alters the story. Trivet says that Ella died at the end of nine months after this. Half a year after, Constance repairs to Rome. Thirteen days after her arrival, her father Tiberius dies. A year later, Constance herself dies, on St. Clement's day (Nov. 23), A.D. 584, and is buried at Rome, near her father, in St. Peter's church. The date 584, here given by Trivet, should rather be 583; the death of Tiberius took place on Aug. 14 582; see Gibbon.

NOTES TO THE PARDONERES TALE (GROUP C).

The Words of the Host.


1. 288. Harrow, also spelt haro, a cry of astonishment; see Non. Prest. Tale. 225. 'Haro, the ancient Norman hue and cry; the exclamatory of a person to procure assistance when his person or property was in danger. 'To cry out haro on any one, to denounce his evil doings;' Halliwell's Dictionary. Spenser has it. F. Q. ii. 6.43; see Harrow in Kitchin's Gloss. to Spenser, bk. ii.

On the oaths used by the Host, see note to l. 651 below.

1. 289. The Host is denouncing the decennir Appius Claudius, whose false judgment had previously been described by the Doctor, in telling the story of Virginia.

1. 293. 'She (Virginia) bought her beauty too dear;' she paid too high a price; it cost her her life.

1. 299. Bothe gifter, both (kinds of) gifts; i.e. gifts of fortune, such as wealth, and of nature, such as beauty. Compare Dr. Johnson's poem on The Vanity of Human Wishes, imitated from the tenth satire of Juvenal.

1. 302. Pitous, piteous, pitiful. Such is the reading of all the seven best MSS. Tyrwhitt found the reading erneful in some MSS., which he correctly supposes to be had spelling for erneful, miserable, from A.S. eorn, wretched; see note to l. 312. The meaning, in fact, is the same.

1. 303. Is no fors, it is no matter. Here it must be supplied, the full phrase being it is no fors. In some cases Chaucer not only omits it, but is also; writing simply no fors, as in Group E. 1994, 2430. We also find I do no force, i.e. I care not, C. T. 6816; and They gave no force,
they care not. Romaunt of the Rose, 4836. Palsgrave has—'I gyue no force. I care nat for a thynge, Il ne men chault.'

1. 306. Ipocras is the usual spelling, in English MSS., of Hippocrates; see Prologue, l. 431. So also in the Book of the Duchess, 571, 572:—

'Ne hele me may no physicien,
Nought Ipocras, ne Galien.'

In the present passage it does not signify the physician himself, but a beverage named after him. 'It was composed of wine, with spices and sugar, strained through a cloth. It is said to have taken its name from Hippocrates' sleeve, the term apothecaries gave to a strainer;' Halliwell's Dict. s.v. Hippocras. In the same work, s.v. Ipocras, are several receipts for making it, the simplest being one copied from Arnold's Chronicle:—'Take a quart of red wyne, an ounce of synamon, and half an unce of gynger; a quarter of an ounce of greyenes, and long peper, and halfe a pounde of sugar; and brose all this, and then put them in a bage of wullen clothe, made therefore, with the wyne; and lete it hange over a vessel, tyll the wyne be rune thorowe.' Halliwell adds that—'Ipocras seems to have been a great favourite with our ancestors, being served up at every entertainment, public or private. It generally made a part of the last course, and was taken immediately after dinner, with wafers or some other light biscuits;' &c. See Pegge's Form of Cury, p. 161; Babees Book, ed. Furnivall, pp. 125-128, 267; and Nares's Glossary, s.v. Hippocras.

Galianes. In like manner this word (hitherto unexplained as far as I am aware) must signify drinks named after Galen, whose name is spelt Galian (in Latin, Galienus) not only in Chaucer, but in other authors, as pointed out by Tyrwhitt. See the second line on this page.

1. 310. Lyk a prelat, like a dignitary of the church, like a bishop or abbot. Mr. Jephson, in Bell's edition, suggests that the Doctor was in holy orders, and that this is why we are told in the Prologue, l. 438, that 'his studie was but litel on the bible.' I see no reason for this guess, which is quite unsupported. Chaucer does not say he is a prelate, but that he is like one; because he had been highly educated, as a member of a 'learned profession' should be.

Ronyan is here of three syllables and rhymes with man; in l. 320 it is of two syllables, and rhymes with anon. It looks as if the Host and Pardoner were not very clear about the saint's name, only knowing him to swear by. In Pilkington's Works (Parker Society), we find a mention of 'St. Tronian's fast,' p. 80; and again, of 'St. Riniun's fast,' p. 551, in a passage which is a repetition of the former. The forms Ronyan and Riniun are evidently corruptions of Ronan, a saint whose name is well known to readers of 'St. Ronan's Well.' Of St. Ronan scarcely anything is known. Th. ultest account that can easily be found is the following:—
Ronan, B. and C. Feb. 7.—Beyond the mere mention of his commemoration as S. Ronan, bishop at Kilmaron, in Levenax, in the body of the Breviary of Aberdeen, there is nothing said about this saint... Camerarius (p. 86) makes this Ronanus the same as he who is mentioned by Beda (Hist. Ecc. lib. iii. c. 25). This Ronan died in A.D. 778. The Ulster annals give at [A.D.] 717 (736)—“Mors Ronain Abbatis Cinngarail.” Ængus places this saint at the 9th of February, &c., Kalendars of Scottish Saints, by Bp. A. P. Forbes, 1872, p. 441. Kilmaron is Kilmarock, in the county and parish of Dumbarton. There are traces of St. Ronan in about seven place-names in Scotland, according to the same authority. Under the date of Feb. 7 (February, vol. ii. 3 B), the Acta Sanctorum has a few lines about St. Ronan, who, according to some, flourished under King Malduin, A.D. 664-684; or, according to others, about 693. The notice concludes with the remark—"Maiores lucem desideramus." Beda says that ‘Ronan, a Scot by nation, but instructed in ecclesiastical truth either in France or Italy,’ was mixed up in the controversy which arose about the keeping of Easter, and was ‘a most zealous defender of the true Easter.’ This controversy took place about A.D. 652, which does not agree with the date above.

1. 311. Tyrwhitt thinks that Shakespeare remembered this expression of Chaucer, when he describes the Host of the Garter as frequently repeating the phrase ‘said I well’: Merry Wives of Windsor, i. 3.11; ii. 1. 226; ii. 3. 93, 99.

In terme, in learned terms; cf. Prol. 323.

l. 312. Erme, to grieve. For the explanation of unusual words, the Glossary should, in general, be consulted; the Notes are intended, for the most part, to explain only phrases and allusions, and to give illustrations of the use of words. Such illustrations are, moreover, often omitted when they can easily be found by consulting such a work as Stratmann’s Old English Dictionary. In the present case, for example, Stratmann gives ten instances of the use of earn or arm as an adjective, meaning wretched; four examples of ermalic, miserable: four of earning, a miserable creature; and five of earinish, misery. These twenty-three additional examples show that the word was formerly well understood. It may be added, that a particular interest attaches to this word, in connection with Shakespeare. We may first note that a later instance of ermen or erme, to grieve, occurs in Caxton’s translation of Reynard the Fox, A.D. 1481; see Arber’s reprint p. 48, l. 5. ‘Thenne departed he fro the kyngse so heuyly that many of them ermed,’ i.e. then departed he from the king so sorrowfully that many of them mourned, or were greatly grieved. Now it is my firm belief that this verb to erme, slightly corrupted to erme, is the source of the verb to earn in Shakespeare, which has been further obscured by being changed into years a
modern editions. Examples are (using the modern corrupt spelling):
'It yearens me not when men my garments wear,' i.e. it grieves me not;
Hen. V. iv. 3. 46. 'My manly heart doth yearens,' i.e. grieve; Hen. V. ii. 3. 3. 'Falstaff he is dead, and we must yearens therefore;' Hen. V. ii. 3. 6. 'That every like is not the same, O Caesar, The heart of Brutus yearens to think upon;' Jul. Caesar, ii. 2. 129. It is remarkable that Shakespeare never uses the verb to yearens in the modern sense; he expresses that idea solely by the verb to long, which he uses more than sixty times. The prefixed y, found sometimes in old editions also, means no more than the y in the prov. E. yale for ale. And cf. note to l. 302.

l. 314. The Host's form of oath is amusingly ignorant; he is confusing the two oaths 'by corpus Domini' and 'by Christes bones,' and evidently regards corpus as a genitive case. Tyrwhitt alters the phrase to 'By corpus domini,' which wholly spoils the humour of it.

Triacle, a restorative remedy; see Man of Lawes Tale, Group B, l. 479.

l. 315. Moyste, new. The word retains the sense of the Lat. mustus and mustus. In Group H. 60 (see p. 116), we find moyste ale spoken of as differing from old ale. But the most peculiar use of the word is in the Prologue, l. 457, where the Wyf of Bath's shoes are described as being moyste and newe.

l. 318. Bel amy, good friend; a common form of address in old French. We also find biais doux amis, sweet good friend; as in—
"Charlot, Charlot, biais doux amis;"
Rutebuef; La Disputoison de Charlot et du Barbier, l. 57. Belamy occurs in an Early Eng. Life of St. Cecilia, MS. Ashmole 453, l. 161. Similar forms are beau filiz, dear son (Piers Plowman, B. vii. 162); beau perso, good father; beau sire, good sir. Cf. beldame.

l. 321. Ale-stake, inn-sign. Spedgert interprets this by 'may-pole.' He was probably thinking of the ale-pole, such as was sometimes set up before an inn as a sign; see the picture of one in Larwood and Hotten's History of Signboards, Plate II. But the ale-stakes of the fourteenth century were differently placed; instead of being perpendicular, they projected horizontally from the inn, just like the bar which supports painted sign at the present day. At the end of the ale-stake a large garland was commonly suspended, as mentioned by Chaucer himself ProL 667), or sometimes a bunch of ivy, box, or evergreen, called 'bush;' whence the proverb 'good wine needs no bush,' i.e. nothing to indicate where it is sold; see Hist. Signboards, pp. 3, 4, 6, 233. The leastest information about ale-stakes is obtained from a notice of them in the Liber Albus, ed. Riley, where an ordinance of the time of Richard I is printed, the translation of which runs as follows: 'Also, it was retained that whereas the ale-stakes, projecting in front of the taverns in hepe and elsewhere in the said city, extend too far over the king's
highways, to the impeding of riders and others, and, by reason of the excessive weight, to the great deterioration of the houses to which they are fixed, . . . it was ordained, . . . that no one in future should have a stake bearing either his sign or leaves [i.e. a bush] extending or lying over the King's highway, of greater length than 7 feet at most,' &c. At p. 292 of the same work, note 2, Mr. Riley rightly defines an ale-stake to be 'the pole projecting from the house, and supporting a bunch of leaves.'

The word ale-stake occurs in Chatterton's poem of Αella, stanza where it is used in a manner which shows that the supposed 'Rowlid did not know what it was like. See my note on this; Essay on Rowley Poems, p. xix.

I. 322. Of a cake; we should now say, a bit of bread; the modern sense of 'cake' is a little misleading. The old cakes were mostly made of dough, whence the proverb 'my cake is dough,' i.e. is not properly baked; Taming of the Shrew, v. i. 145. Shakespeare also speaks of 'cakes and ale,' Tw. Nt. ii. 3. 124. The picture of the 'Simnel Cake' in Chambers' Book of Days, i. 336, illustrates Chaucer's use of the word in the Prologue, l. 668.

I. 324. The Pardoner was so ready to tell some 'mirth or japes' to the more decent folks in the company as to repress him. It is a curious comment on the popular estimate of his character. He has, moreover, to refresh himself, and to think awhile before he can recollect 'so honest (i.e. decent) thing.'

II. 327, 328. The Harleian MS. has—

'But in the cuppe wil I me bethinke
Upon som honest tale, whil I drinke.'

The Pardoner's Prologue.

Title. The Latin text is copied from l. 334 below; it appears in Ellesmere and Hengwrt MSS. The A. V. has—'the love of me is the root of all evil;' 1 Tim. vi. 10. It is well worth noticing that the novel by Morlinius, quoted in the Preface as a source of the Pardoner's Tale, contains the expression—'radice malorum cupiditate aucta.'

The Preface.

I. 336. Bulles, bulls from the pope, whom he here calls his 'li lord;' see Prol. 687, and Piers the Plowman, B. Prol. 69.

Alle and somme, one and all. Cp. Clerkes Tale, E 941, and the

I. 337. Patente; defined by Webster 'an official document, confer a right or privilege on some person or party;' etc. It was so called because 'patent' or open to public inspection. 'When indulgences came to be sold, the pope made them a part of his ordinary revenue and, according to the usual way in those, and even in much later'
of farming the revenue, he let them out usually to the Dominican friars;" Massinger, Hist. Eng. Reformation, p. 126.

1. 345. 'To colour my devotion with.' For saffron, MS. Harl. reads savore. Tyrwhitt rightly prefers the reading saffron, as 'more expressive, and less likely to have been a gloss.' And he adds—'Saffron was used to give colour as well as flavour.' For example, in the Babees Book, ed. Furnivall, p. 275, we read of 'capons that ben coloured with saffron.' And in Winter's Tale, iv. 3. 48, the Clown says—'I must have saffron to colour the warden-pies.' Cf. Sir Thopas, Group B, l. 1930. As to the position of with, cp. Sq. Ta. 471, 641.

1. 346. According to Tyrwhitt, this line is, in some MSS., replaced by three, viz.—

'In every village and in every town,
This is my term, and shall, and ever was,
Radix malorum est cupiditas,'

1. 347. Cristal stones, evidently hollow pieces of crystal in which relics were kept; so in the Prologue, l. 700. we have—

'And in a glas he hadde pigges bones.'

1. 348. Cloutes, rags, bits of cloth. 'The origin of the veneration for relics may be traced to Acts xix. 12. Hence clouts, or cloths, are among the Pardoner's stock;' note in Bell's edition.

1. 349. Reliks. In the Prologue, we read that he had the Virgin Mary’s veil and a piece of the sail of St. Peter's ship. Below, we have mention of the shoulder-bone of a holy Jew's sheep, and of a miraculous mitten. See Heywood's impudent plagiarism from this passage in his description of a Pardoner, as printed in the note to l. 701 of Dr. Morris's edition of Chaucer's Prologue. See also a curious list of relics in Chambers' Book of Days, i. 587; and compare the humorous descriptions of the pardoner and his wares in Sir David Lyndesay's Satyre of the Three Estates, ll. 2037-2111.

1. 350. Latoun. The word laten is still in use in Devon and the North of England for plate tin, but as Halliwell remarks, that is not the sense of latoun in our older writers. It was a kind of mixed metal, much resembling brass both in its nature and colour. It was used for helmets (Rime of Sir Thopas, B. 2067), lavers (P. Pl. Crode, 1961), spoons (Nares), sepulchral memorials (Way in Prompt. Parv.), and other articles. Todd, in his Illustrations of Chaucer, p. 350, remarks that the escutcheons on the tomb of the Black Prince are of laton over-gilt, in accordance with the Prince's instructions; see Nichols's Royal Wills, p. 67. He adds—'In our old Church Inventories a cross of laton frequently occurs.' See Pro. 699.

1. 351. The expression 'holy Jew' is remarkable, as the usual feeling in the middle ages was to regard all Jews with abhorrence. It is suggested, in a note to Bell's edition, that it 'must be understood of VOl. III.'
some Jew before the Incarnation.' Perhaps the Pardoner wished it to be understood that the sheep was once the property of Jacob; this would help to give force to l. 365. Cp. Gen. xxx.

The best comment on the virtues of a sheep's shoulder-bone is afforded by a passage in the Persones Tale (De Ira), where we find—'Swering sodenly without avisement is also a grete sinne. But let none go now to that horrible swering of adiuration and coniuration, as don the false enchauntours and nigromancers in basins ful of water, or in a bright swerd, in a cercle, or in a fire, or in a shoulder-bone of a shepe;' &c. Sir David Lyndesay inserts a cow's horn and a cow's tail in his list of pardoners' relics; cp. note to l. 349 above.

In Part I of the Records of the Folk-lore Society is an article by Mr. Thoms on the subject of divination by means of the shoulder-bone of a sheep. He shows that it was still practised in the Scottish Highlands down to the beginning of the present century, and that it is known in Greece. He further cites some passages concerning it from some scarce books; and ends by saying—'let me refer any reader desirous of knowing more of this wide-spread form of divination to Sir H. Ellis's edition of Brand's Popular Antiquities, iii. 179, ed. 1842, and to much curious information respecting Spatulamancia, as it is called by Hartlieb, and as analogous species of divination ex anserino sterno, to Grimm's Deutch Mythologie, 2nd ed. p. 1067.'

l. 355. The sense is—'which any snake has bitten or stung.' The reference is to the poisonous effects of the bite of an adder or venomous snake. The word worm is used by Shakespeare to describe theasp whose bite was fatal to Cleopatra; and it is sometimes used to describe a dragon of the largest size. In Icelandic, the term 'míðgarðsormr,' lit. worm of the middle-earth, signifies a great sea-serpent encompassing the entire world.

l. 363. Fastinge. This word is spelt with a final e in all seven MSs; and as it is emphatic and followed by a slight pause, perhaps the final e should be pronounced. Cp. A.S. fastende, the oldest form of the present participle.

It is not, perhaps, absolutely essential to the metre, for the word may be pronounced fasting, with an accent on the first syllable, thus making the first foot consist of but one syllable. See other examples of this in my Preface to the Prioresse Tale, p. lxiii (or p. lxiv, 2nd ed.).

l. 366. For keleth, MS. III. has kelith, i.e. cooleth.

l. 379. The final e in sine must not be elided; it is preserved by the caesura. Besides, e is only elided before h in the case of certain words; see Pref. to Prioresse Tale, p. liv (or p. lv, 2nd ed.).

l. 387. Asoille, absolve. In Michelet's Life of Luther, tr. by W. Hazlitt, chap. ii, there is a very similar passage concerning Tetzel, the Dominican friar, whose shameless sale of indulgences roused Luther...
THE PARDONERES TALE. 147

... his famous denunciations of the practice. Tetzel 'went about from own to town, with great display, pomp, and expense, hawking the commodity [i.e. the indulgences] in the churches, in the public streets, a taverns and ale-houses. He paid over to his employers as little as possible, pocketing the balance, as was subsequently proved against him. The faith of the buyers diminishing, it became necessary to exaggerate to the fullest extent the merit of the specific... The strepid Tetzel stretched his rhetoric to the very uttermost bounds of amplification. Daringly piling one lie upon another, he set forth, a reckless display, the long list of evils which this panacea could cure. He did not content himself with enumerating known sins; he set his soul imagination to work, and invented crimes, infamous atrocities, strange, unheard of, unthought of; and when he saw his editors stand aghast at each horrible suggestion, he would calmly repeat the burden of his song:—Well, all this is expiated the moment your money chinks in the pope's chest.' This was in the year 1517.

l 390. An hundred mark. A mark was worth about 13s. 4d., and 100 marks about £66 13s. 4d. In order to make allowance for the difference in the value of money in that age, we must at least multiply by ten; or we may say in round numbers, that the Pardoner made it least £700 a year. We may contrast this with Chaucer's own pension of twenty marks, granted him in 1367, and afterwards increased ill, in the very last year of his life, he received in all, according to Sir Harris Nicolas, as much as £61 13s. 4d. Even then his income did not quite attain to the hundred marks which the Pardoner gained so easily.

l 397. Downe, a pigeon; lit. a dove. Chaucer, in the Milleres Tale, as a line very like this, viz.—

'As any swallow sitting on a berne,'


l 405. Blakeberyed. The line means—'Though their souls go blackberrying:' i.e. wander wherever they like. This is a well-known word, which all the editors have given up as unintelligible. I have been fortunate as to obtain the complete solution of it, which was printed in Notes and Queries, 4 S. x. 222, xii. 45, and again in my preface to the text of Piers the Plowman, p. lxxxvii. The simple explanation is, by a grammatical construction which was probably really due (as ill be shewn) to an error, the verb go could be combined with what is apparently a past participle, in such a manner as to give the tinciple the force of a verbal substantive. In other words, instead of saying 'he goes a-hunting,' our forefathers sometimes said 'he goes hunted.' The examples of this use are at least six. The clearest is in Plowman, C. ix. 138, where we read of 'folk that gon a-begging,' folk that go a-begging. In Chaucer, we not only have an instance...
in the present passage, but another in the Wyf of Bath’s Tale, Grynch, l. 354, where we have ‘to gon a-caterwaswed,’ with the sense of ‘to go a-caterwauling,’ and it is a fortunate circumstance that in both these cases the unusual forms occur at the end of a line, so that the rhyme preserved them from being tampered with. Gower (Conf. Amaz. bk. i. ed. Chalmers, pp. 32, 33, or ed. Pauli, i. 110) speaks of a king of Hungary riding out ‘in the month of May,’ adding—

‘This king with noble purciunce
Hath for him-selfe his share [cor] arayed,
Wherein he wolde ryde amayed,’ &c.

that is, wherein he wished to ride a-Maying. Again (in bk. v, ed. Chalmers, p. 124, col. 2, or ed. Pauli, ii. 132) we read of a drunken priest losing his way:

‘This prest was dronke, and goth a-strayed;’
i.e. he goes a-straying, or goes astray.

The explanation of this construction I take to be this; the -ed was not really a sign of the past participle, but a corruption of the ending -eth (A.S. -æ) which is sometimes found at the end of a verbal substantive. Hence it is that, in the passage from Piers Plowman above quoted, one of the best and earliest MSS. actually reads ‘folk that gon a-leggeth.’ And again, in another passage (P. Pl. C. ix. 246) is the phrase ‘gon abrybeth,’ or, in some MSS., ‘gon abryved,’ i.e. go a-bribing or go a-thieving, since Mid. Eng. briben often means to rob. This form is clearly an imitation of the form a-hunteoth in the old phrase gon a-hunteoth or ridden an honteth, used by Robert of Gloucester (Specimens of English, ed. Morris and Skeat, p. 14, l. 387)—

‘As he rold an honteth, and par-cunte [h]is hors spurnde.’

Now this honteth is the dat case of a substantive, viz. of the A.S. kumtæd or kumtæd. This substantive would easily be mistaken for a part of a verb, and, particularly, for the past participle of a verb; just as many people at this day are quite unable to distinguish between the true verbal substantive and the present participle in -ing. This mistake once established, the ending -ed would be freely used after the verbs go, or ride.

The result is that the present phrase, hitherto so puzzling, is a mere variation for ‘gon a Blake-berrying,’ i.e. ‘go a-gathering blackberries,’ a humorous expression for ‘wander wherever they please.’ A not very dissimilar expression occurs in the proverbial saying—‘his wits are gone a-wool-gathering.’

The Pardoner says, in effect, ‘I promise them full absolution; however, when they die and are buried, it matters little to me in what direction their souls go.’

I. 407. Tyrwhitt aptly adduces a parallel passage from the Romance of the Rose, l. 5766—
'For oft good predications Cometh of evil intention.'

Some indeed preach Christ even of envy and strife;' Phil. i. 15.

l. 413. In Piers Plowman (B-text), v. 87, it is said of Envy that—

'Eche a worde that he warep · was of an addres tonge.'

Cf. Rom. iii. 13; Ps. cxxi. 3.

l. 440. For I teche, because I teach, by my teaching.

l. 441. Wilful pouere signifies voluntary poverty. This is well illustrated by the following lines concerning Christ in Piers Plowman, B. xx. 48, 49:—

'Syth he that wroughte al the worlde · was wilfulich nedy,

Ne neuer non so nedy · ne pouerer delye.'

Several examples occur in Richardson’s Dictionary in which wilfully has the sense of willingly or voluntarily. Thus—'If they wylfully would renounce the sayd place and put them in his grace, he wolde vterly pardon theyr trespace;' Fabym’s Chronicle, c. 114. It even means gladly; thus in Wyclif’s Bible, Acts xxi. 17, we find, ‘britherin res-

seyuyden vs wilfully.’ Speaking of palmers, Spegys says—‘The pilgrym travelled at his own charge, the palmer professed wilful poverty.’


l. 445. The context seems to imply that some of the apostles made baskets. So in Piers Plowman, B. xv. 285, we read of St. Paul—

‘Poule, after his prechyn · panyers he made.’

Yet in Acts xviii. 3 we only read that he wrought as a tent-maker. However, it was St. Paul who set the example of labouring with his hands; and, in imitation of him, we find an early example of basket-making by St. Arsenius, ‘who, before he turned hermit, had been the tutor of the emperors Arcadius and Honorius,’ and who is represented in a fresco in the Campo Santo at Pisa, by Pietro Laurati, as ‘weaving baskets of palm-leaves;’ whilst beside him another hermit is cutting wooden spoons, and another is fishing. See Mrs. Jameson’s Sacred and Legendary Art, 3rd ed. ii. 757.

l. 448. The best description of the house-to-house system of begging, as adopted by the mendicant friars, is near the beginning of the Sompnour’s Tale. They went in pairs to the farm-houses, begging a bushel of wheat, or malt, or rye, or a piece of cheese or brawn, or bacon or beef, or even a piece of an old blanket. Nothing seems to have come amiss to them.

l. 450. See Prologue, l. 255; and cf. the description of the poor widow at the beginning of the Nonne Prestes Tale.
and now rest. Andrew Bar of Knowledge, ch. viii, says:—*Flamod fysh & fishe & wyld fowle. Ther shal table, & well ordred and used for meat: countrre is playn, & somewhat sandy, T men be great drynkers; and many of the dysposyd.* He describes the Fleming as:

"I am a Fleming, what for all the Although I will be dronken other...

l. 454. *Haunteden,* followed after; cf. expression occurs in The Tale of Beryn, addition to the Canterbury Tales:—

"Foly, I haunted it ever, ther myght no...

l. 473. *Grisly,* terrible, enough to make or right word; see the Glossary. The mention of the admission of my Uncle Toby in Stern that "our armies swore terribly in Flanders.

l. 474. *To-tore,* tear in pieces, dismember: Prioresses Tale (Clar. Press). Chaucer else sake were not so sinfully, in dismembering bones, and body; for certes it semeth, that an Iewes dismembered him not ynoough, but ye Persones Tale. De Ves..." And see ll. 629-650.
THE PARDONER'S TALE.

By 'his holy membres,' by his 'blode,' by 'his face, his herte, s croune of thorne,' etc. Todd, in his Illustrations of Chaucer, quotes (from an old MS.) the old second commandment in the g form:

"II. Thi goddes name and b[e]autte
Thou shalt not take for wel nor wo;
Dismembre hym not that on rode-tre
For the was mad boyth blak and blo.'

Tombeuertes, female dancers. 'Sir Perdicas, whom that kinge
re made to been his heire in Grece, was of no kinges blod; his
mother] was a tombystere;' Testament of Love, Book ii. ed.
xi. ccxcvi b.

"Estere is the feminine form; the A.S. spelling would be tum-
be masc. form is the A.S. tumbera, which is glossed by salator,
ancer; the verb is tumbian, to dance, used of Herodias's daughter
A.S. version of Mark vi. 22.
he feminine termination -ster (formerly -stere, or -stre) see the
in Marsh's Lectures on the English Language, printed in (the
d) Smith's Student's Manual of the English Language, ed. 1862,
, 208, with an additional note at p. 217. Marsh's remarks are, in
c, less clear than usual. He shews that the termination was not
used as a feminine, and that, in fact, its force was early lost. It
ever, merely a question of chronology. That the termination was
ly feminine in Anglo-Saxon, is sufficiently proved by the A.S. ver-
the Gospels. There we find the word witega frequently used in the
n prophet; but, in one instance, where it is necessary to express the
t, we find this accomplished by the use of this very termination
na was witegy-stere (another MS. witegestere); i.e. and Anna was
ces. Luke ii. 36. Similar instances might easily be multiplied;
. Morris's Hist. Outlines of Eng. Accidence, pp. 89, 90. Thus,
ren (pl.) is used as the translation of lotrices; Old Eng.
es, ed. Morris, ii. 57. But it is also true that, in the fourteenth
, the feminine force of this termination was becoming very weak,
. whilst in P. Plowman, B. v. 306, we find 'Beton the breuestere'
to a female brewer, we cannot thence certainly conclude that
ster' was always feminine at that period. On the other hand,
point to one word, spinster, which has remained feminine to this
y.
Morris remarks that tombester is a hybrid word; in which I
he has been misled by the spelling. It is a pure native word,
e A.S. tumbian, but the scribes have turned it from tumbestere
bester, by confusion with the French tomber. Yet even the
ber was once spelt tumber (Burguy, Roquefort), being, in fact,
of Germanic origin. An acrobat can still be called a tumbler:

l. 479. *frugicarium* female sellers of fruit.
l. 479. *Waferresses*, sellers of confectionery; form *wafrestre* occurs in Piers Plowman.
Fletcher we learn that ‘wafer-women’ were embassies, as stated in Nares’ Glossary, q.
l. 483. *Holy writ*. In the margin of the Hl. is the note—*Nolite inebriari vino*, in the Vulgate version of Eph. v. 18.
l. 488. *Herod, (as may be seen by any stories) carefully.* The Harleian MS. I.
but the reference is particular, not vague.
l. 498. was the author of an Historia Scholastica called *the maister of stories,* or ‘clerk of the note* to Piers Plowman, vii. 73 (Clar. Pre.

is due to the fact that the whole Historia Scholastica—an epitome of the Bible, with notes and additions—each of which is also called *Historia.*

of course, in the section entitled Historia Scholastica—de pollinatione ianiss. Cf. Matt. xiv; Mark

l. 492. *Senec.,* Seneca. The reference appears in Tyrwhitt, to Seneca’s Letters; Epist. lxxxii.

illum ebræi habitum: nunquid de furore tua est minor, sed brevior?'

l. 496. *Pompey.* ‘The madness when it be-
THE PARDONERES TALE.

Even Milton has it; see P. Lost, xi. 86.

See also l. 590 below.

1. 512. 'O gluttony! it would much behove us to complain of thee!' 
1. 522. In the margin of MSS. E. and Hn. is written the quotation—
Esca ventri, et venter escis. Deus autem et hunc et illam destrue.'
For illam, the usual reading of the Vulgate is has; see 1 Cor. vi. 13.
1. 526. Whye and rede, white wine and red wine; see note to Piers
Plowman, B. prol. 248 (Clar. Press).
1. 529. In the margin of MSS. E. and Hn. is written—'Ad Philipenses,
capitulio tertio.' See Phil. iii. 18.
1. 537. 'How great toil and expense (it is) to provide for thee!' Chaucer
is here addressing man's appetite for delicacies. Cf. fond, Non. Pr.
Tale, 9.

1. 539. Here Chaucer humorously alludes to the famous disputes in
scholastic philosophy between the Realists and Nominalists. To
attempt any explanation of their language is to become lost in subtleties
of distinction. It would seem however that the Realists maintained
that everything possesses a substance, which is inherent in itself, and
distinct from the accidents or outward phenomena which the thing
presents. According to them, the form, smell, taste, colour, of anything
are merely accidents, and might be changed without affecting the
substance itself. See the excellent article on Substance in the Engl.
Cyclopaedia; also that on Nominalists.

According to Chaucer, then, the cooks who toil to satisfy man's
appetite change the nature of the things cooked so effectually as to con-
found substance with accident. Translated into plain language, it
means that those who partook of the meats so prepared, could not, by
means of their taste and smell, form any precise idea as to what they
were eating. The art is not lost.

1. 547. Haumete, practises, indulge in; cf. l. 464. In the margin of
MSS. E. and Hn. is written—'Qui autem in deliciis est, vicens mortus
est.' This is a quotation from the Vulgate version of St Tim. v. 6, but
with qui for que, and mortius for mortua.
1. 549. In the margin of MSS. E. and Hn. is written—'Luxuriosa res
vinum, et contumeliosae ebrietas.' The Vulgate version of Prov. xx. 1
agrees with this nearly, but has tumultuosa for contumeliosa. This is of
course the text to which Chaucer refers. And see note to B. 771.

1. 554. He means that the drunkard's stertorous breathing seems to
repeat the sound of the word Sampson. The word was probably
chosen for the sake of its nasal sounds, to imitate a sort of grunt.
Pronounce the m and n as in French, but with exaggerated emphasis.
So also in l. 572.
l. 553. See note to the Monkes Tale, Group B, line 3245. In Judges xiii. 4, 7, the command to drink no wine is addressed, not to Samsen, but to his mother. Of Samson himself it is said that he was a Nazarite, which implies the same thing; see Numbers vi. 3, 5.

l. 561. In Chaucer’s Tale of Meliboeus (Six-text. B. 2383) we find—'Thou shalt also eschew the consailing of folk that been dronkelewe; for they can no conseil hyde; for Salomon seith, Ther is no pruicet ther-as regneth dronkenesse;' and see B. 776. The allusion is to Prov. xxxi. 4—'Noli regibus. O Lamuel, noli regibus dare unum; quia nullam secretum est uli regnat ebrietas.' This last clause is quite different from that in our own version; which furnishes, perhaps, a reason why the allusion here intended has not been perceived by previous editors.

l. 563. Namely, especially. Tyrwhitt’s note is as follows: ‘According to the geographers, Lepe was not far from Cadiz. This wine, of whatever sort it may have been, was probably much stronger than the Gascon wines, usually drunk in England. La Rochelle and Bordeaux (l. 571), the two chief ports of Gascony, were both, in Chaucer’s time, part of the English dominions.’

Spanish wines might also be more alluring upon account of their great rarity. Among the Orders of the Royal Household, in 1604, is the following (MS. Harl. 293, fol. 162): “And whereas, in tymes past, Spanish wines, called Sacke, were little or noe whit used in our courte and that in later years, though not of ordinary allowance, it was thought convenient that noblemen... might have a boule or glas, &c. We understanding that it is now used as common drinke... reduce the allowance to xii, gallons a day for the court.” &c. Several regulations to be observed by London vintners are mentioned in the Liber Albis, ed. Riley, pp. 614-618. Amongst them is—‘Item. that white wine of Gascoigne, of la Rochele, of Spain, or other place, shall not be put in cellars with Krench wines.’ See also note to l. 563.

l. 564. To selle, for sale; the true germinal, of which to is, in Anglo-Saxon, the sign. So also ‘this house to let’ is the correct old idiom, needing no such alteration as some would make. Cf. Morris, Hist. Outlines of Eng. Accidence, sect. 290, subsect. 4. Fish Street leads out of Lower Thames Street, close to the North end of London Bridge. The Harlincn MS. alone reads Fleet Street, which is certainly wrong. Considering that Thames Street is especially mentioned as a street for vintners (Liber Albis, p. 614), and that Chaucer’s own father was a Thames Street vintner, there can be little doubt about this matter. The poet is here speaking from his own knowledge; a consideration which gives the present passage a peculiar interest. Cheps is Cheapside.

l. 565. This is a fine touch. The poet here tells us that some of this strong Spanish wine used to find its way mysteriously into other wines; not (he ironically suggests) because the vintners ever mixed them wines,
but because the vines of Spain notoriously grew so close to those of Gascony that it was not possible to keep them apart! Crepeth subtily= finds its way mysteriously. Observe the humour in the word growing, which expresses that the mixture of wines must be due to the proximity of the vines producing them in the vineyards, not to any accidental proximity of the casks containing them in the vintners' cellars. In fact, the different kinds of wine were to be kept in different cellars, as the Regulations in the Liber Albus (pp. 615-618) shew. 'Item, that no Taverner shall put Rhenish wine and White wine in a cellar together.' 'Item, that new wines shall not be put in cellars with old wines.' 'Item, that White wine of Gascoigne, of la Rochele, of Spain, or other place, shall not be put in cellars with Rhenish wines.' 'Item, that white wine shall not be sold for Rhenish wine.' 'Item, that no one shall expose for sale wines counterfeit or mixed, made by himself or by another, under pain of being set upon the pillory.' But pillories have vanished, and all such laws are obsolete.

1. 570. 'He is in Spain;' i.e. he is, as it were, transported thither. He imagines he has never left Cheapside, yet is far from knowing where he is, as we should say.

1. 571. 'Not at Rochelle,' where the wines are weak.

1. 579. 'The death of Attila took place in 453. The commonly received account is that given by Jornandes, that he died by the bursting of a blood-vessel on the night of his marriage with a beautiful maiden, whom he added to his many other wives; some, with a natural suspicion, impute it to the hand of his bride. Priscus observes, that no one ever subdued so many countries in so short a time. ... Jornandes, De Rebus Geticis, and Priscus, Excerpta de Legationibus, furnish the best existing materials for the history of Attila. For modern compilations, see Buat, Histoire des Peuples de l'Europe: De Guignes, Hist. des Huns; and Gilbon, capp. xxxiv and xxxv; 'English Cyclopaedia. And see Amédée Thierry, Histoire d'Attila.

Mr. Jephson (in Bell's Chaucer) quotes the account of Attila's death given by Paulus Diaconus, Gest. Rom. lib. xv: 'Qui reversus ad proprias sedes, supra plures quas habebat uxores, valde decoram, indiciò nomine, sibi in matrimonium iuxit. Ob cuius nuptias profusa consuuiia exercens, dum tantum uini quantum nunquam anteis insimili bibisset, cum supinus quiesceret, erupitio sanguinis, qui ci de naribus solitus erat effluere, suffocatus et extinctus est.'

1. 585. Lemuel, i.e. King Lemuel, mentioned in Prov. xxxi. 1. q.v.; not to be confused, says Chaucer, with Samuel. The allusion is to Prov. xxxi. 4. 5; and not (as Mr. Wright suggests) to Prov. xxiii. In fact, in the margin of MSS. E. and Hn. is written—'Noli uinum dare.' words found in Prov. xxxi. 4. See note to l. 561.

L 591. Hazard, gambling. In the margin of MSS. E. and Hn.
It should rather be attributed to John of Salisbury, from whom our author, the following, calls him Chiton: "Polyeucemonius, laudandae societatis causa missae populi ludentes inuenit in alia. Infec [dicem se nolle gloriam Spartanorum excelsionem, hae maculare in bello constrictisse societatem]."

According to C. 1 (i.e. MS. Camb. Lib. I. 4. 2), instead of Calidon, the common reading, the author has used before Lacedomioi for Lacedemon for "Lacedemonius" (F. 1380)."

In the Petrv. MS., the name Stilbon is ex-So, in Liddell and Scott's Gk. Lexicon, the planet Mercury, Arist. Mund. 2. 9; cf. Cic.ation is clearly wrong in the present instance, sense of word, viz. 'shining,' from the of the word, viz. 'shining,' from the 1. 608. The first foot has but one syllable: Tyrwhitt, oddly remarks here, that 'ate' into "at the," viz. in the old editions. Of cession, a corruption of at the; Tyrwhitt prudence, it might as well have left the form an instead stand, though strewn with other corruption, it was..."
1. 633. In the margin of MSS. E., Hn., and Pt. is the quotation 'Nolite omnino iurare,' with a reference (in Hn. only) to Matt. v. The Vulgate version of Matt. v. 34 is—'Ego autem dico ubiis, non iurare omnino, neque per cœlum, quia thronus Dei est.'

1. 635. In the margin of MSS. E., Hn., and Pt. is written—'Ieremie quarto. Jurabis in veritate, in Iudicio et Justicia;' see Jer. iv. 2.

There are several points of resemblance between the present passage and one in the Persones Tale (De Ira), part of which has been already quoted in the note to l. 474. 'Also our Lord Iesu Crist sayth, by the word of seint Mathew: Ne shal ye nat swere in alle manere, neyth er by heven, &c. And if so be that the lawe compelle ye to swere, than reuleth you after the lawe of god in your swering, as sayth Ieremie; Thou shalt kepe three conditions; thou shalt swere in throuth, in dome, and in rightwisenesse, &c. And think wel this, that eury gret swerer, not compelle lawfully to swere, the plage shal not depart fro his hous, while he useth unlefule swering. Thou shalt swere also in dome, when thou art constrained by the domesman to witness a throuth;' &c. So also Wyclif:—'sit no man schulde swere, nouther for life ne deithe, no but with these thre condiciones, that is, in treuthe, in dome, and in rightwisenes, as God saith by the prophet Jeremye;' Works, ed. Arnold, iii. 483.

1. 639. The firste table, i.e. the commandments that teach us our duty towards God; those in the second table teach us our duty to our neighbour.

1. 641. Seconde haste, second commandment. Formerly, the first two commandments were considered as one: the third commandment was therefore the second, as here. The tenth commandment was divided into two parts, to make up the number. See Wyclif's treatise on 'The ten Coamendements;' Works, ed. Arnold, iii. 82. Thus Wyclif says—'The secounde maner maundlement of God perteyneth to the Sone. Thow shalt not take the name of thi Lord God in veyn, neiphe in word, nei ther in lyvyng.' And see note to l. 474.

1. 643. Rather, sooner; because this commandment prescieth those which relate to murder, &c.

1. 646. 'They that understand his commandments know this,' &c.

1. 649. Wyclif says—'For it is written in Ecclesiasticus, the thre and twenti chapitre, there he scith this: A man much sweringe schal be fulfilled with wickednesse, and veniance schal not go away fro his hous;' Works, iii. 84. Chaucer here quotes the same text; see Ecclus. xxiii. 11.

1. 651. So Wyclif, iii. 483—'hit is not leveful to swere by creaturis, ne by Goddys bonys, sydnys, neylyus, ne armus, or by ony membre of Cristis body, as he moste dele of men user.'

Tyrwhitt says—his nayles, i.e. with which he was nailed to the cross.

Sir J. Maundeville, c. vii—'And thereby in the walle is the place wher
the 4 Nayles of our Lord were hidd; for he had 2 in his hondes, and 2 in his feet: and one of these the Emperoure of Constantynoble made a brydille to his hors, to bere him in bataylle; and thorg th vertue ofer he overcame his enemies,” &c. He had said before, c. ii., that “on of the nayles that Crist was naylled with on the cross” was “at Constantynoble; and on in France, in the kinges chapelle.”

Mr. Wright adds, what is doubtless true, that these nails ‘were objects of superstition in the middle ages.’ Notwithstanding these opinions, I am not satisfied that these comments are quite correct. I strongly suspect that swearers did not stop to think, nor were they at all particular as to the sense in which the words might be used. Here, for example, nails are mentioned between heart and blood; in the quotation from Wyclif in the note to l. 651, we find mention of ‘bones, sides, nails, and arms,’ followed by ‘any member of Christ’s body.’ Still more express is the phrase used by William Staunton (see note to l. 474 above) that ‘God’s members’ include ‘his nails.’ On the other hand, in Lewis’s Life of Pecock, p. 155 [or p. 107, ed. 1820], is a citation from a MS. to the effect that, in the year 1420, many men died in England ‘emittendo sanguinem per iuncturas et per secessum, scilicet in illis partibus corporis quas horribiliter iurare consueuerunt, scilicet, per oculos Christi, per faciem Christi, per latera Christi, per sanguinem Christi, per cor Christi preciosum, per clavos Christi in suis manibus et pedibus.’ A long essay might be written upon the oaths found in our old authors, but the subject is, I think, a most repulsive one.

l. 652. Here Tyrwhitt notes—The Abbey of Hailes, in Gloucestershire, was founded by Richard, king of the Romans, brother to Henry III. This precious relick, which was afterwards called “the blood of Hailes,” was brought out of Germany by the son of Richard, Edmund, who bestowed a third part of it upon his father’s Abbey of Hailes, and some time after gave the other two parts to an Abbey of his own foundation at Ashrug near Berkhamsted. Hollinshead, vol. ii. p. 275. ‘A vial was shewn at Hailes in Gloucestershire, as containing a portion of our blessed Saviour’s blood, which suffered itself to be seen by no person in a state of mortal sin, but became visible when the penitent, by his offerings, had obtained forgiveness. It was now discovered that this was performed by keeping blood, which was renewed every week, in a vial, one side of which was thick and opaque, the other transparent, and turning it by a secret hand as the case required. A trick of the same kind, more skilfully executed, is still annually performed at Naples.’—Southey, Book of the Church, ch. xii. He refers to Fuller, b. vi. Hist. of Abbeys, p. 323; Burnet, i. 323, ed. 1681. See also the word Hales in the Index to the works published by the Parker Society; and Pilgrimages to Walsingham and Canterbury (by Erasmus), ed. J. G. Nichols, 2nd ed. 1875, p. 88.
THE PARDONERES TALE.

. 'My chance is seven; yours is five and three.' This is an allusion to a game called hazard, not to a mere comparison of throws which is highest. A certain throw (here seven) is called the chance. This can only be understood by an acquaintance with the game. See the article Hazard in Supplement to Eng. Miscellanea, or in Hoyle's Games. Cf. Man of Lawes Prologue, B 124; Tale, B 3851. Compare—Not unlike the use of foule gamesters, ing lost the main by [i.e. according to] true judgement, thinke t out with a false oath; Lyly's Euphues and his England (qu. well's edition of Naes, s.v. Main).

. In the Towneley Mysteries, p. 241, when the soldiers dice for garments, one says—

'I was falsly begyled with the thise byched bones,
Ther cursyd thay be.'

following page (p. 242). Pilate addresses a soldier with the(q) Unbycheid, unbayn. Unbayn (Icel. ú-beinn) means, literally, ; metaphorically, perverse; and is a term of reproach. This that unbycheid could be similarly used.

Readings are:—E. Cp. bicched; Ln. becheched; Hl. bicched; Hn. he; Pt. and old ed. thilkh, thilke (wrongly). Besides which, t cites bichet, MS. Harl. 7335; becheched, Camb. Univ. Lib. Dd. 4. , from other MSS., bicched, bicchid, bicched, bicche. The general rule of the MS. and the quotation from the Towneley Mysteries is the reading given in the text beyond all doubt. Yet Tyrwhitt chel, for which he adduces no authority beyond the following, as explained by Kilian, is talus, ovillus et lusorius; and bikkelen, ere. See also Had. Junii Nomencl. n. 213. Our dice indeed ancient tesserae (σφαιρα) not tali (δαχτύλια); but, both being of hazard, the implements of one might be easily attributed her. It should seem from Junius, loc. cit., that the Germans served the custom of playing with the natural bones, as they 'erent names for a game with talii ovelli, and another with tali in the Tauchnitz Dutch Dictionary—Bikkel, cockal. Bikkle, t cockals.' Here cockal is the old name for a game with four nes (Halliwell), and is further made to mean the hucklebone the same Dutch Dictionary gives—Bikken, to notch (the mill-
(2) that the English term **biched boon** is equivalent to the Dutch **bikkeld**, Ger. **bickel**, and means a die. Further, it seems to me a fair conclusion that **biched** means pecked or pitted, or notched, in allusion to the spots marked on it by making slight holes on the surface; thus the **biched bones two** would mean 'the two spotted bones,' a sufficient equivalent for 'a pair of dice.' Nor is it out of place to observe that **picks**, in the North of England, means the suit of diamonds at cards; whilst, in French, **pique** means a spade, also at cards. Whence it is not improbable that **picks** once meant what we now call **pips**. According to this hypothesis, **biched** is nothing more than a various spelling of **picked or pecked**. The change from **b** to **p** is fairly supported by the German **bicke**, also spelt **pice**, a pick-axe (Flügel's Dict.), and by the change in the English word **beak** as compared with **peak**; cf. Welsh **pię**, meaning both beak and peak. The equivalence of the forms **pick** and **pitch** is familiar to all readers of Shakespeare; see Cor. i. 1. 104—'as high As I could pick my lance.' Of course **cch** is the usual fourteenth-century spelling for the later **tch**, as in **pische arwo**, to peck in twain, Piers Plowman, B. vi. 105.

Further research confirms the above conclusions, and renders them certain. I quote a few more authorities, for the reader's satisfaction, without by any means exhausting the subject.

Hexham's Dutch Dictionary (ed. 1658) gives:—'Een Bickel, ofte [or] Pickel, a hucklebone, or a die. Bickel, a pounce, or a graver. Bickelen, ofte Pickelen, to play at dice. Bickelen, ofte Bicken, to cut, pink, or engrave. Een Bickeler, ofte Bicker, a stone-hewer, a stone-carver, or a cutter. Bicken, to cut or carve.' The Icel. **pikka** means both to pick and to prick. The A. S. **pieung** means a stigma, or mark caused by burning. The German **Pickel** is explained by Heinsius as 'ein kleines Fleck, ein kleines Geschwür auf der Haut;' and **picken**, he says, is 'sanft picken, mit etwas Spitzigem leise berühren.' In Kittner and Nicholson's German Dictionary I find 'Picken, to peck with the bill, as birds do. Ein Vogel, der sich pcket, a bird that picks, pecks, or proins itself.' This last throws a clear light on **ajiteth** in Chaucer's Prologue l. 365.

Perhaps also **unbychid** may mean unmarked, and therefore useless; this would exactly suit the context. 'Unbychid, unbayn,' useless and perverse.

I hope this long note on a crucial point may be excused.

I. 662. **Pryme**, about nine o'clock; see notes to Non. Pr. Tale, 35; and to Group B. 2015 (Sir Thopas). Here it means the canonical hour for prayer so called, to announce which bells were rung.

I. 664. A hand-bell was carried before a corpse at a funeral by the sexton. See Rock, Church of Our Fathers, ii. 471; Grundtvig's Works, p. 136.
1. 666. *That oon of them,* the one of them; the old phrase for *one of them.* *Knave,* boy.

1. 667. *Go bet,* lit. go better, i.e. go quicker; a term of encouragement to dogs in the chase. So in the Legend of Good Women (Dido, l. 288) we have—

‘The herde of hartes founden is anon,
With *hey! go bet!* prick thou! let gon, let gon!’

Halliwell says—*Go bet,* an old hunting cry, often introduced in a more general sense. See Songs and Carols, xv; Shak. Soc. Pap. i. 58; Chaucer, C. T. 11601 [the present passage]; Dido, 288; Tywhitt’s notes, p. 278; Ritson’s Anc. Pop. Poetry, p. 46. The phrase is mentioned by [Juliana] Berners in the Boke of St. Alban’s, and seems nearly equivalent to *go along.* It is strange that no editor has perceived the exact sense of this very simple phrase. Cf. ‘*Keep bet* my good,’ i.e. take better care of my property; Shipmannes Tale, third line from the end.

1. 679. *This pestilence,* during this plague. Alluding to the Great Plagues that took place in the reign of Edward III. There were four such, viz. in 1348-9, 1361-2, 1369, and 1375-6. As Chaucer probably had the story from an Italian source, the allusion must be to the first and worst of these, the effects of which spread nearly all over Europe, and which was severely felt at Florence, as we learn from the description left by Boccaccio. See note to Piers Plowman, B. v. 13 (Clar. Press).

1. 694. *My dame,* my mother; as in Piers Plowman, B. v. 37.

1. 695. *Awow,* vow; to *make awow* is the old phrase for to vow. Tywhitt alters it to *a vow,* quite unnecessarily; and the same alteration has been made by editors in other books, owing to want of familiarity with old MSS. It is true that the form *vow* does occur, as, e.g. in P. Plowm. B. prol. 71; but it is no less certain that *awow* occurs also, and was the older form; since we have *oon awow* (B. 334), and the phrase *‘I make myn awow,’* P. Plowman, A. v. 218; where no editorial sophistication can evade giving the right spelling. Equally clear is the spelling in the Prompt. Parv.—*‘Awowe,* Votum. *Awowyn,* or to *make awowe,* Voveo.’ And Mr. Way says—*Awowe,* vœu; Palsgrave. This word occurs in R. de Brunne, Wiclif, and Chaucer. The phrase ‘performed his awowe’ occurs in the Legenda Aurea, fol. 47. Those who are familiar with MSS. know that a prefixed *a* is often written apart from the word; thus the word now spelt *asseord* is often written ‘a corde;’ and so on. Hence, even when the word is really *one* word, it is still often written ‘a vow,’ and is naturally printed a *vow* in two words, where no such result was intended. Tywhitt himself prints min *awow* in the *Knights Tale,* l. 1379, and again this *awow* in the same, l. 1356; where no error is possible. See more on this word in my

VOL. III.
note to l. 1 of Chevy Chase, in Spec. of Eng. 1594–1579. I have there said that the form *vow* does not occur in early writers; I should rather have said, it is by no means the usual form. For the etymology, see the Glossary.

1. 698. *Brother*, i.e. sworn friend; see Kn. Tale, 273, 289. In l. 704 *yborne brother* means brother by birth.

1. 709. *To-rente*, tare in pieces, dismembered. See note to l. 474 above.

1. 713. This *old man* answers to the *romito* or hermit of the Italian text. Note an *old* (indefinite), as compared with the *oldé* (definite) in l. 714.

1. 715. Tyrwhitt, in his Glossary, remarks—*God you see!* 773. *God him see!* 4576. May God keep you, or him, in his sight! In Troilus, ii. 85, it is fuller:—*God you saw and see!* Gower has—*And than I bidde, God hir see!* Conf. Amant. bk. iv (ed. Chalmers. p. 116. col. 2, or ed. Pauli. ii. 96). Cf. *now loke the owre lorde!* P. Plowman. B. i. 207. See also l. 766 below.

1. 727. This is a great improvement upon the Italian tale, which represents the hermit as *fleeing* from death. *‘Fratelli miei, io fuggo la morte, che mi vien dietro cacciando mi.’*


1. 734. *Cheste*. Mr. Jephson (in Bell’s edition) is puzzled here. He takes *cheste* to mean a coffin, which is certainly the sense in the Clerk’s Prologue, E. 29. The simple solution is that *cheste* refers here, not to a coffin, but to the box for holding clothes which, in olden times, almost invariably stood in every bedroom, at the foot of the bed. *‘At the foot of the bed there was usually an iron-bound butch or locker, which served both as a seat, and as a repository for the apparel and wealth of the owner, who, sleeping with his sword by his side, was prepared to protect it against the midnight thief;’* Our English Home, p. 101. It was also called a coffer, a hutch, or an ark. This makes the sense clear. The old man is ready to exchange his chest, containing all his worldly gear, for a single hair-cloth, to be used as his shroud.

1. 743. In the margin of MSS. E., Hn., and Pt. is the quotation ‘Coram canuto capite consurgete,’ from Levit. xix. 32. Hence we must understand *Agayns* in l. 743, to mean *before*, or in *presence of*.

1. 748. *God be with you* is said, with probability, to have been the original of our modern unmeaning *Good bye!* *Go or ride, a general phrase for locomotion; go here means walk.* Cp. *‘ryde or go,’* Kn. Tale, 493. Cf. note to l. 866.

1. 771. The readings are:—E. Hn. *Cm. an *sijj. ; Lm. a *sijj. ; sp. Pt. Hl. a seunen.* The word *sij* is dissyllabic; cf. A.S. *cæo*, Lat. *con.* *Wel ny an eighte bushets* = very nearly the quantity of eight bushels. The mention of *florins* is quite in keeping with the Italian character of the poem. Those coins were so named because originally coined a
THE PARDONERES TALE.

163

l o r e n c e, the first coinage being in 1252; note in Cary's Dante, In-
nano, c. xxx. The value of an English florin was 6s. 8d.; see note
> Piers Plowman, ii. 143 (Clar. Press). There is an excellent note
n florins in Thynne's Animadversions on Spght's Chaucer, ed.
turnivall, p. 45.

l 781. In allusion to the old proverb—'Lightly come, lightly go.'
> jotgrave, s.v. Fleute, gives the corresponding French proverb thus:—
Ce qui est venu par la fleute s'en retourne avec le tabourin; that the
> ipe hath gathered, the tabour scattereth; goods ill gotten are com-
only ill spent.' In German—'wie gewonnen, so zeronnen.'

l 782. Wende, would have weened, would have supposed. It is the
> past tense subjunctive.

l 790. Droon vs honge, lit. cause (men) to hang us; we should now
> ay, cause us to be hanged. 'The Anglo-Saxons nominally punished
> heft with death, if above 12d. value; but the criminal could redeem his
> life by a ransom. In the 9th of Henry I. this power of redemption was
> aken away, 1108. The punishment of theft was very severe in England,
> ill mitigated by Pecl's acts, 9 and 10 Geo. IV. 1820.'—Haydn, s.v. Theft.

l 793. To draw cuth is to draw lots; see Prologue, 835, 838, 845.
> A number of straws were held by one of the company; the rest drew
> me apiece and whoever drew the shortest was the one on whom the lot
> fell. The shortest straw was the cut, i.e. the one cut short; cf. Welsh
> wobu, to shorten; cutha, short; cuwus, a lot. In France the custom
> was reversed; the lot fell on him who drew the longest; so that their
> phrase was—'tirer la longue paille.'

l 797. So in the Italian story—'rechi del pane e del vino,' let him
> etch bread and wine.

l 806-894. Here Chaucer follows the general sense of the Italian
> story rather closely, but with certain amplifications.

l 807. That oon, the one; that other, the other.

l 819. Conseil, a secret; as in P. Plowman, B. v. 168. We still
> say—'to keep one's own counsel.'

l 844. So the Italian story—'Il Demonio ... mise in cuore a costui,'
> &c.; the devil put it in his heart.

l 848. Lawe, leave. 'That he had leave to bring him to sorrow.'

l 851-878. Of this graphic description there is no trace in the Italian
> story as we now have it. Cf. Rom. and Juliet, v. 1.

l 860. Ait so, as. The sense is—as (I hope) God may save my soul.
> That our modern as is for ait, which is short for also, from the A.S.
> sall-words, is now well known. This fact was doubted by Mr. Singer,
> but Sir F. Madden, in his Reply to Mr. Singer's remarks upon Havelok
> the Dane, accumulated such a mass of evidence upon the subject as to
> put the question at rest for ever. It follows that as and also are
> doubtless, or various spellings of the same word.

M 2
NOTES TO GROUP C.

1. 865. Sterne, die; A. S. stearfan. The cognate German sterben retains the old general sense. See l. 888 below.

1. 866. Goon a pas, walk at an ordinary foot-pace; so also, a litl more than pas, a little faster than at a foot-pace. Prol. 825. Cotgrave has—'Aller le pas, to pace, or go at a foot-pace; to walk fair and softly, or faire and leisurely.' Nat but, no more than only; cf. North of England nubbut. The time meant would be about twenty minutes at most.

1. 888. In the Italian story—'amendue caddero morti,' both of them fell dead.

1. 889. Aycen, Avicenna; mentioned in the Prologue, l. 432. Avicenna, or Ibn-Sina, a celebrated Arabian philosopher and physician, born near Bukhara A.D. 980, died A.D. 1037. His chief work was a treatise on medicine known as the Canon ('Kitāb al-Kindī fī'l-Tibb,' that is, 'Book of the Canon in Medicine'). This book, alluded to in the next line, is divided into books and sections; and the Arabic word for 'section' is in the Latin version denoted by fēn, from the Arabic fa'n, a part of any science. Chaucer's expression is not quite correct: he seems to have taken canon in its usual sense of rule, whereas it is really the title of the whole work. It is much as if one were to speak of Dante's work in the terms—such as Dante never wrote in any Divina Commedia nor in any canto.' Lib. iv. Fen 1 of Avicenna's Canon treats 'De Venenis.'

1. 895. Against this line is written, in MS. E. only, the word 'Auctor;' to shew that the paragraph contained in ll. 895-903 is a reflection by the author.

1. 897. The final e in glutonye is preserved by the casual pause; but the scansion of the line is more easily seen by suppressing it suppressed. Hence in order to scan the line, suppress the final e in glutonye, lay the accent on the second u in luxuriu, and slur over the final -ie in that word. Thus—

O glut | ony' | luxu | rie and has | ardrye

1. 904. Good men is the common phrase of address to hearers in old homilies, answering to the modern 'dear brethren.' The Pardoner, having told his tale (after which Chaucer himself has thrown in a moral reflection), proceeds to improve his opportunity by addressing the audience in his usual professional style; see l. 915.

1. 907. Noble, a coin worth 6s. 8d., first coined by Edward III. about 1339. See note to P. Plowman, B. iii. 45 (Clars Press).

1. 908. So in P. Plowman, B. prol. 75, it is said of the Pardoner that he ' raughte with his ragman [bull] rynges and broches.'

1. 910. Comith is to be pronounced Com' th, as in Prol. 839; so also in l. 925 below.

1. 920. Male, bag; see Prol. 694.
THE SECOND NONNES TALE.

1. 935. The first two syllables in peraweinture are to be very rapidly pronounced; it is not uncommon to find the spelling peraunter, as in Plowman, B. xi. 10.

1. 937. Which a, what sort of a, how great a, what a.

1. 945. Ye, for a groate, yea, even for a groat, i.e. 4d.

1. 946. Have I, may I have; an imprecation.

1. 947. So sheek, a colloquialism for so thee ich, so may I thrive. The Host proceeds to abuse the Pardoner in not very decent terms.

1. 962. Ryght enough, quite enough; ryght is an adverb. Cf. l. 960.

NOTES TO THE SECOND NONNES TALE (GROUP G).

For general remarks on this Tale, see the Preface.

Prologue. This consists of twelve stanzas, and is at once divisible into three parts.

(1) The first four stanzas, the idea of which is taken from Jehan de Vignay's Introduction to his French translation of the Legenda Aurea. This Introduction is reprinted at length, from the Paris edition of 1513, in the Originals and Analogues published by the Chaucer Society, pt. ii. p. 190.

(2) The Invocation to the Virgin, in stanzas 5-11; see note to ll. 29, 36.

(3) An Envoy to the reader, in stanza 12; see note to l. 78.

Line 1. Jehan de Vignay attributes the idea of this line to St. Bernard. He says—'Et pour ce que oysiuece est tant blamée que saiment Bernard dit qu'elle est mare de truffes (mother of trifles), marrastre de vertus: . . . et fait estaindre vertu et nourrir orgueil,' &c. Chaucer says again, in his Persones Tale (de Accidia)—'And though that ignorance be the mother of alle harms, certes, negligence is the noirc.'

1. 2. Ydelnesse, idleness; considered as a branch of Sloth, which was one of the Seven Deadly Sins. See Chaucer's Persones Tale, De Accidia.

1. 3. Chaucer took this idea from the Romaut of the Rose; see ll. 528-594 of the English version, where a lover is described as knocking at the wicket of a garden, which was opened by a beautiful maiden named Idleness. He afterwards repeated it in the Knights Tale, l. 1082; and again in the Persones Tale (de Accidia)—'Than cometh ydelnesse, that is the yate [gate] of all harms. . . . Certe. heuen is yeuen to hem that will labour, and not to ydel folke.'

1. 4. To acshew, to eschew; the gerund. The sentence really begins.
with l. 6, after which take the words to eschue; then take ll. 1-3 followed by the rest of l. 4 and by l. 5.

l. 7. Jehan de Vignay's Introduction begins thus: 'Monseigneur saienc hierosme dit ceste auctorite—"Fays touiours aucune chose de bien, qu le dyable ne te troue oyseux."' 'That is, he refers us to St. Jerome for the idea. We are reminded, too, of the familiar lines by Dr. Watts—'For Satan finds some mischief still For idle hands to do.'

l. 8. Cf. Persones Tale (de Accidia)—'An idle man is like to a place that hath no walles, thers deulles may enter on eueri side.'

l. 14. Cf. Pers. Tale (de Accidia)—'Ayens this roten sinne of accidia and slouthe shulde men exercise himself, and use himself to do good werkes;' &c. 'Laborare est orare' was the famous motto of St. Bernard.

l. 15. Though men dradden neuer, even if men never feared.

l. 17. Roten, rotten; the Harleian MS. reads rote of, i.e. root of Yet roten seems right; observe its occurrence in the note to l. 14 above.

l. 19. 'And (men also) see that Sloth holds her in a leash, (for her) to do nothing but sleep, and eat and drink, and devour all that other obtain by toil.' The reading hir refers to Idleness, which, as I have before explained, was a branch of Sloth, and was personified by a female. See notes to ll. 2 and 3 above. Tyrwhitt has hem, which is not in any of our seven MSS.

l. 21. Compare Piers Plowman, B. prol. 21, 22—'In settyng and in sowyng: swnken ful harde,
And wonnen that wastours: with glotonye destroyeth.'

l. 25. After the legende, following the Legend; i.e. the Legend Aurea. A very small portion is wholly Chaucer's own. He has merely added a line here and there, such as ll. 489-497, 505-511, 535-536. At l. 346 he begins to be less literal; see notes to 380, 395, 443.

l. 27. St. Cecilia and St. Dorothea are both depicted with garland: Mrs. Jameson tells us how to distinguish them in her Sacred an Legendary Art, 3rd ed. 591. She also says, at p. 35—'The wreath of roses on the brow of St. Cecilia, the roses or fruits borne by St. Dorothea, are explained by the legends.' And again, at p. 36—'White and red roses expressed love and innocence, or love an wisdom, as in the garland with which the angels crown St. Cecilia. Red was the symbol of love, divine fervour, &c.; white, of light, purit innocence, virginity. See ll. 220, 244, 379. The legend of St. Dorothea forms the subject of Massinger's Virgin Martyr.

l. 29. Virgines must be a trisyllable here; such words are often shortened to a dissyllable. The word thou is addressed to the Virg Mary. In the margin of MSS. E. and Hn. is written—'Innocens ad Mariam,'
THE SECOND NONNES TALE.

1. 30. Speaking of St. Bernard, Mrs. Jameson says—‘One of his most celebrated works, the Missus est, was composed in her honour [i.e. in honour of the Virgin] as Mother of the Redeemer; and in eighty Sermons on texts from the Song of Solomon, he set forth her divine perfection as the Selected and Espoused, the type of the Church on earth.’ Legends of the Monastic Orders, 2nd ed. p. 144.

See a further illustration of the great favour shewn by the Virgin to St. Bernard at p. 142 of the same volume; and, at p. 145, the description of a painting by Murillo, quoted from Stirling’s Spanish Painters, p. 914. See also Dante, Paradiso, xxxi. 102.

1. 32. Comfort of us wretches, comfort of us miserable sinners; see note to l. 58.

Do me endyte, cause me to indite.

1. 34. Of the found, over the Fiend. Tyrwhitt reads over for of, but it is unnecessary. Accent victorie on the o.

1. 36. Lines 36-51 are a free translation of a passage in Dante’s Paradiso, Canto xxxiii. ll. 1-21; and are quoted in the notes to Cary’s translation.

1. 36. Vergine madre, figlia del tuo Figlio,

1. 39. Umile ed alta piu che creatura,

1. 40. Termine fisso d’eterno consiglio,

1. 41. Tu se’ collei che l’ umana natura

1. 42. Nobilitasti sì, che il suo Fattore

ll. 40-42. Non disdegnò di farsi sua fattura.

1. 43. Nel ventre tuo si raccese l’amore,

1. 44. Per lo cui caldo nell’ eterna pace

1. 44. Così è germinato questo fiore.

Qui sei a noi meridiana face

1. 47. Di caritate, e giusto, intra i mortali,

1. 48. Sè’ di speranza fontana vivace.

Donna, se’ tanto grande, e tanto vali,

1. 49. Che qual vuol grazia, e a te non ricorre,

1. 50. Sua disianza vuol volar senz’ ali.

ll. 53, 54. La tua benignità non pur soccorre

ll. 53, 54. A chi dimanda, ma molte fiate

ll. 55, 56. Liberamente al dimandar precorre.

l. 51. In te misericordia, in te pietate.

l. 50. In te magnificenza, in te’ aduna

ll. 53, 54. Quatunque in creatura è di bontate.’

The numbers at the side denote the corresponding lines. I add a literal prose rendering of the above passage:—

Virgin mother, daughter of thy Son,

Lowly and yet exalted more than (any other) creature,

Fixed limit of the eternal counsel,
Thou art she who didst so ennoble
Human nature, that its Maker
Disclaimed not to become His own creation.
Within thy womb love was so rekindled,
By the heat whereof, in eternal peace,
This flower has thus budded.
Here art thou to us the meridian torch
Of love, and beneath, among mortals,
Thou art the living fountain of hope.
Lady! thou art so great, and art of such avail,
That whose desires grace, and does not resort to thee,
His desire endeavours to fly without wings.
Thy benignity not only brings succour
To him who prays for it, but many times
Bountifully foreruns the prayer.
In thee is mercy, in thee is pity;
In thee is munificence, in thee is united
Whatever excellence is in a created being.

l. 40. Nobledest, didst ennoble; Dante's 'nobilististi.'
l. 42. The translation is inexact. Dante says—'that its Maker (i.e. the Maker of human nature) did not disdain to become His own creature,' i.e. born of that very human nature which He had Himself created. Cf. l. 49.
l. 45. 'That is, Lord and Guide of the threefold space;' i.e. of the three abodes of things created, viz. the earth, the sea, and the heavens.

l. 49. Out of relees, without release, i.e. without relaxation, without ceasing. Out of means without, as is clear from Prov. 487; Kn. Tale. 283; and relees means acquittance (O. Fr. relais); see Cler. Tale. E. 153, and Release in Gloss. Index to Prioresse's Tale, &c. There has been some doubt about the meaning of this phrase, but there need be none; especially when it is remembered that to release is another form of to relax, so that relees = relaxation, i.e. slackening. The idea is the same as that so admirably expressed in the Prolog im Himmel to Goethe's Faust.

l. 50. Assembled is in thee, there is united in thee; cf. Dante—'in te s'aduna.' This stanza closely resembles the fourth stanza of the Prioresse's Prologue, B. 1664 1670; see Prioresse's Tale, p. 10.

l. 52. Sonne. By all means let the reader remember that sonne was probably feminine in English in Chaucer's time, as it is in German, Dutch, and Icelandic to this day. It will be found, however, that Chaucer commonly identifies the sun with Phoebus, making it masculine; see Prov. 8, Kn. Tale 615. Still there is a remarkable example of the old use in the first rubric of Part ii. of Chaucer's Astrolabe—'To fynde the degree in which the sonne is.day by.day, when is
cours a-bowte.' So again, in Piers Plowman, B. xviii. 243—'And lo! how the sonne gan louke her lighte in herself.'

1. 56. Her lynes loche, the physician of their lives (or life).
1. 58. Flemd wrecche, banished exile. The proper sense of A. S. wrecce is an exile, a stranger; and thence, a miserable being, an exile. The phrase 'fleming of wrecches,' i.e. banishment of the miserable, occurs in Chaucer's Troilus, iii. 935 (ed. Tyrwhitt). And see above, B. 460.

Galle, bitterness. There is probably an allusion to the name Mary, and to the Hebrew mar, fem. märûh, bitter. Cf. Exod. xv. 23; Acts viii. 23; Ruth i. 20.

1. 59. Womman Canane, a translation of mulier Chananæa in the Vulgate version of Mat. xv. 22. Wyclif calls her 'a womman of Canane.'

1. 60. Compare Wyclif's version—'for whelps eten of the crummes that fallen dowm fro the bord of her lordis:' Mat. xv. 27.

1. 62. Sone of Eve, son of Eve, i.e. the author himself. This, as Tyrwhitt remarks (Introd. Discourse, note 30), is a clear proof that the Tale was never properly revised to suit it for the collection. The expression is unsuitable for the supposed narrator, the Second Nun.

1. 64. See James ii. 17.

1. 67. Ful of grace; alluding to the phrase 'Aue gratia plena' in Luke i. 28.

1. 68. Adwicent, accented on the penultimite.

1. 69. Ther as, where that. Osanne, Hosanna, i.e. 'Save, we pray,' from Ps. cxviii. 25. See Concise Dict. of the Bible.

1. 70. The Virgin Mary was said to have been the daughter of Joachim and Anna; see the Protevangelion of James, and the Legenda Aurea, cap. cxxi—'De natuittate beatæ Marīæ virginīs.'

1. 75. Haven of refut, haven of refuge. See the same term similarly applied in B. 853, above.

1. 78. Reden, read. This is still clearer proof that the story was not originally meant to be narrated. Cf. note to l. 62.

1. 82. Him, i.e. Jacobus Januensis; see the Preface. At the, &c., out of reverence for the saint.

1. 83. Hir legende, her (St. Cecilia's) legend as told in the Aurea Legenda.

1. 84. The five stanzas in ll. 85–119 really belong to the Legend itself, and are in the original Latin. Throughout the notes to the rest of this Tale I follow the 2nd edition of the Legenda Aurea, cap. clxix, as edited by Dr. Th. Grässe; Leipsic, 1850.

1. 87. Several of the Legends of the Saints begin with ridiculous etymologies. Thus the Legend of S. Valentine (Aur. Leg. cap. xliii) begins with the explanation that Valentinus means undōrem trēnus, or else vulēns tyro. So here, as to the etymology of Cēcilia, we are
generously offered five solutions, all of them being wrong. As it is hopeless to understand them without consulting the original, I shall quote as much of it as is necessary, arranged in a less confused order. The true etymology is, of course, that Caecilia is the feminine of Caecilius, a name borne by members of the Caecilia gens, which claimed descent from Caeculus, an ancient Italian hero, son of Vulcan, who is said to have founded Praeneste. Caeculus, probably a nickname, can hardly be other than a mere diminutive of caecus, blind. The legendary etymologies are right, accordingly, only so far as they relate to caecus. Beyond that, they are strange indeed.

The following are the etymologies, with their reasons.

1. Caecilia = coeli lilia (see), i.e. heuenes liliie. Reasons:— Fuit enim coeleste lilia per uirginatis pudorem; uel dicitur lilio, quia habuit canisorem munditiae, uiorum conscientiae, odorem bonae famae. See ll. 87-91. Thus grene (= greenness) translates wiroren. (2) Caecilia = caecis uiia, i.e. the way to blwde, a path for the blind. Reason:— Fuit enim caecis uiia per exempli informationem. See ll. 92, 93.

3. Caecilia is from coelum and lyia. 'Fuit enim ... coelum per ingem contemplationem, lyia per assiduam operationem.' Here lyia, having no sense in Latin, must be the Gk. λυα, very much, sometimes appearing as λυ- in compounds. See ll. 94-98.

4. Caecilia, quasi caecitate cares.' This is on the celebrated principle of 'lucus a non lucendo.' Reason:— fuit caecitate cares per sapientiae splendorem. See ll. 99-101.

5. 'Uel dicitur a coelo et leos, i.e. populus.' Here, again, recourse is had to Greek, viz. Gk. λεος, the Attic form of λεώς. Reason:— fuit et coelum populi, quia in ipsa tamquam in ccelo spirituali populus as imitandum inuetur coelum, solem, lunam, et stellas, i.e. sapientiae perspicacitatem, sibi magnanimitatem et uirtutum uarietatem. See ll. 102-112.

ll. 113-118. Chaucer has somewhat varied the order; this last stanza belongs in the Latin to derivation (3), though it may serve also for derivation (2). It is probably for this reason that he has reserved it. The Latin is:— Uel dicitur coelum, quia, sicut dicit Ysiilorus, coelum philosophi volubile, rotundum et ardens esse dixerunt. Sic et ipsa fuit volubils per operationem sollicitam, rotunda per perseverantiam, ardens per caritatem succensam. For the swiftnes and roundness of heaven, see note to ll. 295. The epithet burning is due to quite another matter, not explained in that note. The nine astronomical spheres there mentioned did not suffice for the wants of theology. Hence a tenth sphere was imagined, external to the ninth, and revolving with it (apparently). This outermost sphere was called the empyrium (from Gk. ἐμπύροις, burning, which from ἐν, in, and ὕπω, here) where the
pure element of fire subsisted alone, and it was supposed to be the abode of saints and angels. Milton, in his Paradise Lost, uses the word empyrean six times, ii. 771, iii. 57, vi. 833, vii. 73, 633, x. 321; and the word empyreal eleven times.

1. 120. For some account of St. Cecilia, see the Preface.

1. 133. An heyre, a hair shirt. The usual expression; see P. Plowman, B. v. 66. Lat. text—'cilicio erat induta.'

1. 134. The organs: Lat. 'cantantibus organis.' We should now say 'the organ;' but in old authors the plural form is commonly employed. Sometimes the word organ seems to refer to a single pipe only, and the whole instrument was called 'the organs' or 'a pair of organs,' where pair means a set, as in the phrase 'a peire of bedes;' Ch. Proli. 159. Thus, in a burlesque poem in Reliquiae Antiquae, i. 81, a porpoise is described as playing on the organ:—'On tho organs playde tho porpas.' In a note to Sir J. Cullum's Hist. of Hawsted, 2nd ed. p. 33, the expression 'pair of organs' is shewn to occur in three accounts, dated 1521, 1536, and 1618 respectively. See another example in Dr. Morris's note to Nonne Prestes Tale, l. 31, where Chaucer uses organ as a plural, equivalent to the Lat. organa. On the early meaning of organum, see Chappell's Hist. of Music, i. 327. The invention of organs dates from the third century B.C.; id. i. 375. See Dante, Purg. ix. 144, and the note to Cary's translation. It is worth adding, that another interpretation of organs is equally possible here; it may mean musical instruments of all kinds; since St. Augustine says—'organa dicuntur omnia instrumenta musicorum;' Comment. in Psalm 56; Chappell's Hist. Music, i. 375, note a. In accordance with this view, the French text translates organis by les instrumens.

St. Cecilia is commonly considered the patroness of music; see Dryden's Ode for St. Cecilia's day, and Alexander's Feast, ll. 132-141. But the connection of her with music is not very ancient, as Mrs. Jameson explains. The reason for this connection seems to me clear enough, viz. the simple fact that the word organs occurs in this very passage. The workers at various trades all wanted patron saints, and must in many cases have been driven to select them on very trivial grounds. Thus, because St. Sebastian was shot by arrows, he became the patron saint of archers; and so on. See several examples in Chambers, Book of Days, iii. 388. Besides St. Cecilia is here represented as singing herself—'in corde soli domino decantabat dicens'; see l. 135.

1. 145. Conseil, a secret; Lat. 'mysterium.' And so in l. 192, and in P. Plowm. B. v. 168; see note to C. 819 above. And, if.

1. 150. Here, her, is a dissyllable in Chaucer whenever it ends a line, which it does six times; see e.g. B. 460; Kn. Tale 1199. 'This is quite correct, because the A.S. form hire is dissyllabic also.'
1. 173. Chaucer has here mistranslated the Latin. It is not said that the Via Appia (which led out of Rome through the Porta Capena to Aricia, Ties Tabernae, Appii Forum, and so on towards Capua and Brundusium) was situated three miles from Rome; but that Valerian is to go along the Appian Way as far as to the third milestone. ‘Utr un
igitur in tertium milliarium ab urbe viae quae Appia nuncupatur.’

1. 177. Urbain. St. Urban's day is May 25. This is Urban I., pope, who succeeded Calixtus, A.D. 222. Besides the notice of him in this Tale, his legend is given separately in the Legenda Aurea, cap. lxxvii. He was beheaded May 25, 232, and succeeded by Pontianus.

1. 178. Secrete nodes, secret necessary reasons; Lat. ‘secreta mandata.’

1. 181. Purged you, viz. by the rite of baptism.

1. 186. Septies buriels, burial-places of the saints; Lat. ‘sepulchra martirum.’ It is worth observing, perhaps, that the word buriels is properly singular, not plural; cf. A.S. byrigels, a sepulchre, and see the examples in Stratmann. In P. Plowman, B. xix. 142, the Jews are represented as guarding Christ's body because it had been foretold that He should rise from the tomb —

‘hat hat blessed body of buriels shulde rise.’

Of course the mistake of supposing s to be the mark of a plural was made in course of time, and the singular form bireyl was evolved. This mistake occurs as early as in Wyclif's Bible, IV Kings xxiii. 17; see Way's note in Prompt. Parv. p. 37, note 1. Consequently, it is most likely that Chaucer has made the same mistake here.

There is here a most interesting allusion to the celebrated catacombs of Rome, which are subterranean passages cut in the rock, and were used by the early Christians for the purpose of sepulture. See Chambers, Book of Days, l. 101, 142.

Lotinge. lying hid. In MS. E., the Latin word latitantem is written above, as a gloss. This was taken from the Latin text, which has —‘intra sepulchra martirum latitantem.’ Stratmann gives six examples of the use of looten or luten, to lie hid. It occurs once in P. Plowman, B. xvii. 102, where outlaws are described as lurking in woods and under banks:—

‘For outlawes in he wode and vnder banke loteth.’

1. 201. An old man; i.e. an angel in the form of an old man, viz. St. Paul. Cf. note to l. 207.

1. 202. With lettre of gold; Lat. ‘tenens librum aureis litteris scriptum.’ L. 203 is not in the original.

1. 205. ‘When he (Valerian) saw him (the old man); and he (the old man) lifted up him (Valerian); and then he (Valerian) began thus to read in his (the old man’s) book.’ This is very ambiguous in Chaucer, but the Latin is clear. ‘Quem uelint Valeriaus praemium timor quasi mortuus ceedit, et a se cunctus sec lectit.’
THE SECOND NONNES TALE.

1. 207. Oo lord, one lord. Tyrwhitt prints on, 'to guard against the mistake which the editions generally have fallen into, of considering o, in this passage, as the sign of the vocative case.' For the same reason, I have printed Oo, as in MS. Pt., in preference to the single o, as in most MSS. Even one of the scribes has fallen into the trap, and has written against this passage—'Et lamentat.' See MS. Cp., in the Six-text edition. The fact is, obviously, that ll. 207-209 are a close translation of Eph. iv. 5, 6. Hence the old man must be St. Paul.

l. 208. Christendom, baptism: Lat. 'baptisma.' See l. 217.

1. 216. We must read the before olde, not this or that, because e in the must be elided; otherwise the line will not scan.

l. 217, 218. That oon, the one; sometimes written the ton or the too. That other, the other; sometimes written the tother. 'The ton' is obsolete; but 'the tother' may still be heard. That is the neuter of the A. S. def. article se, sed, pat; cf. Germ. der, die, das.

As to the signification of the red and white flowers, see note to l. 27 above.

Compare Act v. sc. 1 of Massinger's Virgin Martyr, where an angel brings flowers from St. Dorothea, who is in paradise, to Theophilus. See note to l. 248 below.

l. 219. Fvr, because; Lat. 'quia.'

l. 236. Afterwards repeated. very nearly, in Kn. Tale, l. 338.

l. 243. Sauour undernom, perceived the scent; Lat. 'sensisset odorem.'

l. 248. Rose. We should have expected roses. Perhaps this is due to the peculiar form of the Latin text, which has—'roseus hic odor et liliorum.'

Compare the words of Theophilus in the Virgin Martyr, v. 1:—

'What flowers are these?

In Diocletian's gardens the most beauteous,

Compared with these, are weeds; is it not February,

The second day she died? frost, ice, and snow

Hang on the beard of winter: where's the sun

That gilds this summer? pretty, sweet boy, say,

In what country shall a man find this garden?'

l. 270. Ll. 270-283 are certainly genuine, and the passage is in the Latin text. It is also in the French version, but it does not appear in the Early English version of the story printed by Mr. Furnivall from MS. Ashmole 43, nor in the English version printed by Caxton in 1483. Tyrwhitt's supposition is no doubt correct, viz. that this passage 'appears evidently to have been at first a marginal observation and to have crept into the [Latin] text by the blunder of some copyist.' He truly observes that these fourteen lines 'interrupt the narrative awkwardly, and to little purpose.'
174

NOTES TO GROUP G.

1. 271. *Ambrose*. 'Huic miraculo de coronis rosarum Ambrosius attestatur in praeformatione, sic dicens.' &c. I cannot find anything of the kind in the indices to the works of St. Ambrose.

1. 276. *Ek hir chambre*, even hir marriage-chamber, i.e. even marriage. *Weyue*, waive, abandon. Lat. 'ipsum mundum est cum thalamis essecrata.' *Weyue* occurs again in Chaucer's 'Fle fro the pres,' l. 20.

1. 277. *Shriftte*, confession. Lat. 'testis est Valeriani coniugis et Tiburtii provocata confessio, quos, Domine, angelica manu odoriferis floribus coronasti.' For *Valerians*, all the MSS. have *Cecilies*. Whether the mistake is Chaucer's or his scribes', I cannot say; but it is so obviously a mere slip, that we need not hesitate to correct it. The French text is even clearer than the Latin; it has—'et de cest tesmoing valerien son mary et tiburciun son frere.' Besides, the express mention of 'these men' in l. 281 is enough, in my opinion, to shew that the slip was not Chaucer's own; or, at any rate, was a mere oversight.

1. 282. 'The world hath known (by their example) how much, in all truth, it is worth to love such devotion to chastity.' Lat. 'mundus agnouit, quantum ualeat deuoito castitatis;—haec Ambrosius.' This is quoted as St. Ambrose's opinion. The parenthesis ends here.

1. 288. *Besye*, i.e. void of understanding, as a beast of the field is. Lat. 'pecus est.'

1. 295. *And we*. Tyrwhitt remarks that *we* should have been *us.* But a glance at the Latin text shews what was in Chaucer's mind; he is here merely anticipating the *we* in l. 318. Lat. 'et nos in illius flammis pariter inolueur, et dum quaerimus diuinitatem latentem in coelis, incurreremus furorem exurentem in terris.' The sentence is awkward; but *we* was intended. The idiom has overriden the grammar.

1. 319. *Cecile*. This is one of the clearest instances to shew that Chaucer followed the Latin and not the French version. Lat. 'Cui Caecilia;' Fr. 'et valeriens dist.' Mr. Furnivall has noted this and other instances, and there is no doubt about the matter.

1. 320. *Shifully, reasonably,* the usual meaning at this date. See l. 327.

1. 327. 'And all that has been created by a reasonable Intelligence.'

1. 329. *Hath souled*, hath endued with a soul, hath quickened; Lat. 'animavit.'

1. 335. *O god,* one God. We must suppose this teaching to be included in the mention of Christ in l. 295; otherwise there is no allusion to it in the words of Cecilia. The doctrine had been taught to Valerian however; see ll. 207, 208.

There are continual allusions, in the Lives of the Saints, to the difficulty of this doctrine.

1. 338. Chaucer is not quite exact. The Latin says that three thing
THE SECOND NONNES TALE.

reside in a man's wisdom, the said wisdom being but one. 'Sicut in una hominis sapientia tria sunt, ingeniurn, memoria et intellectus.' The notion resembles that in a favourite passage from Isidore quoted in Piers Plowman, B. xv. 39, to the effect that the soul (anima) has different names according to its functions. When engaged in remembering, we call it memory (memoria); when in judging, we call it reason (ratio); and so on. Compare the curious illustrations of the doctrine of the Trinity in Piers Plowman, B. xvi. 220-224, xvii. 137-249. The illustration in the text is, as Mr. Jephson points out, by no means a good one.

1. 34.1. The word Thre stands alone in the first foot.

Thre | persôn | es máy | ther rýght | wel bé ||

See note to l. 353.

1. 343. Come, coming, i.e. incarnation; Lat. 'aduentu.' Tyrwhitt reads sonde, i.e. sending, message; but incorrectly.

1. 345. Withholde, detained, constrained to dwell; Lat. 'tentus,' Fr. 'tenu.'

1. 346. Hitherto Chaucer's translation is, on the whole, very close. Here he omits a whole sentence, and begins to abbreviate the story and alter it to suit himself. See his hint in l. 360.

1. 351. That, who. In MS. E. the word is glossed by—'qui, scilicet Vrbanus.' It is remarkable that the relative who (as a simple relative, without so suffixed) is hardly to be found in English of this date, in the nominative case. The A.S. hwí is only used interrogatively. *Hwó (who) appears as a proper relative first in its dative wam or wan in Layamon, ii. 632, iii. 50 [about a.d. 1200]; in its genitive whisky or whisky in Ormulum, 3425, 10370 [about the same date]. The nominative who is found sometimes with a pronominal antecedent in Wycliffe, a.d. 1382-3 (Isaiah i. 10), and becomes common as a full relative in Berners' Froissart, a.d. 1533; 'March, Anglo-Saxon Grammar, p. 179.

1. 353. Goddes kynght, God's servant, or rather, God's soldier; see l. 283, and the note. In the A.S. version of the Gospels Christ's disciples are called 'learning-cnihtas.' In the Ormulum and in Wyclif euis or knist sometimes means a servant, but more commonly a soldier. Priests are called 'goddes kynghtes' in Piers Plowman, B. xi. 304. In scanning this line, either lerning is of three syllables (which I doubt) or else the first syllable in Paryst forms a foot by itself; see note to l. 341 above.

1. 362. Almache; Lat. 'Almachius praefectus.' The reigning emperor was Alexander Severus (A.D. 212-235).

1. 363. Apposed, questioned, examined; written opposed in most MSS., but corrected by Tyrwhitt. Ed. 1532 also has apposed. A similar confusion occurs in the Freres Tale, D. 1597, where only two MSS.
vix. Pt. and Ln., have the right spelling appose, as against five others which wrongly read opposen. The right spelling occurs in MSS. of Piers the Plowman, where we find oppos, to question, B. iii. 5: apposed, i. 47; apposeden, vii. 138. Skelton has it, in his Colin Clout, 267:—

'For that they are not apposed
By iust examinaciony
In connyng and consursacyon.'

Mr. Dyce (note on this line) quotes from Hornam—'He was apposed, or examyned of his byleue, De religione appellatus est:' Vulgaria, sig. Dii. ed. 1576. In Prompt. Parv. it is confused with oppos. Wedgwood explains that appose, or pose, lit. to lay near (Fr. apposer), was used in the particular sense of putting specific questions to a candidate for examination; whence the phrase an apposite answer, applied to one that was to the point; see his article on Pose. The shorter form pose occurs in Piers the Plowman, B. xvii. 293.

l. 365. Sacrifice, sacrifice to the idol. This was the usual test to which Christians were subjected; see note to l. 305. Compare Dan. iii. 14, 18. So in the Virgin Martyr, iv. 2:—

'Now but thy knee to Jupiter, and offer
Any slight sacrifice; or do but swear
By Caesar's fortune, and—be free'

l. 367. Thise muriteth; note that this is an accusative case.

l. 369. Corniculere, a sort of officer. The note in Bell's edition, that the French version has prevest here, is wrong. The word prevest (Lat. praefectus) is applied to Almachius. Maximus was only a subordinate officer, and is called in the Early Eng version (MS. Ashmole 43) the 'gailer.' It is remarkable that Chaucer should make use of this strange word, because it is found neither in the Latin nor the French version.

Kiddle's Lat. Dict. gives—'Cornicularius, i.m. a soldier who was presented with a corniculum, and by means of it promoted to a higher rank; hence, an assistant of an officer, Suetonius, Domit. 17; then also in the civil service, an assistant of a magistrate, a clerk, registrar, secretary; Cod. Just.'

'Corniculum, i.n. (dimin. of cornu). 1. A little horn, Pliny; also, a small funnel of horn, Columella. An ornament in the shape of a horn worn on the helmet, with which officers presented meritorious soldiers; Livy, 10. 44.'

Ducange gives several examples, shewing that the word commonly meant a secretary, clerk, or registrar. Tyrwhitt refers us to Pitiscus, Lex. Ant. Rom. s.v. Cornicularius.

l. 373. 'He got leave for himself from the executioners.' Tormentariar, executioners; Lat. 'carnifices.' See l. 517. Cf. tormentor in Matt. xviii. 34; see Eastwood and Wright's Bible Word-book.
THE SECOND NONNES TALE.

1. 380. Prestes, priests. The original says that pope Urban came himself.
1. 383. Knyghtes, soldiers; as in l. 353. Lat. 'Eia milites Christi, abicite opera tenebrarum, et induiumini arma lucis.' See Rom. xiii. 12.
1. 386. Tyrwhitt notes a slight defect in the use of ydoon in l. 386, followed by doon in l. 387. The first six lines in this stanza are not in the original, but are imitated from 2 Tim. iv. 7, 8.
1. 395. 'This was the criterion. The Christians were brought to the image of Jupiter or of the Emperor, and commanded to join in the sacrifice, by eating part of it, or to throw a few grains of incense into the censer, in token of worship; if they refused, they were put to death.
—See Pliny's celebrated letter to Trajan. Those who complied were termed sacrificati andthurificati by the canons, and were excluded from the communion for seven or ten years, or even till their death, according to the circumstances of their lapse.—See Bingham's Antiquities, b. xvi. 4. 5.'—Note in Bell's edition of Chaucer. Cf. note to l. 365.

This stanza is represented in the original (in spite of the hint in l. 394) by only a few words. 'Quarto igitur milliarion ab urbe sancti adstatuam Jovis ducentur, et dum sacrificare nonlent, pariter decollantur.'

1. 405. To-bete, beat severely; dide him so to-bete, caused (men) to beat him so severely, caused him to be so severely beaten. I have no hesitation in adopting the reading of ed. 1532 here. To-bete is just the right word, and occurs in MSS. Cp., Pt., Ln.; and, though these MSS. are not the best ones, it is clear that to-bete is the original reading, or it would not appear. I give two examples of the use of the word.
'Ure men hi to-bete,' i.e. they severely beat our men; Layamon's Brut, l. 3308. 'Me to-bet his cheeken, and spette him a scorn,' men severely beat His cheeks, and spit upon Him in scorn; Ancren Riwe, p. 106. See To-race and To-rence in Gloss. to Chaucer's Prioresse Tale, &c.; see also Dide in the same. To scan the line, slur over -ius in Almachius, and accent dide.

1. 406. Whipple of leed, i.e. a whip furnished with leaden plummets.
Lat. 'eum plumbatis tamdud caedi fecit,' &c.; French text—'il le fist tant batre de plombee,' &c.; Caxton—'he dyd·do bete hym with plomettes of leed.'

1. 413. Encense, offer incense to; see note to l. 395.
1. 414. They. Over this word is written, in MS. E.—'scilicet Ministres.' The Latin original says that Cecilia converted as many as 400 persons upon this occasion. Hence the expression o voxs (one voice) in l. 420.
1. 417. Withouten difference, i.e. without difference in might, majesty, or glory.
1. 430. Lestedly, ignorantly. The 'two answers' relate to her rank and her religion, subjects which had no real connection.
1. 434. Lat. 'de conscientia bona et tide non facta;' cf. 1 Tim. i. 5.
1. 437. To dreede, to be feared; the gerund, and right acco to the old idiom. We still say—'he is to blame,' 'this house i March, in his Anglo-Saxon Grammar, p. 198, says—'The gerund the copula expresses what must, may, or should be done.

'Ex. Mannes sunu is to syllanne, the Son of Man must be delivere Matt. xvii. 22;'

1. 442. Bigone, didst begin; the right form, for which Tyrwhit begonnest. For the Mid. Eng. biginnen we commonly find ong in Anglo-Saxon, and the form for the past tense is—ongen, ong ongan; pl. ongunnon. The form in Middle English is—bigan, big (or bigonne), bigan; pl. bigunnen (or bigonne). The very form here occurs in the Ayenbite of Inwydt, ed. Morris, p. 71. The suffix -en not appear in strong verbs; cf. Thou sey, B. 848; thou bar, G. 48.

The whole of ll. 443-467 varies considerably from the original corresponding passage of which is as follows: 'Cui Almachius: iniuriis caepisti, et in iniuriis perseueras.' Caecilia respondit: 'in non dicitur quod uerbis fallentibus irrogatur; unde aut iniuriis si falsa locuta sum, aut te ipsum corripe calumniam inferentem, se scientes sanctum Dei nomen omnino negare non possimus; melit enim feliciter mori quam infelicitat uiuere.' Cui Almachius: 'ad cum tanta superbia loqueris?' Et illa: 'non est superbia, sed stantia.' Cui Almachius: 'infelix, ignoras,' &c. (l. 468). How Chaucer has adopted an idea from this in ll. 473-475.

1. 463. To scan this, remember that Iuge has two syllables; accent confus on the first syllable.

1. 485. Lat. 'et igitur minister mortis, non uitae,'

1. 487. Do wey, do away with; Lat. 'deponc.' The phrase of again in the Miller's Tale; C. T. 3287, ed. Tyrwhitt.

ll. 489-497. These lines are wholly Chaucer's own.

1. 490. To scan the line, elide e in suff're, and read phìlosòphre.

1. 492. Spekest; to be read as spek'is.

1. 498. Utter yen, outer eyes, bodily eyes. In MS. E. it is glosse 'exterioribus oculis.' The Latin has—'nescio ubi oculos amis nam quos tu Deos dicis, omnes nos saxa esse uidemus; mitte i manum et tangendo disce, quod oculos non uales uider.'

1. 503. Taste, test, try; Lat. 'tangendo disce.' The word is restricted to one of the five senses; it could once have been used at the sense of feeling, at the least. Bottom even ventures on the expression—'I trust to taste of truest Thibes sight; Mid. Nt. D. v. 1. 280; such is the reading in the first folio.

1. 505-511. This stanza is all Chaucer's own.

1. 515. Bath of flambe rede; Lat. 'in bulliente balneo.'

ll. 516-522. The Latin merely has—'Quae quasi in loco si permansit, nec medicum saltem sudoris perseput.'
THE SECOND NONNES TALE.

1. 533. Lat. 'eam semiuuam cruentus camifex dereliquit.'
1. 534. Is went, though only in the (excellent) Cambridge MS., is the right reading; the rest have he went, sometimes misspelt he went. In the first place, is went is a common phrase in Chaucer; cf. German er ist gegangen, and Eng. he is gone. But secondly, the false rime detects the blunder at once; Chaucer does not rime the weak past tense went with a past participle like yhent. This was obvious to me at the first glance, but the matter was made sure by consulting Mr. Cromie's excellent 'Ryme-Index.' This at once gives the examples is went, rimeing with pp. to-rent, E. 1012 (Clerkes Tale); is went, rimeing with instrument, F. 567 (Sq. Tale); is went, rimeing with innocent, B. 1730.
and ben went, rimeing with faveiment, B. 1869 (Prioresse Tale); all of which may be found in my edition of The Prioresse Tale, &c. Besides this, there are two more examples, viz. be they went, rimeing with sacriment, E. 1701; and that he be went, rimeing with sent, A. 3665. On the other hand, we find wente, seinte, hente, and to-rente, all (weak) past tenses, and all rimeing together, in the Monkes Tale, B. 3446. The student should particularly observe an instance like this. The rules of rime in Chaucer are, on the whole, so carefully observed that, when once they are learnt, a false rime jars upon the ear with such discord as to be unpleasantly remarkable, and should be at once detected.

II. 535, 536. These two lines are not in the original.
1. 539. 'She began to preach to them whom she had fostered,' i.e. converted. To foster is here to nurse, to bring up, to educate in the faith; see l. 122 above. The Latin text has—omnes quos ad fidem converterat, Urbano episcopo commendavit.' Tyrwhitt makes nonsense of this line by placing the comma after hem instead of after fostred, and other editors have followed him. In MSS. E. and Hn. the metrical pause is rightly marked as occurring after fostred. The story here closely resembles the end of the Prioresse Tale, B. 1801-1855.
1. 545. Do werche, cause to be constructed.
1. 549. Lat. 'inter episcopos sepeliuit.'
1. 550. 'It is now a church in Rome, and gives a title to a cardinal,' note in Bell's edition. In a poem called the Staceyons of Rome, ed. Furnivall, l. 832, we are told that 100 years' pardon may be obtained by going to St. Cecilia's church. Mr. W. M. Rossetti, in a note on this line, says—'The Church of St. Cecilia, at the end of the Trastevere, near the Quay of Ripa Grande, was built on the site of the saint's own house in 330; rebuilt by pope Paschal I. in 821, and dedicated to God and Sts. Mary, Peter, Paul, and Cecilia; and altered to its present form in 1599 and 1725. In the former of these years, 1599, the body of the saint was found on the spot, with a contemporary inscription identifying her: the celebrated statue by Stefano Maderno, now in the church, represents her in the attitude she was discovered lying in.
NOTES TO THE CANON'S YEOMAN'S TALE.

1. 554. The lyf of seint Cecile, i.e. the Second Nun's Tale. This notice is important, because it inseparably links the Canon's Yeoman's Tale to the preceding one.

1. 555. Fyne myle. five miles. Tyrwhitt says that it is five miles 'from some place, which we are now unable to determine with certainty.' He adds that he is in doubt whether the pilgrims are here supposed to be riding from or towards Canterbury; but afterwards thinks that 'the manner in which the Yeman expresses himself in ver. 1609,' i.e. ll. 623, 624) seems to shew that he was riding to Canterbury.'

It is really very easy to explain the matter, and to tell all about it. It is perfectly clear that these two lines express the fact that they were riding to Canterbury. It is even probable that every one of the extant Tales refers to the outward journey: for Chaucer would naturally write his first set of Tales before beginning a second, and the extant Tales are insufficient to make even the first set complete. Consequently, we have only to reckon backwards from Boughton (see l. 556) for a five-mile distance along the old Canterbury road, and we shall find the name of the place intended.

The answer to this is—Ospringe. The matter is settled by the discovery that Ospringe was, as a matter of fact, one of the halting-places for the night of travellers from London to Canterbury. Dean Stanley, in his Historical Memorials of Canterbury, p. 237, quotes from a paper in the Archæologia, xxxv. 461, by Mr. E. A. Bond, to shew that queen Isabella, wife of Edw. II, rested in London on the 6th of June, 1338; at Dartford on the 7th; at Rochester on the 8th; at Ospringe on the 9th; and at Canterbury on the 10th and 11th; and returned, on the 12th, to Ospringe again. See this, more at length, in Mr. Furnivall's Temporary Preface to the Canterbury Tales (Chaucer Soc.), pp. 13, 14.
THE CHANOUNS YEMANNES TALE. 181

Furnivall quotes again from M. Douet-d'Arcq, concerning a
ryn made by king John of France from London to Dover, by way
nterbury, in 1360. On June 30, 1360, king John left London and
to Eltham. On July 1, he slept at Dartford; on July 2, at
ter; on July 3, he dined at Sittingbourne (noted as being 39
and three-quarters from London), and slept at Ospringe; and
ily 4 came to Canterbury (noted as being 54 miles and a half
ondon).

These extracts clearly shew (1) that the whole journey was usually
to occupy three or four days; (2) that the usual resting-places
(at least) Dartford, Rochester, and Ospringe; and (3) that
bourne was considered as being about 15 miles from Canter-

w, in passing from Sittingbourne to Canterbury, we find that the
ce is divided into three very nearly equal parts by the situations of
ge and Boughton, giving five miles for each portion. The chief
ity is that raised by Tyrwhitt, that the distance from Ospringe to
bury, only ten miles, leaves very little to be done on the last
There is really no objection here worth considering, because we
Chaucer's express words to the contrary. Chaucer says, as plainly
ssible, that the pilgrims really did rest all night on the road,
place which can only be Ospringe; see ll. 588, 589.

Furnivall also notes (Temp. Pref. p. 29), that Lydgate, in his
of Thebes (in Speght's Chaucer, 1602, fol. 353 back, col. 2)
t the pilgrims, on their return-journey, return from Canterbury to
ge to dinner:

And toward morrow, as soon as it was light,
Every pilgrime, both bet and wors,
As bad our host, tooke anone his hors,
When the Sunne rose in the East ful clere,
Fully in purpose to come to dinere
Unto Ospring, and breake there our fast.'

Other illustrations might, perhaps, be found; but we scarcely
them.

56. Boughton-under-Blee. Here Blee is the same as the blee in
3 H. i. 3, which see. It is now called Blean Forest, and the
e is called Boughton-under-Blean, in order to distinguish it from
villages of the same name. I find, in a map, for examples, hton Alup between Canterbury and Ashford, Boughton Malherb
en Ashford and Maidstone, and Boughton Monchelsea between
stone and Staplehurst.

57. A man, i.e. the Canon. This is an additional pilgrim, not
bed in the Prologue, and therefore described here in \n. 586-588, 55, &c.
The name of Canon, as applied to an officer in the Church, is derived from the Gk. κανών (kanón) signifying a rule or measure, and also the roll or catalogue of the Church, in which the names of the Ecclesiastics were registered; hence the clergy so registered were denominatod Canonici or Canons. Before the Reformation, they were divided into two classes, Regular and Secular. The Secular were so called, because they canonized in saculo, abroad in the world. Regular Canons were such as lived under a rule, that is, a code of laws published by the founder of that order. They were a less strict sort of religions than the monks, but lived together under one roof, had a common dormitory and refectory, and were obliged to observe the statutes of their order. The chief rule for these [regular] canons is that of St. Augustine, who was made bishop of Hippo in the year 395. . . . Their habit was a long black cassock with a white rochet over it, and over that a black coat and hood; from whence they were called Black Canons Regular of St. Augustine.'—Hook's Church Dictionary.

There were several other orders, such as the Gilbertine canons of Sempringham in Lincolnshire, the Premonstratenses or White Canons, &c. See also the description of them in Cutts's Scenes and Characters of the Middle Ages, p. 19.

I should imagine, from the description of the Canon's house in l. 657, and from the general tenor of the Tale, that Chaucer's Canon was but a secular one. Still, their rule seems to have been less strict than that of the monks.

l. 561. Fri led myles three, ridden hard for three miles. The Canon and his yeoman may be supposed to have ridden rather fast for the first two miles; and then, finding they could not otherwise overtake the pilgrims, they took to the best pace they could force out of their horses for three miles more.

l. 562. Ye mon, yeoman, attendant, servant. His face was all discoloured with blowing his master's fire (ll. 664-667), and he seems to have been the more honest man of the two. He is the teller of the Tale, and begins by describing himself; l. 720.

l. 565. 'He was all spotted with foam, so that he looked like a magpie.' The word He (like his in l. 566) refers to the Canon, whose clothing was black (l. 557); and the white spots of foam upon it gave him this appearance. The horse is denoted by it (l. 563), the word horse being neuter in the Oldest English. Most MSS. read he for it in l. 563, but there is nothing gained by it.

l. 566. Male twoeyfold, a double budget or leathern bag; see Prol. l. 694.

l. 571. Chaucer tells us that the Pardoner's hood, on the contrary, was not fastened to his cloak; see Prol. l. 680.

l. 575. 'Rather faster than at a trot or a foot-pace.' Said ironically.

Cf. Prol. 825.
THE CHANOUNS YEMANNES TALE.

1. 577. Clote-leef, the leaf of a burdock. Cotgrave has—'Lampourde, f. the Clout or great Burre.' Also—'Glouteron, m. The Clote, Burre Docke, or great Burre.' And again—'Bardane, f. the Clote, burre-dock, or great Burre.'

In the Prompt. Parv. we find—' Clote, herbe; Lappa bardana, lappa rotunda.' In Wyclif's Version of the Bible, Hosea ix. 6, x. 8, we find clote or cloote where the Vulgate version has lappa. In Vergil, Georg. i. 153, we have—'Lappendaeque tribulique,' and a note in the Delphin edition, 1813, says—'Lappa, glouteron, bardane, burdock; herba, capitula ferens hamis aspera, quae vestibus praeterentium adhaerent.' The Glossary to Cockayne's 'Leechdoms' explains A.S. clote as arctium lappa, with numerous references.

The word is clearly identical with the Dutch klout, a ball, globe, sphere; Icel. klöt, the knob on a sword-hilt; Swed. klod, a bowl, a globe, Dan. klode, a globe, sphere, ball; and it is obvious that clote originally meant the bur itself, just as the name of burdock has reference to the same. The clote is, accordingly, the Arctium lappa, or Common Burdock, obtaining its name from the clotes (i.e. burs or knobs) upon it; and one of the large leaves of this plant would be very suitable for the purpose indicated.

After this we may safely dismiss the suggestion in Halliwell's Dictionary, founded on a passage in Gerard's Herball, p. 674 D, that the Clote here means the yellow water-lily. We know from Cockayne's 'Leechdoms' that the name clote seó pe swimman wille (i.e. swimming clote) was sometimes used for that flower (Nuphar lutea), either on account of its large round leaves or its globose flowers; but in the present passage we have only to remember the Canon's haste to feel assured that he might much more easily have caught up a burdock-leaf from the road-side than have searched in a ditch for a water-lily.

1. 578. For swoote, to prevent sweat, to keep off the heat. See note to Sir Thopas, B. 2052.

1. 581. Were ful, that might be full, that might chance to be full. Were is the subjunctive, and the relative is omitted.

1. 588. Now, &c.; lately, in the time of early morning.

1. 589. This shews that the pilgrims had rested all night on the road; see note to l. 555, and p. xiii. of Pref. to Prioresse Tale, &c.


1. 599. Ye, yea. There is a difference between ye, yea, and yis, yes. The former merely assents, or answers a simple question in the affirmative. The latter is much more forcible, is used when the question involves a negative, and is often followed by an oath. See note to Specimens of Eng. 1394-1579, ed. Skeat, sect. xvii. (D), l. 22; and note
to 3is in the Glossary to my edition of William of Paleme. An example of 3is (yes) after a negative in Piers the Plowman, B. Similarly, nay is the weaker, no the stronger form of negation.

l. 602. A note in Bell's edition makes a difficulty of the sense of this line. It is perfectly easy. The cesura (carefully marked i E. as occurring after knewe) preserves the final e in knewe from elision. And ye | him knew | e, ás | wel ás | do I |

Tyrwhitt reads also for the former as; which is legitimate, because and also are merely different spellings of the same word.

It is true that the final e in wondere, and again that in worke, are elided, under similar circumstances, in the two lines next following, but the cases are not quite identical. The e in knewe, representing merely the plural, but also the subjunctive mood, is essential. The conditional form of the sentence, and is of much higher value than the others. If this argument be not allowed, Tyrwhitt's suggestion may be adopted.

l. 608. Rir, contracted from rideth; see other examples in Prioresses Tale, p. I. See also slit for slideth in l. 682 below.

l. 611. Leye in balauce, place in the balance, weigh against it.

l. 620. Can, knows, knows how to exercise.

l. 622. The Yeoman puts in a word for himself—'and most I am of some assistance to him.'

l. 625. Vp so down, i.e. upside down, according to our modern phrase. Chaucer's phrase is very common; see Prickie of Conscience, ed. M.

l. 7230; P. Plowman, B. xx. 53; Gower, Conf. Amantis, &c.

l. 638. Benedicite, pronounced ben'eite, in three syllables, as in B. 1974. See note to B. 1170 (Prioress's Tale, &c.).

l. 632. Worship, dignity, honour; here, respectable appearance.

l. 633. Overslopp, upper garment. So in Icelandic, yfirslóppur, an outer gown; as, 'prestar skvéldir yféslöppum,' i.e. priests of over-slopes. Historia Ecclesiastica, i. 473. The word slop is preserved in the somewhat vulgar 'slop-shop,' i.e. shop for second-hand clothes.

l. 635. Baudy, dirty. To-tore, torn in half. So in Piers Plowman B. v. 197, Avarice is described as wearing a 'tabard' which is to-torn and budy.

l. 639. The second person sing. imperative seldom exhibits a final e, but it is sometimes found in weak verbs, tellen being one of them. Readings are—TellE, E. Cp. Pt. Hl.; Tel, Ln. Cm.

l. 640. For, &c.; because he shall never thrive. The Yeoman tells the truth, and is thus afraid he has said too much. In his speech he gives an evasive and polite reason, declaring that his host is 'too wise;' see I. 643.

l. 645. That that, that which. In the margin of MS. E. is written, 'Omne quod est nimium, &c.;' which is probably short for—
THE CHANONS YEMANNES TALE.

648. Cf. Butler's description of Hudibras:—

'We grant, although he had much wit,
   He was very shy of using it.'

653. Ther-oF no fors, never mind about that.

656. If it to telle be, if it may be told. Cf. note to l. 437.

658. A blind lane is one that has no opening at the farther end; ul de sac.

659. Thues by kynde, thieves by natural disposition.

662. The sothe, the truth. The reader should carefully note the full pronunciation of the final e in sothe. If he should omit to sound it, will be put to shame when he comes to the end of the next line, ang with tõ thee. A very similar instance is that of tyne, riming by me, G. 1204 below. The case is the more remarkable because A.S. soð, truth, is a monosyllable; but the truth is that the adjective the sothe (A.S. ðat soðe) may very well have supplied sacce, the adjective being more freely used than the substantive; instance. Chaucer has sothe at the end of a line in one more where it rimes with the dissyllabic bothe; G. 168.

may remark that the sothe is written and pronounced instead of ð with (as shewn by the metre) in the Story of Genesis and Exodus, ris, l. 74:—

'He [they] witen the sothe, that is sen.'

Peter! by St. Peter. The full form of the phrase—'bi seynt Rome'—occurs in Piers the Plowman, B. vi. 3. The shorter ion—'Peter!' also occurs in the same, B. v. 544; see my note ne.

Multiplye. This was the technical term employed by al-
to denote their supposed power of transmuting the baser 
gold; they thought to multiply gold by turning as much base 
piece of it would buy into gold itself; see l. 677. Some 
seems here intended; yet it is proper to remember that 
ginally referred solely to the supposed fact that the strength
of an elixir could be multiplied by repeated operations. See 'De Multiplicacione,' in Theatrum Chemicum, iii. 301, 8
Cf. Ben Jonson's Alchemist, ii. 1:
‘For look, how oft I iterate the work,
So many times I add unto his virtue.
As, if at first one ounce convert a hundred,
After his second loose, he'll turn a thousand:
His third solution, ten; his fourth, a hundred;
After his fifth, a thousand thousand ounces
Of any imperfect metal, into pure
Silver or gold, in all examinations
As good as any of the natural mine.’

l. 686. To scan the line, accent yeman on the latter syllable.
ll. 684, 701.

l. 687. To scan the line, pronounce euer nearly as e'ær, as hadde is of two syllables. The MSS. agree here.

l. 688. Catoun, Cato. Dionysius Cato is the name co-signed to the author of a Latin work in four books, entitled Catonis Disticha de Moribus ad Filium. The work may be dated to the fourth century. It was extremely popular, not only in French and English versions. Chaucer here quotes I Distich. 17:
‘Ne cures si quis tacito sermone loquitur;
Conscius ipse sibi de se putat omnia dixit.’
See another quotation from Cato in the Nonne Prestes Tale and see my note to Piers the Plowman, B. vi. 316.

It is worth noticing that Catoun follows the form of the I accusative case. Such is the usual rule.

l. 694. Dero abye, pay dearly for it. Abye (lit. to buy or sell) is a later date than abide, as in Shak. Jul. Caesar, iii. 1.

l. 703. Gane, amusement. In l. 708, it is used ironically.

i.e. a serious matter, in l. 710.

‘Rather than I'll be Bray'd, sir, I'll believe
That Alchemy is a pretty kind of game,
Somewhat like tricks o' the cards, to cheat a n
With charming.’—The Alchemist, ii. 1.

NOTES TO THE CANON'S YEOMAN'S TALE

l. 720. This Tale is divided, in MS. E, into two parts. I not really a tale at all, but a description of alchemy and it The real tale, founded on the same subject, is conte...
THE CHANOUNS YEMANNES TALE.

Secunda, beginning at l. 972. The rubric means—'Here the Canon's Yeoman begins his tale.' The word *tale* is not to be taken as a nominative case.

l. 721. *Near, nearer;* this explains *near* in Macheth, ii. 3. 146.

l. 724. *Theer, where;* observe the use. In l. 727, we have *wher*.

l. 726. *Hose, an old stocking, instead of a hood.*

l. 730. 'And, in return for all my labour, I am cajoled.' To *bleere one's eye* is to cajole, to deceive, to hoodwink. See Piers the Plowman, B. prol. 74, and the note.


l. 739. 'I consider his prosperity as done with.'

l. 743. *Iuparit, jeopardy, hazard.* Tyrwhitt remarks that the derivation is not from *jeu érdu,* as some have guessed, but from *jeu parti.* He adds—'A *jeu parti* is properly a game, in which the chances are exactly even; see Froissart, v. i c. 234—"Ils n'estoient pas à *jeu parti* contre les Françoys;" and v. ii. c. 9—"si nous les voyons à *jeu parti.*" From hence it signifies anything uncertain or hazardous. In the old French poetry, the discussion of a problem, where much might be said on both sides, was called a *jeu parti.* See *Poesies du Roy de Navarre,* Chanson xlviii., and *Gloss.* in v. See also Ducange, in v. *focus Partitus.* Ducange has—"*focus partitus* dicebatur, cum aliqui facultas concedebatur, alterum e duobus propositis eligendi." Hence was formed not only *jeopardy,* but even the verb *to jeopard,* used in the A.V., Judges v. 18; 2 Macc. xi. 7. Also in Shakespeare's Plutarch, ed. Skeat, p. 139, side-note 2.

l. 746. In the margin of MS. E. is written—'Solacium misierorum, &c.' In Marlowe's Faustus, ii. 1. 42, the proverb is quoted in the form 'Solamen mi-eris socios habuisse doloris.' Dr. Wagner says: 'The purport of this line may have been originally derived from Seneca, De Consol. ad Polybiun, xii. 2: est autem hoc ipsum solati loco, inter multos dolorem suum dividere; qui quia dispensatur inter plures, exigua debet apud te parte subsidere.' Cf. Milton, P. R. i. 398. The idea is that conveyed in the fable of the Fox who had lost his tail, and wished to persuade the other foxes to cut theirs off likewise.

l. 752. 'The technical terms which we use are so learned and fine.' See this well illustrated in Jonson's Alchemist, ii. 1:—

'What else are all your terms,
Whereon no one of your writers *'grees* with other,
Of your elixir, your lac virgins,
Your stone, your medicine, and your chrysoperme,
Your sal, your sulphur, and your mercury,' &c.

l. 764. *Lampe;* so in the MSS. It is clearly put for *lame,* a corruption of O. Fr. *lame,* Lat. *lamina.* Were there any MS. authority.
it would be better to read lame at once. Cotgrave has—"a thin plate of any metall; also, a blade." &c. Nares has—"a plate, from Lat. lamina. "But he strake Phalantus just gotor, so as he batred the lammes thereof, and made his hea: touch the back of his horse;" Pembr. Arcadia, lib. iii. p. 26 in old French also means, the flat slab covering a tomb; see l So here, after the ingredients have all been placed in a pot covered over with a plate of glass laid flat upon the top.

It is strange that no editor has made any attempt to explain It obviously does not mean lamp! For the insertion of the p, c for solenne, and nempse for nemus; see Gloss. to Prior. Tale.

l. 766. Enlutinge. To enlute is to close with lute. Web.

'Lute, n. (Lat. iutum, mud, clay). A composition of clay tenacious substance, used for stopping the juncture of vessels as to prevent the escape or entrance of air, or to protect the exposed to heat.'

The process is minutely described in a MS. by Sir George I Innertiel (temp. James I.), printed by Mr. J. Small in the Proofs of the Society of Antiquaries of Scotland, vol. xi. 1874-75, follows:—Thairfor when all the matter which must be in, i together into the pot, tak a good lute maid of potters clay, t with bolus and rust of iron tempered with whitts of eggs and r and mingle and worke thame well together, and lute oure pot thick thairwith, and mak a stoppe of potters earth well b close in the hole that is in the top of the cover of the pott, an pott and the cover very close together, so as no ayre may brek when any craks cum into it, in the drying of the lute, da up agaie; and when the lute is perfectly drye in the sunne, t course linen or canvas, and soke it well in the whitts of eggs iron rust, and spred this cloth round about the luting, and t well again with whitts of eggs and upon the luting;" &c.

l. 768. The alchemists were naturally very careful about of the fire. So in 'The Alchemist, ii. 1:—

'Look well to the register,
And let your heat still lessen by degrees.'

And again, in iii. 2:

'We must now increase
Our fire to ignis ardens, we are passed
Finus equinus, bolnei, cineris,
And all those lenter heats.'

l. 770. Matires sublyming, sublimation of materials. To is to render vaporous, to cause matter to pass into a state of the application of heat. 'Philosophi considerantes eorum mat est in vase suo, et calorem sentit, evaporatur in speciem tum,'

'Sublita. How do you sublire him [mercury]?

Face. With the calce of egg-shells,

White marble, tale.' The Alchemist, ii. 1.

1. 771. Amalgaming. To 'amalgamate' is to compound or mix intimately, especially used of mixing quicksilver with other metals. The term is still in use; thus 'an amalgam of tin' means a mixture of tin and quicksilver.

Calcining. To 'calcine' is to reduce a metal to an oxide, by the action of heat. What is now called an oxide was formerly called 'a metallic calx'; hence the name. The term is here applied to quicksilver or mercury. For example—When mercury is heated, and at the same time exposed to atmospheric air, it is found that the volume of the air is diminished, and the weight of the mercury increased, and that it becomes, during the operation, a red crystalline body, which is the binoxide of mercury, formed by the metal combining with the oxygen of the air;' English Cyclopædia, Div. Arts and Sciences, s. v. Oxygen. 'The alchemists used to keep mercury at a boiling heat for a month or longer in a matrass, or a flask with a tolerably long neck, having free communication with the air. It thus slowly absorbed oxygen, becoming converted into binoxide, and was called by them mercurius precipitatus per se. It is now however generally prepared by calcination from mercuric nitrate;' id., s. v. Mercury.

1. 772. Mercurie crude, crude Mercury. See note to l. 820. See the description of Mercury in Ashmole's Theat. Chem. p. 272. The alchemists pretended that their quicksilver, which they called the Green Lion, was something different from quicksilver as ordinarily found. See treatise on 'The Greene Lyon,' in Ashmole's Theat. Chem. p. 280.

1. 774. Note the accents—'sâblymèd Mercure.'

1. 778. Here the 'ascension of spirits' refers to the rising of gases or vapours from certain substances; and the 'matters that lie all fix adown' are the materials that lie at the bottom in a fixed (i.e. in a solid) state. There were four substances in particular which were technically termed 'spirits;' viz. sulphur, sal ammoniac, quicksilver, and arsenic, or (as some said) orpiment. See Theatrum Chemicum, iii. 81, 129; ii. 430; iii. 276.

1. 782. Here a = in; being short for an, a variant of on, used in the old sense of 'in.' The expression signifies, literally, in the manner of twenty devils, i.e. in all sorts of evil and accursed ways.

1. 790. Bole armonian. The latter word should rather be Armenia, i.e. Armenian, but we have armonian again below, in l. 798; see note to that line.

'Bole, a kind of fine, compact, or earthy clay, often highly coloured.'
with iron, and varying in shades of colour from white to yellowish, reddish, blueish, and brownish. Fr. bol, Lat. bolus, Gk. βόλος, a clod or lump of earth; 'Webster's Dict., ed. Godrich and Porter. Cotgrave has—' Bol, m. the astringent and medicible red earth or mineral called Bolearmenie . . . Bol Oriental, et Bol Armænien Oriental, Oriental Boearmenie: the best and truest kind of Bolearmenie, ministred with good effect against all poisons, and in pestilent diseases; and more red than the olninary one, which should rather be termed Sinopian red earth than Bolearmeny.' And again—'Rubrique Sinopique, Sinopian red earth, a heavy, massive, liver-coloured, and astringent earth, or mineral, which, put into water, soon moulders, and falls into pieces. This may very well be the ordinarie Bolearmonte [sic] that is, at this day, used by many surgeons in the staunching of blood, &c., but is not the true (Oriental) one, ruder then it, and not so easily dissolved by water as it is.'

Verdegros looks at first like a corruption of vorde-de-gris, but that would mean 'green of grey,' which is nonsense. It is really an English corruption of the French verderis (given in Cotgrave's Dict.), confused with the Eng. grease, from the notion that it is of a greasy nature. The French verderis is, again, the Latin virida aris, the green of brass. This term (virida aris) is the common one in the old Latin treatises on alchemy. See the chapter in Albertus Magnus—'Quomodo viride aris fit, et quomodo rubificatur, et super omnia valet ad artem isam;'
Theatrum Chemicum, ii. 436. It is the bibasic acetate of copper.

1. 794. Cucurbites, vessels supposed to bear some resemblance to a gourd, whence the name (Lat. cucurbita, a gourd). 'Cucurbita est uas quod debet stare in aqua, usque ad juncturam firmatum in caldario, ut non moueatur; nec cucurbita debet tangere fundum quia frangeretur; et cum aqua minuitur, fundas aliam, scilicet calidam et non frigidam, quia uas frangeretur; ' Theatr um Chemicum, ii. 451.

1. 795. Dore ynoough a leek, dear enough at the price of a leek. 'L Clerkes Tale, F. 999.

1. 797. Watres rubifying, reddening waters. This is well illustrated by a long passage in The Boke of Quinte Essence, ed. Furnivall, p. 13, where instructions are given for extracting the quintessence out of the four elements. After various processes, we are directed to put the vessel into the 'sier of flame right strong, and the reed water schall ascende;' and again—' thanne yn the stillatorie, to the sier of bath, cleer water schall asende; and in the botum shall remayne the reed water, that is, the element of sier.' A long and unintelligible passage about 'rubificatio' and 'aqua spiritualis rubea' occurs in the Theatr um Chemicum, iii. 41. See also 'modus rubificandi' and the recipe for 'aqua rubea;' id. iii. ii. 110.

1. 798. Arsenic was by some considered as one of the 'four spirits;' see note to 1. 778. For a long passage 'de arsenico,' see Theatr um
THE CHAUNCEYS YEMANNES TALE. 15

raphicum, iii. 177; also p. 110, and ii. 238. Sal armoniacum was nother of them (see l. 824) and is constantly mentioned in the oil
realtises; see preparatio salis Armoniaci secundum Rasim; Theat
chem. iii. 179; also pp. 89, 94, 102; ii. 445. In vol. ii. p. 138 of the
same work, it is twice called sal armoniacum. See the account of
al ammoniac in Thomson, Hist. of Chemistry, i. 124. Brinsmoor was
also a spirit (see l. 824); it is only another name for sulphur.
1. 800. Erigrein, common agrimony, Aegrimonia officinalis; valerian,
valeriana officinalis; lunaria, a kind of fern called in English moon-wort,
botrychium lunaria. The belief in the virtue of herbs was very strong;
ence even Spenser says (F. Q. i. 2. 10) that the magician Archimago
thus enabled to turn himself into the shape of various animals, dding—

' O who can tell
The hidden power of herbs, and might of magic spell.'
The root of valerian yields valerianic acid. The following quotation is
rom the English Encyclopaedia, s.v. Botrychium:

' In former times the ferns had a great reputation in medicine, not so
much on account of their obvious as their supposed virtues. The lunate
shape of the pinnæ of this fern (B. lunaria) gave it its common name; and
as the origin of much of the superstitious veneration with which it
is regarded. When used it was gathered by the light of the moon,
Carde says—'it is singular [i.e. sovereign] to heal green and fresh
unds. It hath been used among the alchemists and witches to do
onders withall, who say that it will loose locks and make them to
from the feet of horses that grase where it doth grow, and hath
alled of them Martagon, whereas in truth they are all but drowsy
ms and illusions; but it is singular for wounds as aforesaid.'

Ashmole's Theatrum Chemicum, p. 348, is a full description of
yric,' with an engraving of it. It is there also called asterion, and
re told that its root is black, its stalk red, and its leaves round;
moreover, that the leaves wax and wane with the moon, and on each of
is a mark of the breadth of a penny. See also pp. 315, 318 of the
work.

05. Albisciacion, i.e. the rendering the water of a white colour, as
ishing from the reddening of it, mentioned in l. 797. In a long
printed in the Theatrum Chemicum (iii. 634-648) much is said
ed and white colours. Compare the Alchemist, ii. 1:—

'Subtle. I mean to tinct C in sand-heat tomorrow,
And give him imbibition.

Mammon.

Of white oil?

Subtle. No, sir, of red.'

It, too, water is here used in the sense of the Lat. aqua, no
y substance that is in a liquid state.
192

NOTES TO GROUP G.

1. 808. Cered pokes. Tyrwhitt reads Sered pokettes, and includes this phrase in his short 'List of Phrases not understood'; and indeed, it has never been explained. But there is little difficulty about it. Pokes is the diminutive of poke, a bag, and means a little bag. Cered (Lat. ceratus) means waxed. Thus Cotgrave has—'Cire, m. -ete, f. waxed. seared; dressed, covered, closed, or mingled, with wax.' In many MSS. the word is spelt seared, but this makes no difference, since Cotgrave has 'seared' in this very place. So we find both 'cere-cloth' and 'sear-cloth.' It is obvious that bags or cases prepared or closed with wax would be useful for many of the alchemist's purposes; see Theat. Chem. iii. 13. There was a special process in alchemy called ceration, but this has nothing to do with it; it means the reduction of any material to the consistency of soft wax; Theat. Chem. ii. 442.

Sal peter, Lat. sal petrae, or rock-salt, also called nitre, is nitrate of potassa. A recipe for preparing it is given in Theat. Chem. iii. 195.

Vitriole, i.e. sulphuric acid. See 'vitrioli preparatio;' Theat. Chem. iii. 98.

1. 810. Sal tartre, salt of tartar, i.e. carbonate of potash; so called from its having been formerly prepared from cream of tartar.

Sal preparato, common salt prepared in a certain manner. See the section—'quod unaleat sal commune, et quomodo preparatur;' Theat. Chem. ii. 433, 435.

1. 812. Mnaad, i.e. prepared, mixed. Oils of tartre, oil of tartar. See the section—'quomodo preparatur tartarum, ut oleum fiat ex illo, quo calces solumutur;' Theat Chem. ii. 436; and again—'ad faciendum oleum de Tartaro;' id. iii. 303. To scan l. 813. remember to pronounce tartre as in French, and to accent alum on the latter syllable.

Of tátr' | alúm | glas bérn | wort ánd | argoile ||

1. 814. Resalgar, realgar, red orpiment, or the red sulphuret of arsenic; symbol (As S₃); found native in some parts of Europe, and of a brilliant red colour. Resalgar is a corruption of the old Latin name, resigallum. The word is explained by Thynne in his Animadversions, ed. Furnivall, p. 36—'This resalgar is that whiche by some is called Ratesbane, a kynde of poysone named Arsenicke, whiche the chemicall philosophers call their venome or poysone.'

Enhibing, imbibition; see this term used in the quotation from The Alchemist, in the note to l. 805. It means absorption; cf. Theat. Chem. iii. 132, l. 27.

1. 816. Citrinacioun. This also is explained by Thynne, who says (p. 38)—'Citrinatione is bothe a coolor [colour] and parte of the philosophers stoone.' He then proceeds to quote from a Tractatus Avicenæ, cap. 7, and from Arnoldus de Nova Villa, lib. i. cap. 5. It was supposed that when the materials for making the philosopher's stone
THE CHANOUNS YEMANNE'S TALE.

been brought into a state very favourable to the ultimate success: the experiment, they would assume the colour of a citron; or, as one says, Arnold speaks of 'this citrinatone, perfecte digestione, or coolor provinge the philosophers stooone broughte almoaste to the hte of his perfectione.' So in the Alchemist, iii. 2:—

'I how's the moon now? eight, nine, ten days hence He will be silver potate; then three days Before he citronize. Some fifteen days The magisterium will be perfected.'

817. Fermentaciosus, fermentation. This term is also noticed by ght (p. 33), who says—'fermentacione ys a peculiare term of tymye, deduced from the bakers fermente or leyne;' &c. See at. Chem. ii. 115, 175.

820. Fouré spirites. Chaucer enumerates these below. I have ady mentioned them in the note to l. 778; see also note to l. 798. whitt refers us to Gower's Confessio Amantis, bk. iv, where we a passage very much to the point. I quote it from Chalmers' ion, correcting the spelling. Cf. Pauli's edition, ii. 84.

'And also with gret diligence Thei fonde thilke experience, Which cleped is Alconomye, Wherof the siluer multiplye They made, and eek the gold also. And, for to telle how it is so, Of bodies seuen in special, With fouré spirites ioynt thyal. Stant the substance of this matere. The bodies, whiche I spoke of here Of the planetes ben begonne. The gold is titled to the sonne; The mone of siluer hath his part; And iron, that stant vpon Mart; The leed vpon Saturne groweth; And Iupiter the bras bestoweth; The copper set is to Venus; And to his part Mercurius Hath the quick-siluer, as it falleth, The whiche, after the boke it calleth, Is first of thilke fouré named Of spirites, whiche ben proclaimed. And the spirit which is seconde In sal armoniak is fonde. The thridde spirit sulphur is. The fourthe, sewend after this,
NOTES TO GROUP G.

Arsenicum by name is hote.
With blowing and with fyres hote
In these thinges whiche I saye
Thei worchen by diuurse waye.'
	her explains that gold and silver are the two 'extremities,' as er metals agree with one or other of them more or less, so as able of transmuation into one of them. For this purpose, d uist must go through the processes of distillation, congelatio n, descension, sublimation, calcination, and fixation, after whi ll obtain the perfect elixir of the philosopher's stone. He ad here are really three philosopher's stones, one vegetable, capab ling diseases; another animal, capable of assisting each of the senses of man; and the third mineral, capable of transmuting baser metals into silver and gold.

'It maketh multiplicacioun
Of golde, and the fixacioun
It causeth, and of his habite
He doth the werk to be perfeite
Of thilke elixir, which men calle
Alkonomye, as is beaffe
To hem that whyolum were wyse.
But now it stant al otherwyse.
They spoken faste of thilke stone,
But how to make it now wont none,
After the trewe experience.
And nathelenes gret diligence
They setten vp, on thilke dede,
And spillen more then thei spedde.
For alway thei fynden a lette
Which bringeth in pouerte and dette
To him that riche were tofore.
The losse is had, the lucre is lore.
To gette a pound they spenden fyue.
I not how suche a craft shal tryue
In the manere as it is vset.
It were better be refused
Than for to werchen vpon wene [expectation]
In thing which stant not as thei wene.'
is easy to see how the various metals were made to seven planets. Gold, the chief of metals and yellow, swered to the sun, and similarly silver, to the paler moon. swiftest planet, must be the shifty quicksilver; Saturn, t' cold and dull influence, must be lead. The etymolog rested the connection with the Cyprian Venus. Thus


-
metals, iron and tin, to be adjusted; iron was suggestive of Mars, the god of war, leaving tin to Jupiter. The notion of thus naming the metals is attributed to Geber; see Thomson, Hist. of Chemistry, i. 117. Quicksilver, be it observed, is still called mercury; and nitrate of silver is still lunar caustic. Gold and silver are constantly termed sol and luna in the old treatises on alchemy. See further allusions in Chaucer’s House of Fame, iii. 341–397, as pointed out in my Pref. to Chaucer’s Astrolabe, p. lxvi.

1. 834. ‘Whosoever pleases to utter (i.e. display) his folly,’
1. 838. Ascance, possibly, perhaps. See Glossary.
1. 846. Al conne he, whether he know. The use of al at the beginning of a sentence containing a supposition is common in Chaucer; see Proli. 734. Cf. al be, Prov. 297; Kn. Tale, 313. And see l. 861.
1. 848. Bothe two, both learned and unlearned alike.
1. 861. ‘To raise a fiend, though he look never so rough,’ i.e. forbidding, cross.
1. 874. It is to seken ever, it is always to seek, i.e. never found. In Skelton’s Why Come Ye Nat to Court, l. 314, the phrase ‘they are to seke’ means ‘they are at a loss;’ this latter is the commoner use.
1. 875. Temps, tense. The editors explain it by ‘time.’ If Chaucer had meant time, it is reasonable to suppose that he would have said so. Surely it is better to take ‘that futur temps’ in the special sense of ‘that future tense.’ The allusion is to the phrase ‘to seken’ in the last line, which is not an infinitive mood but a gerund, and often used as a future tense, as Chaucer very well knew. Compare the A.S. version of Matt. xi. 3—‘eart þu þe to cumenne eart’—with the Lat. ‘Tu es qui venturus es.’
1. 878. Bitter sweete, i.e. a fatal, though alluring, pursuit. An example of oxymoron; cf. ‘insaniens sapientia,’ Horat. Carm. i. 34; ‘strenua inertia,’ Epist. i. xi. 28.
1. 879. Nadde they but, if they only should have (or, were to have). Nadde is for ne hadde, past tense subjunctive.
1. 880. Inne, within; A.S. innan; see l. 881. A nyght, for on nyght, in the night. Perhaps it should be nyghte (with final e), and lyghte in l. 881.
1. 881. Bak, cloth; any rough sort of covering for the back. So in most MSS.; altered in E. to brat, but unnecessarily. That the word bak was used in the sense of garment is quite certain from two other passages which I shall cite. That it meant originally a covering for the back, will appear from a third one.

(1) In William of Palerne, ed. Skeat, l. 2096, we have—
‘Than brayde he brazyn-wod & alle his bakkes rente, His berde, and his bright fax for bale he to-twight[e].’
I.e. then he became brain-mad, and tare all his clothes; he plucked
To broke beggers bred and hathen hen
Pronounce the words And a rapidily, in the tir
l. 907. To-breketh, bursts in pieces. Go, gone

a very common result; the old directions at
tetically sealing the vessels employed are so
seems to have been (unwittingly) taken to see
note to l. 766 above. So in the Alchemist, iv. 3

Face. O, sir, we are defeated! all t
Are flown in famo, every glass is bur
Furnace, and all rent down! as if a
Of thunder had been driven through
Retorts, receivers, pelicans, bolt-heads
All struck in shivers!

l. 921. Chit, short for chideth; so also halt for
l. 922. Som seyde, i.e. one said; note that
in Kn. Tale, 2173. Hence the use of the
in l. 925.

l. 929. So thesch, for so thee ich, so may I tl
C. 947.

l. 933. Eft-sone, for the future; lit. soon after
l. 934. 'I am quite sure that the pot was crac.
l. 963. The reading shyneith is of course the
variant of MS. E. It is written: Non tenes aur
THE CHANOUNS YE MANNES TALE. 197

pas or. Non è oro tutto quel che luce; Ital. No es todo or lo que reluce; Span.' So in German—'Eist ist nicht Alles Gold was glänzt; and again—'Rothe Aepfel sind auch faul.' See Ida v. Düringsfeld's Sprichwörter, i. 53, 107. Cf. Chaucer's House of Fame, i. 272.

1. 972. Pars secunda. This is where the Tale begins. Even now, the Yeoman has some more by way of preface, and only makes a real start at l. 1012.

1. 975. Alisaundre, Alexandria. And other three, and three more as well.

1. 999. I mente, I intended; as in l. 1051 below. 'But my intention was to correct that which is amiss.'

The reading I-mente, as a past participle, adopted by Mr. Wright, is incorrect, as shewn by Mr. Cromie's Ryme-Index. Cf. Nonne Pr. Tale, 603; Sq. Tale, F. 108. See note to G. 534, above.

1. 1005. By yow, with reference to you canons. See By in Eastwood and Wright's Bible Wordbook.

1. 1012. Annueler. So called, as Tyrwhitt explains, 'from their being employed solely in singing annuals or anniversary masses for the dead, without any cure of souls. See the Stat. 36 Edw. III. c. viii, where the Chappelleins Parochiel are distinguished from others chantanz annuales, et a cure des almes nient entendantz.' They were both to receive yearly stipends, but the former was allowed to take six marks, the latter only five. Compare Stat. 2 Hen. V. St. 2. c. 2, where the stipend of the Chapellein Parochiel is raised to eight marks, and that of the Chapellein annueler is so named in the statute) to seven.'

1. 1015. That is, to the lady of the house where he lodged.

1. 1018. Spending silver, money to spend, ready money. The phrase occurs in Piers the Plowman, B. xi. 278.

1. 1025. A certeyn, a certain sum, a stated sum. Cf. l. 776.

1. 1027. At my day, on the day agreed upon, on the third day.

1. 1029. Another day, another time, on the next occasion.

1. 1030. Him took, handed over to him; so in ll. 1034, 1112.

1. 1055. 'In some measure to requite your kindness.' See note to Sq. Tale, F. 471, and cf. l. 1151.

1. 1059. Seen at ye, see evidently; lit. see at eye.

1. 1066. Proffered service stinketh ' is among Heywood's Proverbs. Ray remarks on it—' Merx ultronea putet, opud Hieronymum. Erasmus saith, Quin vulgo etiam in ore est, ultro delatum obsequium plerumque ingratum esse. So that it seems this proverb is in use among the Dutch too. In French, Merchandise offerte est à demi vendue. Ware that is proffered is sold for half the worth, or at half the price.' The German is 'Angebotene Hülle hat keinen Lohn;' see Ida v. Düringsfeld's Sprichwörter, i. 86.

1. 1096. Algates, at any rate. Observe the context.

1. 1103. That see it hadde, that we might have it. Hadde is here the
NOTES TO GROUP G.

subjunctive. Perhaps have (present) would be better, but it lacks authority.

l. 1126. Mortife, mortify; a technical term. See note to l. 1431.

l. 1151. 'To blind the priest with.' See note to l. 1055.

l. 1185. Saint Giles, saint Giles: a corrupted form of Aegidius. His day is Sept. 1; see Chambers' Book of Days, ii. 296; Legenda Aurea, cap. cxx.

Il. 1204. 1205. The rime is given by tymé (two syllables, from A.S. tima) ricking with by me. The same rime occurs at least six times in Gower's Confessio Amantis (ed. Chalmers, bk. ii. p. 60, col. 2; bk. iii. p. 76. col. 2; also pp. 193, 195, 200, 157):—

'Hawe feigned semblant oft tymé
To hem that passen al day by me.'

'And hindred me ful oft tymé
When thei no cause wiste by me;' &c., &c.

In all six places, Mr. Chalmers prints hymne as one word! See by thr (l. 1195); se ye (l. 1375).

On referring to Prof. Child's Observations on the Language of Gower.

I find seven references given for this rime, as occurring in the edition by Dr. Pauli. The references are—i. 227, 309, 370; ii. 41, 114, 277; iii. 369. Dr. Pauli also prints hymne as one word.

l. 1210. Scan the line by pronouncing the words or a rapidly. The last foot contains the words—or a paren.

l. 1238, 1239. MS. E. omits these two lines; the other MSS. retain them.

l. 1244. Halves is in the genitive plural. 'And the blessing of all the saints may ye have, Sir Canon!' 1245. 'And may I have their malison,' i.e. their curse.

l. 1283. 'Why do you wish it to be better than well?' Answering nearly to—'what would you have better?'

l. 1292. A rather lax line. Is ther is to be pronounced rapidly, in the time of one syllable, and her-inne is of three syllables.

l. 1299. Pronounce simple nearly as in French, and remember the final e in tonze (A.S. tunge).

l. 1313. His ape, his dupe. See Prol. 706. The simile is evidently taken from the fact that showmen used to carry apes about with them much as organ-boys do at the present day, the apes being secured by a string. Thus, 'to make a man one's ape' is to lead him about at will. The word apewarde occurs in Piers the Povman, B. v. 540. To lead apes means to lead about a train of dupes. In the Prioresse's Prologue, B. 1630, I have explained ape by 'fool,' following former editors. It now occurs to me that the word 'dupe' expresses the meaning still better. (This is corrected in the second edition.)

l. 1319. Hynne, wretch. This word has never before been properly explained. It is not in -"whitt's Glossary. Dr. Morris considers a
as another form of *hynere*, a peasant, or hind, but leaves the phonetic difference of vowel unaccounted for. It occurs in Skelton's Bowge of Courte, l. 327:—

'It is great scorne to see suche an *hynere*
As thou arte, one that cam but yesterdaye,
With vs olde seruauntes suche mysteres to playe.'

Here Mr. Dyce also explains it by *hind*, or servant, whereas the context requires the opposite meaning of a despised *master*. Halliwell gives—

'Heynes, a miser, a worthless person;' but without a reference. For further examples, see *hean* in Stratmann; the word can hardly be from the A.S. *hina*, a hind; rather cf. A.S. *hein*, abject. See the Glossary.

l. 1320. 'This priest being meanwhile unaware of his false practice.'

See l. 1324.

l. 1342. Alluding to the proverb—'As fain as a fowl [i.e. bird] of a fair morrow;' given by Hazlitt in the form—'As glad as fowl of a fair day.' See Piers the Plowman, B. x. 153; Kn. Tale, 1579.

l. 1348. *To stonde in grace*; cf. Prol. 88.

l. 1354. *By asr*; pronounced *Byr*, as spelt in Shakespeare, Mid. Nt. Dr. iii. t. 14.

l. 1362. *Nere*, for *newere*; meaning 'were it not for.'

l. 1381. *By*, saw. The scribes also use the form *sey* or *seigh*, as in Kn. Tale, 208; Franklin's Tale, F. 850, in both of which places it rimes with *heigh* (high). Of these spellings *sey* (riming with *hey*) is to be preferred in most cases. See note to Group B, l. 1 (Prioresse's Tale, &c.).

l. 1388. This line begins with a large capital C in the Ellesmere MS., shewing that the Tale itself is at an end, and the rest is the Yeoman's application of it.

l. 1389. 'There is strife between men and gold to that degree, that there is scarcely any (gold) left.'

l. 1408. Alluding to the proverb—'Burst bairns fear fire.' This occurs among the Proverbs of Hendyng, in the form—'Brend child furdreft.' So in the Roaunt of the Rose, l. 1820—'Brent child of fryr hath moche drede.' The German is—'Ein gebrannte Kind furchtet das Feuer;' see Ida v. Düringsfeld's Sprichwörter, i. 531.

l. 1410. Alluding to the proverb—'Better late than never;' in French 'Il vaut mieux tard que jamais.' The German is—'Besser spät als nie;' see Ida v. Düringsfeld's Sprichwörter, i. 204.

l. 1411. In Hazlitt's Proverbs—'Never is a long term.'

l. 1413. *Bayard* was a colloquial name for a horse; see Piers Plowman, B. iv. 53, 124; vi. 196; and 'As bold as blind Bayard' was a common proverb. See also Chaucer's Troil and Cress. i. 218.

l. 1416. 'As to turn aside from an obstacle in the road.'

l. 1419. Compare this with the *Man of Lawes Tale*, B. 552.

l. 1422. *Rape and renue, seize and plunder.* 'The phrase is of
Scandinavian origin. *Rape* is preserved in the Swedish ra seize, of which the Eng. rob is only another form; cf. Icel. rífa, to rive, to grasp. *Renne* is not so with *A.S. rennan*, to run, but with Icel. rana, to rob, rín, plunder. The collocation of words is seen in the Icel. rínum, wít: pilfering and plundering. Formnausa Sögur, i ráin ok rífs, plunder and robbery. ii. 119, vi. 42, viii. 36 *ráin* and *rífs* in Cleasby and Vigfusson's Icelandic Dieti. Hence the Cleveland form of the phrase is 'to rap and receive, times 'to rap and reec,' see *Rap* in Atkinson's Cleveland G. Mr. Atkinson remarks that 'heo rupten, heo ríffen' in Lay ii. 16, first text, is equivalent to 'híi rupten, híi réffen' in the s whilst the Ancren Rwle gives the form arépen and arechen, with various readings rapen and ríven, rapen and rímen. *Ire* quo English *'rap and ran, per fas et nefas ad se pertrahere.'* Mr. wood remarks that in *rap and ran*, to get by hook or cro seize whatever one can lay hands on, the word *rap* is joined to the synonymous [verb connected with the] Icel. rín, rapine. *Pal has—'I rap or rende, je rapine.'* Coles (Eng Dict. ed. 1684) has a[n d] ren, snatch and catch.' The phrase is still in use in the rupted) form to *rape and rend*, or (in Cleveland) to *rap and reec.*

I. 1428. Arnoldus de Villa Nova was a French physician, theologastero ger, and alchemist; born about A.D. 1235, died A.D. Ty rhitt refers us to Fabricius, Bibl. Med. Et., in v. Arnaldus Ven anus. In a tract printed in Theatrum Chemicum, iii. 185, we reference to the same saying—*Et hoc est illud quod magni philo scripturum, quod lapis noster sit ex Mercurio et sulphure prepar et separatis, et de hoc opere et substantia dicit Magister Arnold tractatu suo parabolic, nisi granum frumentum in terra caudens me fuerit, &c.* Intelligens pro grano mortuo in terra, Mercurium me cum salpetre et vitriolo Romano, et cum sulphure, et ibi mortif et ibi sublimatur cum igne, et sic multum fructus adert, et h lapis major omnibus, quem philosophi quiseriverunt, et ins absconderunt.* The whole process is described, but it is quite intelligible to me. It is clear that two circumstances stand very in the way of our being able to follow out such processes; are (1) that the same substance was frequently denoted by seven different names; and (2) that one name (such as sulphur noted five or six different things (such as sulphuric acid, orp sulphuret of arsenic, &c.)

I. 1429. Rosarie, i.e. Rosarium Philosophorum, the name of a tr on alchemy by Arnoldus de Villa Nova; Theat. Chem. iv. 514.

I. 1431. The word *mortification* seems to have been loosely, denote any change due to chemical action. Phillips expla...
THE CHANOUNS YEMANNES TALE.

by—'Among chymists, to change the outward form or shape of a mixt body; as when quicksilver, or any other metal, is dissolved in an acid menstruum.'

l. 1432. 'Unless it be with the knowledge (i.e. aid) of his brother.' The 'brother' of Mercury was sulphur or brimstone (see l. 1439). The dictum itself is, I suppose, as worthless as it is obscure.

l. 1434. Hermes, i.e. Hermes Trismegistus, fabled to have been the inventor of alchemy. Several books written by the New Platonists in the fourth century were ascribed to him. Tyrwhitt notes that a treatise under his name may be found in the Theatrum Chemicum, vol. iv. See Fabricius, Bibliotheca Graecæ, lib. i. c. 10; and Smith's Classical Dictionary. The name is preserved in the phrase 'to seal hermetically.'

Mr. Furnivall, printed, for the Early Eng. Text Society, a tract called The Book of Quinte Essence, 'a trectice in English breutely drawe out of the book of quintis essencis in latyn, that hermys the prophete and kyng of Egipt, after the flood of Noe, fadir of philosophis, hadde by reuelacioun of an aungil of god to him sende.'

l. 1438. Dragoun, dragon. Here, of course, it means mercury, or some compound containing it. In certain processes, the solid residuum was also called draco or draco qui comedit caudam suam. This draco and the cauda draconis are frequently mentioned in the old treatises; see Theatrum Chemicum, iii. 29, 36, &c. The terms may have been derived from astrology, since 'dragon's head' and 'dragon's tail' were common terms in that science. Chaucer mentions the latter in his Astrolabie, ii. 4. 22. And see the remarks on 'Draco' in Theat. Chem. ii. 456.

l. 1440. Sol and luna, gold and silver. The alchemists called sol (gold) the father, and luna (silver) the mother of the elixir or philosopher's stone. See Theat. Chem. iii. 9, 24, 25; iv. 528. Similarly, sulphur was said to be the father of minerals, and mercury the mother. Id. iii. 7.

l. 1447. Secre, secret of secrets. Tyrwhitt notes—'Chaucer refers to treatise entitled Secreta Secretorum, which was supposed to contain the sum of Aristotle's instructions to Alexander.' See Fabricius, Bibliotheca Graecæ, vol. ii. p. 167. It was very popular in the middle ages. Egidius de Columnna, a famous divine and bishop, about the latter end of the 13th century, built upon it his book De Regimine Principum, of which our Oceleave made a free translation in English verse, and addressed it to Henry V. while Prince of Wales. A part of Lydgate's translation of the Secreta Secretorum is printed in Ashmole's Theatrwm Chemicum Britannicum, p. 397. He did not translate more than about a third of it, being prevented by death. See MS. Harl. 2251, and Tanner, Brit. s.v. Lydgate. The greatest part of the viith Book of Gower's tessio Amantis [see note to l. 820] is taken from this supposed
Magnesia est aqua, composita." &c. The name only a few lines below, which explains Chaucer "Titan Magnesia" in Ashmole's Theat. Chem. p.

l. 1457. Ignatum per ignitum, lit. an unknown more unknown; i.e. an explanation of a hard term that is harder still.

l. 1460. The theory that all things were made earth, air, fire, and water, was the foundation on which rendered progress in science almost impossible. in the widest sense; thus air meant any vapor; liquid; earth, any solid sediment; and fire, any also the theory of the four complexions of man. Amant. bk. vii; Theat. Chem. iii. 82; iv. 533; l. 1461. Root represents the Lat. radix. As in Theat. Chem. ii. 453, where we read that the radix, de quo omnes sapientes tractauerunt.

l. 1469. "Except where it pleases His Deity to again, to forbid whomever it pleases Him." l. 1470. Term of his own during the whole ter...
well with Harbledown, and it has generally been supposed that Harbledown is here intended. Harbledown is spelt Harboldown in the account of Queen Isabella's journey to Canterbury (see Furnivall's Temporary Preface, p. 124, l. 18; p. 127, l. 21), and Helbadoone in the account of King John's journey (id. p. 131, l. 1). However, Mr. J. M. Cowper, in a letter to the Athenæum, Dec. 26, 1868, p. 886, says that there still exists a place called Up-and-down Field, in the parish of Thannington, which would suit the position equally well, and he believes it to be the place really meant. If so, the old road must have taken a somewhat different direction from the present one, and there are reasons for supposing that such may have been the case.

The break here between the Canon's Yeoman's and the Manciple's Tales answers to the break between the first and second parts of Lydgate's Storie of Thebes. At the end of Part I, Lydgate mentions the descent down the hill (i.e. Boughton hill), and at the beginning of Part II, he says that the pilgrims had 'passed the thorpe of Boughton-on-the-blee.'

1. 5. Dun is in the myre, a proverbial saying originally used in an old rural sport. Dun means a dun horse, or, like Bayard, a horse in general. The game is described in Brand's Popular Antiquities, 4to. ii. 289; and in Gifford's notes to Ben Jonson, vol. vii. p. 283. The latter explanation is quoted by Nares, whom see. Briefly, the game was of this kind. A large log of wood is brought into the midst of a kitchen or large room. The cry is raised that 'Dun is in the mire,' i.e. that the cart-horse is stuck in the mud. Two of the company attempt to drag it along; if they fail, another comes to help, and so on, till Dun is extricated.

There are frequent allusions to it; see Romeo and Juliet, i. 4. 41; Beaumont and Fletcher's Woman-hater, iv. 3; Hudibras, pt. iii. c. iii. l. 110.

In the present passage it means—'we are all at a standstill;' or, 'let us make an effort to move on.' Mr. Hazlitt, in his Proverbial Phrases, quotes a line—'And all gooth bacward, and don is in the myr.'


1. 14. A botel hay, a bottel of hay; similarly, we have a balel ale, Monk's Proli. B. 3083. And see l. 24 below. A bottle of hay was a small bundle of hay, less than a truss, as explained in my note to The Two Noble Kinsmen, v. 2. 45.

1. 16. By the morwe, in the morning. There is no need to explain away the phrase, or to say that it means in the afternoon, as Tyrwhitt does. The Canon's Yeoman's tale is the first told on the third day, and the Manciple's is only the second. The Cook seems to have had too much to drink over night, and to have had something more before.
NOTES TO GROUP H.

starting. The fresh air has kept him awake for a while at first, but he is now very drowsy indeed.

Tyrwhitt well remarks that there is no allusion here to the unfinished Cook's Tale in Group A. This seems to shew that the Manciple's Prologue was written before the Cook's Tale was begun. See my Preface to the Prioresses Tale, p. xv. Note that the Cook is here excused; l. 29.

l. 23. 'I know not why, but I would rather go to sleep than have the best gallon of wine in Cheapside.' Me wer leuer slepe, lit. it would be dearer to me to sleep. Cf. l. 14.

l. 24. Than constitutes the first foot; beste is dissyllabic.

l. 29. As now, for the present; a common phrase.

l. 33. Not wel disposed, indisposed in health.

l. 42. Fan, the fan or vane or board of the quintain. The quintain, as is well known, consisted of a cross-bar turning on a pivot at the top of a post. At one end of the cross-bar was the fan or board, sometimes painted to look like a shield, and at the other was a club or bag of sand. The joust at the fan had to strike the shield, and at the same time to avoid the stroke given by the swinging bag. The Cook was hardly in a condition for this; his eye and hand were alike unsteady, and his figure did not suggest that he possessed the requisite agility. See Quintain in Nares, and Strutt's Sports and Pastimes, bk. iii. c. 1; As You Like It, i. 2. 263, on which see Mr. Wright's note (Clar Press Series).

l. 44. Wyn ape, ape-wine, or ape's wine. Tyrwhitt rightly considers this the same as the vin de singe in the Calendrier des Bergers, sign. l. ii. b., where the author speaks of the different effects produced by wine upon different men, according to their temperaments. 'The Cholerick, he says, a vin de lyon; cest a dire, quant a bien beu, veult tenuer, noyser, et batre.' The Sanguine a vin de singe; quant a plus beu, tant et plus joyeux. In the same manner, the Phlegmatic is said to have vin de mouton, and the Melancholick vin de porceau.'

Tyrwhitt adds—'I find the same four animals applied to illustrate the effects of wine in a little Rabbinical tradition, which I shall transcribe here from Fabricius, Cod. Pseudepig. Veteris Testamenti, vol. i. p. 275. 'Vineas plantanti Noacho Satanam se junxisse memorant, qui, dum Noa vites plantaret, mactaverit apud illas ovem, leonem, simiam, et suem: Quod principio potus vini homo sit instar ovis, vinum sumptum efficiat ex homine leonem, largius haustum mutet eum in saltantem simiam, ad ebrietatem infusum transformet illum in pollutam et prostratam suem.' See also Gesta Romanorum, c. 159, where a story of the same purport is quoted from Josephus, in libro de casu rerum naturalium.'

Warton (Hist. E. P. ed. 1871, i. 283) gives a slight sketch of this chapter in the Gesta, referring to Tyrwhitt's note, and explaining it.
words—' when a man begins to drink, he is meek and ignorant as a
lion, then becomes bold as the lion, his courage is soon transformed
e-foolishness of the ape, and at last he wallows in the mire
now.'
lay, in his Ship of Fools, ed. Jamieson, i. 96, speaking of
men, says—
'Some souse-dronke, swaloyng mete without mesure,'
ain—
'Some are Ape-dronke, full of laughter and of toyes.'
following interesting explanation by Lacroix is much to the
fact :—
Germany and in France it was the custom, at the public entries of
princes, and persons of rank, to offer them the wines made in the
cities, and commonly sold in the town. At Langres, for instance,
were put into four pewter vessels called cinaises, which are
be seen. They were called the lion, monkey, sheep, and pig-
symbolic names, which expressed the different degrees of
drunkenness which they were supposed to be capable of
ing : the lion. courage ; the monkey, cunning ; the sheep, good
; the pig, bestiality.'—P. Lacroix ; Manners, Customs, and Dress
the Middle Ages, 1874, p. 508.
ate in Bell's edition quotes an illustrative passage from a song in
play of Mother Bombie, printed in the Songs from the Drama-
Bell, p. 56 :—
'O the dear blood of grapes
Turns us to antic shapes,
Now to show tricks like ayes,
Now lion-like to roar;' &c.
ca here intended is precisely that expressed by Barclay. The
being very dull and ill-humoured, is ironically termed ape-drunk,
were 'full of laughter and of toyes,' and ready to play even with
. The satire was too much for the Cook, who became excited,
from his horse in his attempts to oppose the Manciple.
. Chynache, feat of horsemanship, exploit. See Prol. 85 for the
use of the word, where in chynachie means on an (equestrian)
ion.
. 'Alas! he did not stick to his ladle!' He should have been in
an, basting meat, not out of doors, on the back of a horse.
Dominacionoun, dominion. See note to G. 352 (Priorses Tale,
'y the righteous shall have domination over them in the morn-
Ps. xli. 14, Prayer-book Version. An early example of the
; in A Balade sent to King Richard, third stanza—'Uertue hath
dominaciooun'—printed at the end of Chaucer's works; ed. 1561
xxxv, back.
wych represents the shooting of hares by a
puff, a blast, *sclerous*, the windpipe: *sneez*.
Gaimar's law helps us to a further illustration
is a Greek *p*, a cognate word is at once see
verb *sneze*, I breathe or blow (not I sneeze).
see *sneez*, Owl and Nightingale, 44; *sneez*
(pt. tense), Gawain and the Grene Knight.
Troybrook, ed. Panton and Donaldson, 168, 87
1. 72. To *reclaim* a hawk is to bring it back
this was generally effected by holding out a *fur*
to eat. Here the Host means that some day
a bait to, or lay a snare for, the Manciple, and
for example, he might examine the details of
with an inconvenient precision, and perhaps
tested, would not appear to be strictly honest
in all good humour, that such a proceeding
him into trouble. See Pro. 570-586.
1. 76. Read *manciple*, and pronounce were a
1. 83. 'Yea, of an excellent vintage.'
1. 90. *Pompe*, blown; see Nomue Fristes Tale,
this horn' is a jocular phrase for 'taken a drink

*ON'S PROLOGUE*
made, to be the last on the outward journey. Whatever difficulties exist in the arrangement of the tales may fairly be considered as due to the fact that the final revision was never made.

1. 4. *Nyne and twenty.* In my Preface to Chaucer’s Astrolabie, p. lxiii. I have explained this passage fully. In that treatise, part ii. sections 41-43, Chaucer explains the method of taking altitudes. He here says that the sun was 39° high, and in ll. 6-9 he says that his height was to his shadow in the proportion of 6 to 11. This comes to the same thing, since the angle whose tangent is 11/6 is very nearly 39°. Chaucer would know this, as I have shewn, by simple inspection of an astrolabe, without calculation.

1. 5. *Four, four p.m.* The MSS. have *Ten,* but the necessity of the correction is undoubted. This was proved by Mr. Brae, in his edition of Chaucer’s Astrolabe, pp. 71-74. We have merely to remember that *ten p.m.* would be *after sunset,* to see that some alteration must be made. Now the altitude of the sun was 29°, and the day of the year was about April 20 (Pref. to Prioresses Tale, p. xiii); and these data require that the time of day should be about 4 p.m. Tyrwhitt notes that some MSS. actually have the reading *Four, and this gives us authority for the change. Mr. Brae suggests that the reading *Ten was very likely a gloss upon Four; since four o’clock is the tenth hour of the day, reckoning from 6 a.m. The whole matter is thus accounted for.*

1. 10. *The mones exaltacioun,* the moon’s exaltation. I have discussed this passage in my Preface to Chaucer’s Astrolabie, p. lxiii. My explanation is that Chaucer uses *exaltation* here (as in several other passages) in its ordinary astrological sense. The ‘exaltation’ of a planet is that sign in which it was believed to exert its greatest influence; and, in accordance with this, the old tables call Taurus the ‘exaltation of the Moon,’ and Libra the ‘exaltation of Saturn.’ These results, founded on no reasons, had to be remembered by sheer effort of memory, if remembered at all. I have no doubt, accordingly, that Chaucer (or his scribes) have made a mistake here, and that the reading should be ‘Saturnes,’ as proposed by Tyrwhitt. The sentence then means—‘Therewith Saturn’s exaltation, I mean Libra, kept on continually ascending above the horizon.’ This would be quite right, as the sign of Libra was actually ascending at the time supposed. The phrase ‘I mene Libra’ may be paralleled by the phrase ‘I mene Venus;’ Kn. Tale, 1358; see also Group B. 1860, 2141. Aitw, continually, is common in Chaucer; see Clerkes Tale, E. 458, 810. *Gan ascende,* did ascend, is the opposite to *gan descendes; Clerkes Tale,* E 392. It is somewhat remarkable that the astrologers also divided each sign into three equal parts of ten degrees each, called ‘faces;’ mentioned in Chaucer’s Astrolabie, ii. 4. 38, and in l. 50 of the *Squieres Tale.* According to their arrangement, the first 10 degrees of
NOTES TO GROUP I.

Libra was called the 'face of the moon,' or 'mones face.' This suggests that Chaucer may, at the moment, have confused face with exaltation, thus giving us, as the portion of the zodiac intended, the first ten degrees of Libra.

I doubt if the phrase is worth further discussion. For further information see my Preface to Chaucer's Astrolabie; and, for an ingenious theory, offered in explanation of the whole passage, see Mr. Brae's edition of the same, p. 74.

1. 16. This means that the Parson's Tale was meant to be the last one on the outward journey. Unfortunately, there lack a great many more tales than one, as the matter really stands.

1. 26. 'Unpack your wallet, and let us see what is in it.' In other words, tell us a story, and let us see what it is like.

1. 32. See 1 Tim. 1. 4; iv. 7; 2 Tim. iv. 4.

1. 42. Southern. In my Essay on Alliterative Poetry, printed in vol. iii. of the Percy Folio MS., ed. Hales and Furnivall, I have shown that nearly all the alliterative poems are in the Northern or West-Midland dialect, as opposed to the East-Midland dialect of Chaucer, which approaches the Southern dialect. Still, it is the Parson himself, not Chaucer, who says he is a Southerner; and perhaps the poet meant naturally enough to tell us that he was a Kentish man. The dialect of Kent was properly Southern. Many Southern forms occur in Gower.

1. 43. Rom, ram, ruf are of course nonsense words, chosen to represent alliteration, because they all alike begin with r. In most alliterative poetry, the number of words in a line beginning with a common letter is, as Chaucer suggests, three.

The word geste here means no more than 'tell a story,' with reference to the form of the story. Properly, the geste were in prose note to Group B, 2123. It is, however, worth noting that one very long alliterative poem on the siege of Troy, edited by Panton and Donaldson (Early English Text Society), bears the title of 'Hystorielle.' The number of distinctively Northern words in it is very considerable.

I think that this line has been forced by some out of its true meaning and made to convey a sneer against alliterative poetry which was no means intended. Neither Chaucer himself nor his amiable parson would have spoken slightingly of other men's labours. The intention of the words rom, ram, ruf conveys no more than a proper good-humoured allusion. That this is the true view is clear in the very next line, where the Parson declares that 'he holds it not little better.'

The most interesting question is—why should Chaucer attack alliterative poetry at all? The answer is, in my view, that he wished to recognise the curious work of his contemporaries.
whose Vision of Piers the Plowman had, by this time, passed, as it were, into a second edition, having been extremely popular in London, and especially amongst the lower classes. The author was not a Southerner, but his poem had come to London, together with himself, before A.D. 1377.

1. 57. Textuel, literally exact in giving the text. The next line means —'I only gather (and give you) the general meaning.' Most quotations at this period were very inexact, and Chaucer himself was no more exact than others.

1. 67. Hadde the wordes. Tyrwhitt says—'This is a French phrase. It is applied to the Speaker of the Commons in Rot. Parl. 51 Edw. III. n. 87. ‘‘Mons. Thomas de Hungerford, Chivaler, qi avoit les paroles pur les Communes d’Angleterre en cest Parlement,’’ &c.’ It means—was the spokesman.

ADDITIONAL NOTE ON THE NINE-SYLLABLE LINE.

In my Preface to the Prioress’s Tale, 1st ed. p. lxiii., 2nd ed. p. lxiv., I give some examples of lines in which the first foot consists of a single syllable. In the present volume, we may note similar lines, viz. B. 404, 497, G. 341. As lines of this description are somewhat rare in modern English poetry, I may point out that there are twelve such lines in Tennyson’s Vision of Sin, l. 14-25.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

B = Group B.  C = Group C.  G = Group G.  H = Group H.  I = Group I.

The following are the principal contractions used:—

A.S. = Anglo-Saxon (i.e. Old English words in Bosworth's or Grein's Dictionaries).

Dan. = Danish (Ferrall and Repp).


E. = English.

E.E. = Early English (A.D. 1100-1250).

F. = French (Brachet).

G. = German.

Gk. = Greek.

Icel. = Icelandic (Cleasby and Vigfusson).

Ital. = Italian (Meadows).

Also the following: v. = verb in the infinitive mood; pr. s. or pt. s. means the third person singular of the present or past tense, except when 1 p. or 2 p. (first person or second person) is added; pr. pl. or pt. pl. means, likewise, the third person plural of the present or past tense; imp. s. means the second person singular of the imperative mood. Other contractions, such as s. for substantive, pp. for past participle, will be readily understood. In the references, when the letter is absent before a number, supply the letter last mentioned.

The references are to the Group and the line.

'Gloss. I.' means the Glossary to Dr. Morris's edition of the Prologue, Knightes Tale, &c.; 'Gloss. II.' means the Glossary to the Prioresse Tale, &c.; both in the Clarendon Press Series.

A.

A. for on, prep. in, during; a nyght, in the night, by night, G 880; a dayes, lit. on days, i.e. a-days, 1306. A.S. on, E.E. an, a.

Abased, pp. ashamed, disconcerted, B 568. O.Fr. esbaire, to frighten; from O.Fr. baer, Low Lat. badare, to gap, open the mouth; possibly from the interjection bak! of astonishment.

Abominable, adj. abominable,

Abbit, pr. s. (for abideth), abides, G 1175. A.S. edidan from edan, to wait.

Ablutions, s. pl. ablutions, washings, G 856.

Aboved, pp. ascended, stoned for,

Abough, pp. redeemed, stoned for. C 503. See Above.
Abusion, s. guile, imposture, deceit, B 214. *Abusion, f. an abusing, an error, fallacy, imposture, guile, deceit;* Cotgrave's French Dict.

Abye, v. to suffer for, pay (dearly) for, C 756, G 604; pp. Abought, atoned for, C 503. A. S. *abiegan,* to pay for; from *biegan,* to buy. See *Abought* in Gloss. I.

Accident, s. any property or quality of a thing, not essential to its existence; the outward appearance, C 539. See the note. (Lat. *cadere,*).

Accord, pr. s. subj. may agree, G 638; pp. Agreed, accorded, B 238. Fr. *accorder,* Lat. *accordare,* from *cor,* the heart.

Adoun, adv. down, G 1113, I 72; at the bottom, G 779. A. S. *dōne,* lit. off the down or hill; from *dōn,* a hill, a down.

Adversarie, s. enemy, G 1476. O. Fr. *adversaire* (Burguy), Lat. *adversarius;* from Lat. *ad,* to; and *vertere,* to turn.

Advertense, s. mental attention, consideration of a matter in hand, G 467. The sense is brought out in Chaucer's Troilus and Cressida, iv. 698, where Cressida is in a state of abstraction—*Her advertence is alway elleswhere.* From Lat. *vertere.*

Advoeats, s. advocate, intercessor, G 68. Lat. *advocare,* from *vox,* voice.

Affray, s. fear, terror, B 1137. See Gloss. II.

Affrayed, pp. afraid, frightened, B 503.

After, prep. according to, G 25; in expectation of, for, B 467. A. S. *after;* see Gloss. II.

Agæt, adj. amazed, terrified, B 677. See Gloss. I. and II.

Agayn, prep. against, B 580, C 427, G 1415; near, G 1279; opposite to, to meet, B 391; towards, to meet, B 390, G 1342. A. S. *ongein,* towards, against.

Agaynward, adv. back again, B 441.

Agoen, pp. gone away, C 810; pp. as adv. Agoon, ago, 436. A. S. *agean,* pp. of verb *agean,* to go by pass by, which is equivalent to G. *ergehen.*

Agryse, v. to shudder, to be seized with horror, B 614. A. S. *agrian,* to fear; cf. A. S. *griteit,* greatly, horrible; A. S. *gryre,* terror.

Al. adj. all; al a, the whole of, G 996; at al, at all, wholly, C 633. A. S. *all,* Goth. *alls,* all.

Al, conj. whether, G 840; although, 861, C 449, 451. Al so =a, B 396, H 80.

Albificiation, s. abfuscation, whitening, rendering of a white colour, G 805. Lat. *albificiatio-* *nem;* from *albus,* white, and *facere,* to make.

Aldersfirst, adv. first of all, G 434. A. S. *alra,* *alra,* gen. pl. of *all,* all, which became M. E. *aller,* *alder,* and *alther.* (Gloss. I. II.)

Alembykes, s. pl. alemics, G 774. *Alambique,* a limbeck, a stillatory, i.e. a vessel used in distilling, a retort; Cotgrave's French Dict. From Span. *alambique,* borrowed from Arabic al-ambik, which again seems to have been borrowed from Gk. *ἄμβηκ,* a cup, used by Dioscorides to mean the cap of a still.

Alo-stake, s. a stake projecting from an ale-house by way of a sign, 311. See the note.

Algate, adv. at any rate, C 292, G 318, 904. See below.

Algatea, adv. all the same, never-
GLOSSARIAL INDEX. 213

theless, at any rate (lit. by all ways, by all means), B 520, G 1096. Here gate means a way. Cf. Icel. gata, a path, road; G gasse, a street. From the root of get, rather than of go.

Alkaly, s. alkali, G 810. Arabic al-qali, the ashes of the plant glass-wort (Salicornia), which abounds in soda.

Alkamistre, s. alchemist, G 1204. Alchemy is Arabic al-kimin, where al is the Arabic article, and the sb. is borrowed from the Gk. χημεία, chemistry, equivalent to χυμεία, χυμευόμαι, a mingling, from χύω, to pour. (Etym. of the Gk. word somewhat uncertain.)

Alle and some, collectively and individually, one and all, B 263, C 336.

Alliance, s. alliance, C 605. (Gloss. I. II.)

Allye, s. ally, G 292, 297.

Almea-dede, s. alms-deed, alms-doing, B 1156.

Almesse, s. alms, B 168. A.S. almesse, borrowed from Lat. eleemosyna, which from Gk. ἔλεημος, pity, a bounty; from ἔλεειν, to have pity.

Al-so, conj. as, B 396, H 80. A.S. eall-sūd.

Alun, s. alum, G 813. O.F. alun, (Roquefort), Lat. alumen.

Alwey, adv. continually, unceasingly, regularly, I 11.

Am, in phr. it am I=it is I, B 1109.

Amalgaming, s. the formation of an amalgam, G 771. An amalgam is a pasty mixture of mercury with other substances (properly with a metal). The derivation is from Gk. μαλαγμα, an emollient, from μαλακειν, to soften.

Amased, pp. amazed, G 935.

Amis, adv. wrongly, C 642. (Gloss. II.)

Amonges, prep. amongst, G 608. (Gloss. II.)

Amounteth, pr. s. amounteth to, signifies, means, B 589. (Gloss. II.)

Amy, s. friend, C 318. F. ami, Lat. amicus.

An, lit. one, a; an eighte bushes, a quantity equal to eight bushes, C 771. A S. ān.

And, conj. if, G 145, 602, 1371.

Angle, s. angle (a technical term in astrology), B 304. (See note.) Lat. angulus.

Annexed, pp. attached, C 482.

Annuelor, s. a priest who received annualls (see the note), a chaplain, G 1012.

Anon, adv. immediately, forthwith, B 336, C 864, 881. A.S. on ān, lit. in one; e. e. in one minute.

Anon-ryght, adv. immediately, G 1141.

Anoyeth, pres. s. impers. it annoys, vexes, G 1036; imp. pl. Anoyeth, injure ye. (Gloss. II.)

Apayd, pp. pleased; yuel apayd, ill pleased, dissatisfied, G 921, 1049. (Gloss. II.)

Ape, s. a dupe (see the note), G 1313.

Apertening, pres. pt. appertaining, G 785. O. F. apartenir, Lat. ad and pertinent.

Apose, v. to appease, pacify, H 98. F. apaiser, derived from O. F. pais, peace; Lat. pacem, acc. of pax, peace.

Apostelles, s. pl. apostles, G 1002.

Apposed, pt. s. questioned, G 363.

See the note.

Argolle, s. potter's clay, G 813. From an O.F. form of Lat. argilla, clay.

Argumenten, pr. pl. argue, B 212.

Arist, pr. s. (contr. from ariseth) arises, B 265. A.S. ārisan.

Armeth, imp. 2 p. pl. arm, G 785.

Armoniak, adj. ammoniac, a
plied to pole, G 790, and sal, 798. In l. 790, it is a corruption of Lat. armeniacum, i.e. Armenian, belonging to Armenia. See notes.

Armure, s. armour, B 393, G 385. F. armure, O. F. armure, contr. from Lat. armatura.

Arrayed, pp. arranged, ordered, B 252. O. F. arrayer, from arrooi, order; which from sb. roi, from a Scandinavian source. Cf. Swed. reda, to prepare; Goth. garaidjan, to make ready. (Gloss. I. II.)

Arsenik, s. arsenic, G 778. Lat. arsenicum, Gk. ἄρσενικον, a name occurring in Dioscorides, s. 121. It signifies male, from the Gk. ἄρσης, a male.

Arfou, contr. for art thou, B 308, C 552, 718, G 424, etc.

Aryght, adv. aright, rightly, G 1418.

As, expletive, expressing a wish; as have, may He have, B 1061; as lat, i.e. pray let, 859.

As ferforth as, adv. as far as, G 1087.

As now, i.e. just now, B 740; on the present occasion, G 944: for the present, with the matter on hand, G 1019.

As swythe, adv. as quickly as possible, G 1030, 1194, 1294. M. E. swythe, quickly; from A. S. swēð, strong, severe.

Asaunche, adv. perhaps, G 828. Tyrwhitt (note to C. T. l. 7327) refers us to the present passage, to Tro. and Cress., i. 285, 292, and to Lydgate. It clearly means perchance, perhaps. The etymology was discussed, ineffectively, in Notes and Queries, 4 S. xi. 251, 346, 471; xii. 12, 99, 157, 217, 278. The difficulty has arisen from confusion with the modern askance, with which it may have nothing to do. The present word is related rather to O. F. ‘escance, ce qui est tombe en partage’ (Bur. and to O. F. ‘esca, ech- peine, tant soit peu’ (R Fort). The main part of the form is clearly our chance, O. F. ch cadentia from cadere, t happens. Cf. Chaucer’s p and mod. E. in case, per il. Our word to eschew is for same root, and the sb. an e appears in Low Latin in forms, such as escaeta, esca echanchia, excidentia, when prefix is, apparently, the Lat. ex. We find O. F. as = La illas, shewing that as-in (better as-caucent) stands for illas cadentias. The form for chance is Picard; see B. Hist. French Grammar, tran Kitchin, p. 21. Compare ch with cavalry, champagne campaign, &c. The loss of s in cances was very easy that the word is trisyllabic.

Asencioun, s. ascension, up, G 778.

Ascende, v. to ascend, rise (a in astrology), I 11.

Ascendent, s. ascendant, B

The ‘ascendant’ is that deg. the ecliptic which is rising: the horizon at the time of serving a horoscope, and casing a nativity.

A-sounder, adv. asunder, aps 1157. A. S. on-sundran, sep, from sundor, separate.

Aspye, s. spy, C 755. From espier, to espy, a word born from O. H. G. spehoun, to look cognate with Lat. spicere (spicere), Skt. spoṣ.

Assay, s. trial, G 1249, 1338 essai, a trial; from Lat. exa.

Assembled, pp. united, G 50 assembler, Lat. assimilare, collect, from Lat. simul, tw
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Assent, s. consent, conspiracy, C 758.
Assentest, pt. s. 2 p. consentedest, didst pay heed, G 233.
Asshes, s. pl. ashes, G 807. A. S. æce, æce, a cinder.
Assille, pr. s. 1 p. I absolve, pardon, C 387, 913. O. F. assoiler, Lat. absolvere.
At, prep. from, of (used with 2xed), G 544, 621.
'Blithe would I battle for the right
To ask some question at the sprite.'
Scott, Marmion, iii. 29.
Atake, v. to overtake, G 556, 585. Cf. Icel. taka, to take; the prefix is probably A. S. on, Icel. án. Cf. Icel. óta, a touching.
Atasir, s. evil influence, B 305.
See note, p. 126.
Atones, adv. at once, B 670. (Gloss. II.)
Atte, contr. for at the; as in atta fan, H 42; atta hasard, C 608; atta full, at the full, in completeness, B 203; atta laste, at the last, B 506, C 844, G 683.
Atwinn, adv. apart, G 1170. Modified from on twoónum, in two parts, where twoónum is dat. pl. of A. S. twoón, double, twin, by the influence of Icel. tvinnr, in pairs.
Atwo, adv. in two, in twin, B 600, 697, C 677, 936, G 528. For on two.
Avantage, s. convenience, profit; to do his advantage, to suit his own interests, B 729; advantage, G 731. O. F. avantage, profit, from prep. avant, before, which from Lat. ab ante.

Auantage, s. as adj. advantageous, B 146.
Auanae, pp. advanced, C 410. O. F. avancer, from avant.
Auctoritee, s. authority, C 387. O. F. auctoriteit, Lat. auctoritatem.
Auenture, s. chance, adventure, B 465; peril, B 1151, G 946; pl. Aventures, accidents, G 934. O. F. aventure, from semir, Lat. umire.
Aught, adv. by any chance, in any way, B 1034; at all, G 597.
Aungeles, s. pl. angels, B 642.
Auow, s. vow, B 334, 695. See note to C 695.
Auowe, v. to avow, own publicly, proclaim, G 642. O. F. avouer, avoer; from Lat. ad and vouer.
Autor, s. altar, B 451. O. F. auteur (commonly autel), Lat. altare.
Auyes, s. opinion, I 54. F. avis: from à and vis, Lat. visum, a thing seen, an opinion; from wederi, to seem.
Auyse us, v. refl. consider with ourselves, B 664; imp. pl. Auyseth, consider ye, C 583; pp. Auyised, well advised, C 690; Auysed me, taken counsel with myself, considered the matter, G 572. See above.
Awake, v. to wake, H 7. (Gloss. II.)
Awey, adv. away, from home, B 593; astray, 609. A. S. onweg; see Gloss. to Sweet's A. S. Reader.
Axinge, s. questioning, question, G 473. See above.
Ay, adv. aye, ever, for ever, B 295. A. S. aa, à.
Bak, s. cloth for the back, cloak, coarse mantle, G 881. See the note.

Balaunce, s. balance, G 611. *Lye in balaunce,* lay in the balance, i.e. advance as a pledge.

Bale, s. misfortune, sorrow, G 1481. A.S. bealo, torment, wickedness; Goth. balgan, to torment.

Bar, pt. s. bore, carried about, B 476 (cf. the name Christopher), G 221, 1264. See Ber.

Barbrie, adj. barbarian, B 281.

Late. barbarus, Gk. βαρβαρος.

Baronage, s. company of barons, retinue of lords, B 329. The more usual O.F. form is (the contracted) *barnage:* both from O.F. *baron,* a man. (Glos. I.)

Baskettes, s. pl. baskets, C 445. Of Celtic origin; W. *basked,* a basket; cf. W. *basg,* a plaiting; Gaelic *bascaid,* a basket.

Bataille, s. battle, G 386. F. *bataille,* Low Lat. *batalia,* neut. pl. signifying combats.

Baudy, adj. dirty, G 635. W. *bawaid,* dirty, base, dirt.

Bayte, v. to bait, feed, eat, B 466. Icl. *beita,* to feed, to make to bite; the causal of *bita,* to bite.

Be. See Ben.

Beautee, s. beauty, B 162. O.F. *biate, bellet,* from Lat. acc. *bellitatem,* from Lat. *bellus,* fair.

Beochen, adj. beechen, made of beech, G 1160. A.S. *beorcn,* beechen, *bece, bie,* a beech; cf. Late. *fagus.*

Bede, v. to offer, proffer, G 1065; 1 p. pl. *pt.* Bede, we bade, we directed, I 6r. A.S. *beddan,* to offer, bid; Goth. *bindan,* to bid.

Bee, s. a bee, G 195. A.S. *beo.*

An Old Sanskrit *bha* (meaning bee) is recorded in Böhltingk and Roth's Skt. Dictionary.

Beeoh, s. beech-wood, G 928. See Beochen.

Bekke, pr. s. I nod, C 396. Alluded to *beekon.*

Bel amy, i.e. good friend, bir friend, C 318. See note. O.F. *bel,* fair, amis, friend.

Belle, s. bell, 662, 664. A.S. *belle.*

Ben, v. to be, B 227; pr. pl. *Be,* are, 238; pr. s. subj. may be, is, G 1293; Be as be may, let it be as it may, G 935; imp. pl. *Bethe,* be ye, B 229, C 683, G 937; *Be,* been, G 262. A.S. *beon,* to be; cf. Lat. *fere,* Skt. *bhā.*


Berth hir on hond, beareth false witness against her, falsely affirms concerning her, B 620. See the note.

Bere, v. to bury, C 884; *ff.* Beryed, 405. A.S. *beorgan,* to cover over.

Berm, s. barm, i.e. yeast, G 813. A.S. *beorma,* barm, leaven, yeast, froth.

Bornu, s. dat. a barm, C 397. The proper form of the noun is *bern,* from A.S. *beran,* contrib. from *beren,* or *ber-cr,* i.e. a place for corn; from *ber,* barley, corn, and *crn,* a place for stowing.

Boste, s. beast, i.e. an animal without reason, brute animal, G 288; pl. *Bestes,* cattle, C 361, 365. O.F. *beste,* Lat. *bestia.*

Bosyden, adv. on one side, G 1416.

Bet, adj. comp. better, B 311, 1091, G 1410. A.S. *bet,* better, from a base *bat,* signifying good; cf. Goth. *batīza,* better.

Bet, adv. better, G 1283, 1344; hence *go bat,* go more quickly.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX. 217

go as fast as you can, C 667.
See the note.
Beth. See Be.
A.S. bētan, to kindle; lit. to mend, from base bat, good. See Bet; and Beete in Gloss. I.
A.S. biogan.
Bioched bones, s. pl. dice (lit. spotted or marked bones), C 656.
See the note.
Biolappe, ger. to clasp, grasp, enwrap, G 9. Allied to A.S. beclippan, to beclap, embrace. The A.S. elappan is to move, to palpitate; the Icel. klappa is to stroke; also to clap the hands.
Bidde, pp. bidden, commanded, B 440.
Here han bidde = have bidden; bidde is not the pt. pl., for that takes the form beda. See Bede. A.S. biddan; pt. i is beid, pl. wo budon; pp. boðen; cf. G. bieten, to offer.
Biddinge, pres. part. praying, G 140.
A.S. biddan, to pray; cf. G. bitten, to beseech.
Bifalfe, pr. s. subj. may befall, I 68; pp. befallen, B 726. A.S. befallan, to happen; from fellan, to fail.
Biforn, adv. before. B 704.
Biforn-hond, adv. before-hand, G 1317.
Bigyled, pp. beguiled, G 985, 1385. O.F. guiile, guile, from a Teutonic or Scandinavian source; cf. Icel. vel, an artifice, wile.
Bihete, pr. s. 1 p. I promise, G 707. Prefix be and A.S. hātan, to command, promise.
Bilynge, adv. behind, i.e. to come, future, G 1271. A.S. behindan.
Bilnowe, v. to confess, acknowledge, B 886. Lit. to be-know.
Bilune, s. faith, belief, G 63. Cf. A.S. geleifan, creed; with prefix ge instead of bi.
Biluneth, imp. pl. believe ye, G 1047. Cf. A.S. geleifan, to believe; with prefix ge for bi.
Birune, v. to take away, G 481. A.S. bereifian, to take away, rob, bereave.
Bisfe, v. to trouble, busy; bisie me, employ myself, G 758. A.S. byssian, to occupy, from bysgu, occupation, employment.
Bisinesse, s. busy endeavour, G 24. See Businesse.
Bisatad, pp. hard bestead, greatly imperilled, B 649. Lit. placed; from A.S. steede, a place, stead.
Bitook, pt. s. delivered, gave, committed (to the charge of), G 541. Formed from took, with prefix bi-. See Took.
Bitter, adj. bitter; bitter sweet, G 878. See the note. A.S. biter, bitter; from bician, to bite.
Bitwixen, prep. betwixt, between, C 832. A.S. between, betwix.
Bitymes, adv. betimes, early, soon, G 1008.
Bityd, v. to happen, C 900, G 400. Prefix bi, and A.S. tidan, to happen; from tid, time.
Biwreyen, v. to betray, G 150; Biwreye, C 823, G 147; pp. s. 2 p. Biwreyest, disclosed, B 773. See Gloss. II.
Bladdre, s. bladder, G 439. A.S. bladders; from A.S. blæwan, to blow, puff out.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Blake, adj. pl. black, G. 557. A.S. blæc.
Blakeberried, a, a-blackberrying, i.e. a-wandering at will, astray, C 406. See the note.
Blient, pr. s. blinks, G 1391; pp. Blient. blinded, deceived, 1077. A.S. blendan, to make blind (3 p. s. pr. blend, he blinds); from blind, blind.
Blired, adj. blearied, G 730. See the note. Probably only another form of blur. Cf. Bavarian plerr, a mist before the eyes (Wedgwood).
Blesseth hir, pr. s. crosses herself, B 449.
Blinne, v. to stop, cease, G 1171. A.S. blínan, to cease; contr. from bi, prefix, and línan, to cease.
Blisful, adj. blessed, B 845; happy, merry, 403. A.S. blís, joy; cf. blihte.
Blowe, pp. blown, filled out with wind, G 440. A.S. blíwan, to blow; cf. Lat. fláre.
Blundreth, pr. s. runs heedlessly, G 1414; i p. pl. pr. Blundren, we fall into confusion, we confuse ourselves, become mazed, 670. From Icel. blínda, to doze, blíndr, a doze; connected with A.S. bendan, to blend, confuse, and blind, blind.
Blynde, adj. pl. blind, G 658. A.S. blínd. See above.
Blynde with, ger. to blind (the priest) with, G 1151.
Bodies, s. pl. bodies, metallic bodies (metals) answering to the celestial bodies (planets), G 820, 825.
Boist, s. box, C 307. O.F. boiste (Fr. boîte), Low Lat. accus. boxida, busida, from Gk. αυξίδα, accus. of αὐξία, a box, a box; properly a box made of boxwood; Gk. κύψεσ, Lat. bursus, the box-tree.

Bole armoniak, Armenian day, G 790. See the note.
Boles, gen. sing. bull's, G 797.
Bolle, s. a bowl, often a wooden bowl, G 1210. A.S. bolla.
Bond, pt. s. bound, B 634. A.S. bindan, to bind; pt. t. ic band.
Bone, s. petition, prayer, G 234. 356. Not from A.S. bén, a prayer, but from the cognate Scandinavian form; Icel. bón, a prayer. Now spelt boon.
Bora, s. borax, G 790. 'Borax, biberate of soda; a salt formed by a combination of boracic sci with soda. Fr. borax, Span. borax, Arabic būrāṣ, nitre, salt peter; from Arab. baraqa, to shine;' Webster. But rather borrowed from Pers. būrākh, borax.
Bord, s. table, B 430; board, i.e. meals, G 1017. A.S. bord, a board, a table.
Boast, s. boast, B 401, C 764; pride, swelling, G 441. Probably of Celtic origin, as we find not only W. boast, a boast, bostio, to boast, but also Gaelic bosta, a boast, vain-glory, bostaile, boasting, bostaile, a boaster.
Bote, s. relief, G 1481. E. boot, A.S. bót, a remedy; from the base bat, good. See Bet.
Botel, s. bottle (of hay), H 14; pl. Botels, bottles, C 871.
Botme, s. dat. bottom, G 1351. A.S. boðm, dat. boðm; cognate with Lat. fundus, Gk. κάτωστος.
Bothe, adj. both, B 221.
Boughte, pt. s. bought; bought agayn, redeemed, C 766. See Beye.
Bourde, s. jest, H 81. O.F. bourde, a jest, pleasantry; supposed to be a contraction of bohorte, a mock tournament, knighthly exercise, from horda, a
Glossarial Index

barrier, the lists. The prefix bo-
is explained from O.F. bot, a
blow. stroke. See Burguy; and
Bord in Gloss. I.

Bourde, pr. s. 1 p. 1 jest, C 778.
See above.

Boweth, imp. pl. 2 p. bow ye, C
909. A. S. bugan, to bow, bend;
cf. Lat. fugare, to turn to flight;
Skt. bhuj, to bend.

Braek, pt. s. broke, B 288. A. S.
brecan, pt. t. braæc.

Brast, pt. s. burst, B 697; pl.
Braste, 671. A. S. berstan, to
burst; pt. t. ic bræst. Either the
r was transposed in course of
time, or, this form was brought
about by Danish influence. Cf.
Icel. bresta, to burst; pt. t.
brast. (Gloss. I.)

Brede, s. breadth, G 1228. A. S.
bræðo, breadth; from bræd, broad.

Breech, s. breeches, C 948. A. S.
bræc, breeches, brogues, pl. of
bróc, a brogue; the form brogue
is Celtic; cf. Gaelic brógaíse.
breeches, brog, a shoe. The A. S.
bræc was also borrowed from
Celtic.

Breke, v. to break, C 926; breeke
his day, fail to pay at the ap-
pointed time, G 1040; imp. s.
Breck, interrupt, I 24. A. S.
brecan.

Brennen, v. to burn, G 313;
Brenne, G 1192; pr. s. Brennen, B
964; pr. s. subj. Brenne, may
burn, G 1423; imp. s. Brenne, G
515; pt. s. Brende, burnt, B 289;
pp. Brent, burnt, G 759. 1197.
1407; pres. pt. Brenning, G 118,
802; Brenninge, G 114. Icel.
brenna, to burn; cf. A. S. byrnan,
beornan, Goth. brinna, Ger.
brennen.

Breynye, pt. s. drew, B 837. A. S.
gebregdan or bregdan, to pull, to
draw a sword; also to weave,
braid; cf. Icel. brégða, to draw,
to braid. See Abreyde in
Gloss. I.

Brid, s. bird, G 1342. A. S.
brid, the young of birds, a brood.

Brimstoun, s. brimstone, sulphur,
G 798, 824, 1439. Lit. burning-
stone; cf. Icel. brenni-steinn,
sulphur; from brenna, to burn, and
steinn, a stone.

Brooque, s. pl. brooches, C 908.
(Gloss. II.)

Brode, adv. broadly, wide awake,
G 1430.

Brother, gen. sing. brother's, G
1432.

Bulle, s. papal bull, C 909; pl.
Bulles, 336. Lat. bulla, the
lead ball, with a stamp on it,
affixed to a document.

Burials, s. pl. burial-places, i.e.
the Catacombs, G 186. Originally
burials was the singular form of
the sb. (see the note).

Business, s. business, industry, G
5. See Bisinessse.

But, conj. except, unless, B 431, C
741, G 211, 984; But-if, unless,
B 636. A. S. buitan, buti, except;
from prefix bi, and utan, use. out.

By, prep. about, concerning, with
respect to, G 1005, 1438. A. S.
bi, by.

By, v. to buy; go by, go to buy,
G 1204. See Beye.

Byisped, pp. tricked, G 1385.
See Iape.

C.

Cacoche, v. to catch, G 11. O. Fr.
cacher, Low Lat. captiare, from
Lat. captiare, to take captive. Its
doubtless is chase.

Caltif, s. caftif, wretch, C 728.
O. Fr. caif (F. chef), from Lat.
capius, a captive.

Cake, s. loaf (lit. a cake), C 323.
Icel. and Swed. kake, Dan. kage.
Calooning, s. calcination, G 771. From Lat. calc.
Calomeloum, s. calcination; of c., for calcining, G 804.
Can, pr. s. knows, G 600, 620, 1092. A.S. can (1 and 3 p.), from cuman, to know.
Canevas, s. canvas, G 939. F. canevas; cf. Ital. canevaccio. The derivation is from Lat. cannabis, Gk. κάναβας, hemp.
Canon, s. the 'Canon,' the title of a book by Avicenna, C 890. See the note.
Canstow, contr. for canst thou, B 632, C 521.
Capel, s. horse, nag, H 64. From Lat. caballus, a nag; cf. W. caffyl, a horse.
Capitayn, s. captain, C 582.
Capoun, s. pl. capons, C 856.
Cardiaole, s. pain about the heart, C 513. Cotgrave gives Cordiaole, as an adj., one meaning being 'wrung at the heart.' The deriv. is from Gk. καψία, the heart.
Care, s. anxiety, trouble, B 514; pl. Cares, G 347. A. S. careu, care, anxiety; not Lat. cura. See Cure.
Carieden, pt. pl. carried, G 1219. (Gloss. II.)
Carl, s. churl, country fellow, C 717. A. S. carle, Icel. karl, a man, male. The A. S. also had eerol, whence E. churl.
Carolinges, s. dat. carolling, singing, song, G 1345. (Gloss. I.)
Caryinge, s. carrying, C 875.
Cas, s. circumstance, case, condition, B 305, 311, 983. F. cas, Lat. casus.
Cast, pt. s. threw, H 48; cast up, B 508; imagined, contrived, devised, B 406, 584, 805; pl. exhaled, emitted, G 244; pr. pl. Casten, cast about, debate, B 212; pr. s. Casteth, considers, G 1414; refl. casts himself, devotes himself, G 738; pp. Cast, planned, devised, C 880. Scandinavian; Icel. kasta, to throw. (Gloss. II.)
Cateil, s. property, chattels, C 594. (Gloss. II.)
Cause, s. reason, B 252.
Cementing, s. cementing, hermetically sealing, G 817. From Lat. caementum, cement.
Cerdd, pp. as adj. waxed, G 808. See the note. Cf. Lat. ceratun, a salve whose chief compound is wax, cera. See cérat in Brachet's Fr. Etym. Dict.
Ceriously, adv. minutely, with full details (see note), B 185. The word is glossed by cérioso in the Ellesmere MS., and Ducange has 'Sérieoso, fuse, minutatur, articulatim.' From Lat. series, order.
Certein, adj. a certain quantity of; certein gold, a stated sum of money, B 242; certein treasor, a quantity of treasure, B 443; a sh., Certeyn, a certain sum, a fixed quantity, G 776, 1024.
Cerites, adv. certainly, G 1478. (Gloss. II.)
Cesse, v. to cease, B 1066; pt. s. Cessede, G 124; Cessed, 528. F. cesser, Lat. cessare.
Chaffare, s. chaffer, traffic, G 1421; Chaffar, merchandise, B 138. For chaf-fare; from A. S. cēdf, purchase, fare, proceedings. (Gloss. I.)
Chaffare, ger. to trade, barter, deal, traffic, B 139. See above.
Chalk-stoon, s. a piece of chalk, G 1207.
Chambro, s. chamber, B 167. F. chambre, Lat. camera.
Chanon, s. canon, G 573 (see the note); Chanoun, 972.
Chapmen, s. pl. traders, merchants, B 135. See Chaffare.
Chapmanode, s. trade, barter, B 143.
Charge, s. burden, weight, imp.
portance; of that no charge, for that no matter, it is of no importance, G 749. The original sense is a burden, load; F. charger, to load, from Low Lat. carriicare, to load.

Chaunce, s. 'chance.' a technical term in the game of hazard, C 653; luck, G 593. O. Fr. chance, Lat. cadentia, that which falls out, from cadere, to fall (used in dice-playing).

Cheese, imp. s. choose, G 458; pt. s. chose, G 38. See Cheese.

Cherokee, s. a church, G 546.

Chere, s. cheer, i.e. mien, G 1233; entertainment, B 150. O. Fr. chere, Low Lat. cara, the face.

Cheryl, s. churl, C 289. A. S. ceorl; see Carl.


Cheue, in phr. yuel mot he cheue = ill may he end, or ill may he thrive, G 1225. F. cheuir, to compass, manage, from chef, Lat. caput.

Chit, pr. s. chides (contr. from chideth), G 921. A. S. clidan, to chide.

Chiteren, v. to chatter, prattle, G 1397.

Chiuachoe, s. feat of horsemanship, H 50. O. Fr. cheuauche, cheuache, an expedition on horseback, from vb. cheuacher, chevalcher, to ride a horse; which from cheval, a horse, Lat. caballus.

Chiuailrye, s. chivalry, company of knights, B 235. Cf. E. cavalry, from the same source, viz. Fr. cheval, a horse, Lat. caballus.

Cink, num. cinque, five, C 653. Fr. cinq, Lat. quinqus.

Citee, s. city, B 289.

Citrinization, s. citronising, the turning to the colour of citron, a process in alchemy, G 816. See note.

Clappe, pr. pl. prattle, chatter, G 905. A. S. clappan, to clap together, make a noise by clapping. (Gloss. II.)

Clause, s. sentence, B 251.

Clereene, s. clearness, brightness, glory, G 403. O. Fr. cler, Lat. clarus; with A. S. suffix -ness.

Clene, adv. clean, entirely, G 625, 1425. The A. S. adv. clene has the same sense.

Cleo, t pr. pl. pres. we call, name, G 827; pr. pl. call, B 191, G 2; pr. s. call, C 675 (here clepeth is sing. rather than plural; see Men), also pp. Clept, named, G 863. A. S. eliptian, cloeopian, to call. (Gloss. I.)

Clerigial, adj. cleryly, learned, G 752.

Clerken, s. pl. learned men, B 480.

Clay, s. clay, G 807. A. S. cldeg.

Clinke, v. to ring, sound, clink, tingle, C 664. Cf. Icel. klingja, Swed. klinga, Dan. klinge, to tingle, ring; also Du. klinken, to tingle. The word is probably of A. S. origin, as shown by the Dutch form.

Cloastro, s. cloister, G 43.

Clokke, s. dat. clock, I 5.

Cloos, adj. close, secret, G 1369.

Clote-leef, s. a leaf of the burdock or Clote-bur (see note), G 577. A. S. elate, a burdock; cf. Du. kloot, a ball, Icel. klóti, a round knob, &c.

Clowt, s. a cloth, C 736; pl. Cloutes, cloths, portions of a garment, rags, 348. A. S. elúi, a little cloth.

Coagulat, pp. coagulated, clotted, G 811. Lat coagulatus.

Cofre, s. coffer, money-box, G 836. O. Fr. cofre, cofin, Lat. cophiwm.

Gk. ἄξον, a ball.
Cokes, s. pl. cooks, C 538. A. S. cæc, but borrowed from Lat. copius.

Cokkes, a corruption of Goddess, H 9, I 29.

Colde, v. to grow cold, B 879.

Coles, s. pl. coals, G 1114. A. S. coil, coal.

Comaundour, s. commander, B 495.

Combust, pp. burnt, G 811. Lat. combustus, burnt; from uerere, to burn.

Come, v. to come; Come therby, come by it, acquire it, G 1395; pr. s. Comth, comes, B 407, 603, C 781; pl. pl. Come, came, G 1220; Comen, B 145; pp. Comen, B 266; ben comen = are come, 1130. A. S. cuman.

Come, s. coming, G 343. A. S. cyne, a coming; from cuman, to come.

Commune, v. to commune, converse, G 982. O. Fr. communier, Lat. communicare.

Commune, adj. general, common, B 155. O. Fr. commun, Lat. communis.

Company, s. company, B 134. (Gloss. II.)

Compas, s. enclosure, continent; tryne compas, the threefold world, containing earth, sea, and heaven, G 45. O. Fr. compas, measure; from Lat. sumpsus, a step.

Concoit, s. idea, G 1214.

Conclude, v. to include, put together, G 429; to attain to a successful result, 773; 1 p. s. pr. I draw the conclusion, 1472. Lat. conclusere.

Conclusioun, s. result, successful end of an experiment, G 672.

Confiture, s. composition, C 862. Fr. confiture, a mixture, preserve, from confire, to preserve, pickle; Lat. conficiere, in late sense of to 'make up' a medicine; from facere.

Confort, s. comfort, G 32. O. Fr. conforter, Lat. confortari, to strengthen; from fortis, strong.

Confounde, v. to bring to confusion, B 362; pp. Confounded, overwhelmed with sin, destroyed in soul, G 137. Cf. the phrase—'Let me never be confounded,' in Latin—'Ne confundar in aeternum.'

Confus, pp. as adj. put to confusion, convicted of folly, G 463. O. Fr. confondre, to confound; pp. confus; Lat. confundere, pp. confusus; from fundere, to pour.

Conjоyninge, s. conjoining, conjunction, G 95. O. Fr. conjoindre, Lat. consingere, to join together.

Conne, pr. pl. 1 p. we can, are able, B 483; pr. s. subj. he may know; al conne he, whether he may know, G 845. A. S. cuman, to know, has pr. pl. cumnum; pr. s. subj. cunn.

Conning, s. skill, B 1099, G 653, 1087. A. S. cunning, experience; from cuman, to know.

Conquered, pt. pl. conquered, B 542. O. Fr. conquérre, to conquer, acquire; from quærre, Lat. quærere, to seek.

Conseil, s. council, B 204; counsel, 425; secrecy, 777; a secret, 561; C 819, G 145, 192. Fr. conseil, Lat. concilium.

Conserved, pp. kept, G 387.

Considereth, imp. pl. 2 p. consider, G 1388.

Constable, s. constable, governor, B 512. O. Fr. constable, Low Lat. consestabulus, a corruption of conestabulus, a word formed by uniting comes stabuli (count of the stable) into one word.

Constablesse, s. constable's wife, B 539. See above.

Contenance, s. pretence, appearance, G 1264. O. Fr. contenance, countenance, from contenir, Lat.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX. 223

e, to contain; from Lat. con.

e, adj. contrary; in con
n contradiction, G 1477.

country, B 434. F.
from Lat. contraria, the
over against one, from
against. (Gloss. I.)

copper, G 829. Late
prun, copper; from Cy-
er, brass of Cyprus.

a grain, C 863. A. S.
grain; cognate with Lat.
in. Thus corn and grain
bles.

e re, s. registrar, secretary.

See the note. Lat. cor-
bus, a registrar, clerk to a
ate; from corniculum, a
apod ornament; from cor-

in. s. pl. crowns, G 221.
lat. corona.

adj. corrosive, G 853.
bones, an intentionally
al oath, composed of
dominum, 'the Lord's body,
oxen,' C 314. See the

pun, s. correction, I 60.
ody, C 304, H 67; corpse.
O. Fr. cors, Lat. corpus.

er. to lay, G 1152;
uched, laid, placed, 1157;
uched, laid, 1182, 1200.
ouchier, colcher, to place,
dlocare; from locus, a

s. could, G 291. A. S.
t. of cunnan, to know,

a, s. covetousness, C 424.
covetise, covoitis, Low
bition, from cupidus, de-
which from super, to

Couent, s. convent, G 1007. O.
Fr. covent, Lat. conventus, a
coming together; from uenire, to
come.

Counterfete, v. to imitate, C 447;
pp. Counterfeted, imitated, B 746,
793. (Gloss. II.)

Cours, s. course, B 704; life on
carth, G 387. F. cours, Lat.
cursus; from currere, to run.

Cradel, s. cradle, G 122. A. S.
cradel; perhaps of Celtic origin.
Cf. Irish craithdail, W. cryd, a
cradle, Gaelic creathall, a cradle;
allied to Lat. crates, a hurdle.

Crafty, adj. skilful, clever, G 1290.
A. S. craft, knowledge, skill.

Crased, pp. cracked, G 934. The
O. F. only has escraser, to break,
but this is formed as if from eraser.
It is of Scandinavian origin; cf.
Swed. säd i kras, to dash in pieces.

Creadne, s. belief, object of faith,
B 340; Creadne, creed, 915.
O. F. creance, from croire, to
believe, Lat. credere.

Creatour, s. Creator, C 901.
Credo, s. creed, belief, G 1047.

Cristal, adj. crystal, C 347. O. F.
cristal, from Lat. crystallum, Gk.
kristallos, ice, crystal; from
kratos, frost.

Cristen, adj. Christian, B 222.

Cristendom, s. the Christian re-
ligion, B 351; Christianity, G
447.

Cristenly, adv. in a Christian
manner, B 1122.

Cristianitce, s. company of Chris-
tians, B 544.

Cristned, pp. baptised, B 226, 355.
G 352.

Crommes, s. pl. crumbs, G 60.
A. S. creme, a crumb, a fragment.

Cronze, s. crone, bag, B 432.
Apparent of Celtic origin; cf.
Gaelic crónna, prudent, penurious,
old, ancient; crom, little,
mean, crom, to without, essays,
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

blast; crionach, withering, also a term of extreme personal contempt.

Croper, s. crupper, G 566. Cf. F. croupière. From O. F. crope, croupe (F. croupe), the rump of an animal; apparently of Scandinavian origin; cf. Icel. kryppa, a hump, hunch; Icel. kroppr, a hump; Dan. krop, the trunk of the body. See CROPPE in Gloss. I.

Croslet, s. a crucible, G 1147; also CROSELET, 1117; pl. CROSLETS, 793. A diminutive of cross, apparently intended as a sort of translation of Lat. crucibulum. But the latter is not derived (as might be supposed) from Lat. crux, a cross. See Crucible in Webster and Wedgwood.


Crowding, s. pressure, motive power, B 299. See the note.

Croweth, pr. s. refl.: him croweth = crows, C 362. A.S. crowan, to crow, croak.

Croys, s. cross, B 450, 844, C 532. O. F. crois, Lat. cruœm, acc. of crux.

Cucurbites, s. pl. cucurbites, G 794. 'Cucurbite, a chemical vessel originally made in the shape of a gourd, but sometimes shallow, with a wide mouth, and used in distillation; ' Webster. From Lat. cucurbita, a gourd.

Cure, s. care, endeavour, B 188; honest cure = care for honourable things, C 557; in cure = in her care, in her power, B 230. Fr. cure, Lat. cura, care.

Cursednesses, s. wickedness, C 400, 498, 638, G 1101. A.S. cursian, to curse; curs, a curse.

Curteisye, s. courtesy, B 166. O. F. curteisie; from O. F. cort, a court, Lat. cothors. (Gloss. I)

Cut, s. a lot, C 793 lot; originally t from cwt, short.

D.

Dagger, s. dagger, the root dag, with dagges = pierces, piercing. Morte A (E. E. T. S.), 2 Celtic origin; cf. pierce, dag, a dag.

Daliauaces, s. play, G 592. (Gloss. I)

Dame, s. mother, C Lat. domina, lady.

Dampnables, adj. 473.

Dampnacioun, s. 500.

Dampned, pp. conG 310. O. F. damnare, to cond.


Dawsen, pt. pl. d are dazzled, H dasask (l. e. dasa weary; dasa3r, also Swed. dasa doze.

Date, s. a date, D 1411. F. date, thing given.

Day, s. day; also, a for the payment money, G 1040.

Debat, s. strife, débat, from vb. from batire, Lat.

Deed, pp. as adj. 64, 204.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

adv. deadly, mortally, G 467, 613.

pl. dice, C 467, 613.

s. dishonour, C 612.

pp. defamed, slandered, F. difjamer, Lat. diffamatus, defame.

s. fault, sin, C 370; a 3954. (Gloss. II.)

s. v. to forbid, C 590; send, G 1470; pp. Dejordidden, C 510. F. dejordie. 

s. pl. descons, G 547. conus. 

t; every del, every whit, G 1169. A.S. deji, a 

s. pl. delights, pleasures, G 3. F. delices, Lat.

s. dealt, G 1074. The sien, from A.S. deijian, to rom deji, a part.

delight, B 1135, G 1070. jit, deejit; from Lat. delit, to delight. The modern delight is due to an abandoned connection with 
de, s. demand, question, Demande, G 430. O.F. de, from Lat. de et man-

. . to suppose, B 1091; to conclude, 1091; to give a G 595; pr. s. Demeth, 689; imp. pl. Demeth, ye. 933. A.S. diman, from dom, judgment.

i, pr. s. parted, B 1158; C 512, 514. O.F. deij, Lat. dispositus, from dispositio, which from pars, a 
g, s. departure, B 260; 
ge, 293. 

the deep, the sea, B 455, 77.

A.S. deijp, deep water, neut. sb.; from deijp, adj. deep.

Depper, adv. comp. deeper, more deeply, B 630, G 250.

Dere, adj. (voc.) dear, D 447, G 257, 321. The noun is also dere; the final e is due to the A.S. form.

A.S. deijre, dryer, dear.

Dere, adv. dearly; to dere, too dearly, C 293.

Derkast, adj. superl. darkest, B 304. A.S. deijre, dark.

Desensories, s. pl. G 792. “Descensories, vessels used in chemistry for extracting oils per descensum;” Tyrwhitt. From Lat. descendere, to descend.

Desolat, adj. deserted, alone; holden desolat, shunned, C 598. Lat. desolatus, from desolare, to waste, make lonely; from de and solus, alone.

Despit, s. spite, B 391; vexation, dishonour, 699. O.F. dejpit (F. depit), Lat. despectus, a looking down upon; from de, down, and specere, to look. (Gloss. I.)

Despitously, adv. despitefully, maliciously, B 604.

Desport, s. amusement, sport, G 592. O.F. desport; from Lat. prefix dis and portare, to carry. Similarly to divert is from Lat. uertere, to turn.

Destourbe, v. to disturb; destourbe of, to disturb in, C 340. O.F. deijorber, from Lat. prefix dis and turbare, to confuse; from turbra, a crowd.

Deue, adj. pl. deaf, G 286. The sing. is deijf. From A.S. deijf.

Deuyse, v. to relate, tell, B 154. 349, 613. G 266. (Gloss. II.)


Deyntoe, adj. dainty, C 530, et al.
special or peculiar pleasure, B 139;

s. pl. Deynettes, dainties, 419.
O. F. dainete, agreeableness; from
Lat. acc. dignitatem, worthiness.

Digne, adj. worthy, honoured, C
693; suitable, B 778. F. digne,
Lat. dignus, worthy.

Dilatatiooun, s. diffuseness, B 232.
Formed like a French sb. from
Lat. acc. dilationem, which from
dilatare, to make broad, from
latus, broad.

Disclauned, pp. slandered, B 674.
From O. F. prefix dis, Lat.
dis, and F. esclandre, formerly
escandale, from Lat. scandalum,
which from Gk. skandalo.

Discovere, v. to reveal, G 1465;
2 p. s. pr. Discoverest, reveals,
696; pp. Discovered, revealed,
1468. O. F. descouvrir, from Lat.
prefixes dis and con, and operire,
to hide.

Disease, s. lack of ease, trouble,
distress, misery, B 616, G 747.
H 97.

Displeasaunc, s. pl. displeasures,
annoyances, C 490.

Disport, s. pleasure, B 143. See
Desport.

Disposed, pp. inclined; wel dis-
posed, in good health (the con-
verse of indisposed), H 33.

Diffuseur, ger. to part, G 875.
From O. F. seurrer, Lat. separare,
to separate.

Dissimulath, pr. s. dissimulates,
acts foolishly, G 466. Lat. dis-
simulare, to pretend that a thing
is not.

Dissimulinge, s. dissembling, G
1073.

Diverse, adj. pl. diverse, B 211.
Doon, v. to do, G 166; to cause,
as in doon us henge, cause us to
be hung, C 790; do wercere, cause
to be wrought or built, G 545;
ger. Done, to do, B 770, G 932;
for to done, a fit thing to do, 1

Domb, adj. dumb, B 1055; pl.
Dombe, G 286. A. S. dumb.

Dome, s. judgment, C 637. A. S.
dom (Gloss. II.)

Dominacoun, s. domination, do-
minion, C 560; power, H 57.
"From Lat. dominus, a lord.

Dore, s. door, G 1137, 1142, 1217.
The word is dissyllabic; A. S. dura.

Dorste. See Dar.

Doten, v. to grow foolish, act
foolishly, G 983. Cf. F. ra-douter,
to dote; but the F. is borrowed
from a Low-German source, which
appears in the Du. dutten, to take
a nap, to mope, from dut, a nap,
sleep, dotage.

Doubleass, s. duplicity, G 1300.

Doughter, s. daughter, B 151.
A. S. duktor.

Doutte, s. doubt, B 777, G 833;
out of doubt, doubtful, B 390, C
323. F. doute, doubt, from douter.
Lat. dubitare, to doubt.

Doutteles, adv. doubtless, C 493,
G 16, 1425; without hesitation,
B 226.

Dowue, s. dove, pigeon, C 397.
Of A. S. origin, though not easily
found; cf. Icel. dufa, Swed. duva,
Du. duff. (Sommer's A. S. Dict.
gives the form duwa.)

Dradden, pt. pl. subj. should dread,
should fear, G 15. See Dredge.

Draff, s. draft, refuse, chaff, 1 45.
GLOSsARIAL INDEX.

trabbe, lees, dregs; Du. draf, hog's-wash; Icel. dráf, draff.

in, s. dragon, G 1435. F. drin, Lat. draconem, Gk. δράκος.

s. fear, G 204; doubt, C it is no drede, there is no , B 869; without drede, but doubt, 196. A.S. dréd, fear.

3, v. to fear, G 320; ger. to , to be feared, 437; 2 p. s. why, thou mayest dreaded, 477. dréddan, to fear.

1en, v. to be drowned, B pp. Drenched, G 949. The drenocan is properly transitive, ing, to make to drink, to h.

yang, s. drowning, B 485; thing, B 489.

, v. to prepare (himself), get , B 1100; address (myself), ; v. refl. address himself, G ; pt. s. refl. Dresseth him, res herself, B 265; pr. pl. en, prepare themselves, set rd, B 263; Dresse, 416; pr. pl. direct themselves, i.e. take places in order, 416. F. r; from Lat. directus, direct. Brachet.)

2, pp. drunk, H 17. A.S. en, pp. of drenocan, to drink.

slewe, adj. drunken, over-with drink, C 495. From .. s. verb drincken, to drink. anesse, s. drunkenness, B C 484. A.S. druncennes; drenaken, to drink.

3, s. drop, 512. A disyll. word; A.S. dropa, a drop; trophe.

, pt. s. drew (himself), G A.S. dragan, to draw; pt. bóg or ic drók. I drew.

v. to drive; drywe the day away, pass the time, C 628. A.S. drifan, to drive.

Dulle, adj. pl. dull, stupid, B 202. A.S. dol, foolish; put for dwal, as shown by A.S. gedwolgod, a false god or idol; Goth. dwals, foolish; cf. Du. dol, mad, G. toll, mad.

Dulleth, pr. s. makes dull, stupifies, G 1093, 1172.

Dun, s. the dun horse, (see note), H 5. A.S. dun, dun; of Celtic origin; cf. W. dun, dun, dusky, Gaelic donn, brown.

Dure, v. to last, B 187, 1078. F. durer, Lat. durare, to last; from durus, hard.

Dwelle, pt. s. dwelt, B 134; pl. Dwelten, 550. Grein gives an A.S. dwellan, to hinder; cf. Icel. dvelja, to delay, Swed. dväljas, to delay; Sw. dvala, torpor, connects the word with A.S. dwol, dol. See Dulle.


E.

Eok, adv. moreover, also, B 140, 444. A.S. éc, eke, also, also.

Eet, pt. s. ate. C 510. (Gloss. II.)

Effect; in effect, in fact, in reality, G 511.

Eft, adv. again, B 792, G 1163. A.S. éft, again, back; cf. A.S. éft, again, allied to after.

Eftson, adv. soon after, G 1288; soon after this, H 65; hereafter, G 933; again, B 909. From A.S. éft, éft, again, and sóna, soon.

Eggement, s. instigation, incitement, B 842. A hybrid word; the suffix -ment is French, but the first part is from A.S. eggian, to excite, from a root eg, eno(e)x with the Indo-European root ok, sharp.

Q 2
Glossarial Index.

Egresomelin, s. agrimony, G 800.
Lat. agromenia, argemonia, Gk. ἀγρευμίαν; so called, apparently, because supposed to cure a white spot in the eye. Gk. ἀγρεῦμον; which from ἄγρος, white. (Webster.)

Eighte, num. eight, C 771. A dissyllabic word; A. S. eahhta, eight; cognate with Lat. octo, Gk. ὀκτὼ.

Eleccion, s. choice, 'election' (a technical term), B 312. See note, p. 116.

Elementos, s. pl. elements, G 1460.
Elf, s. fairy, B 754. A. S. elf, elf, a genius; Icel. dífr.
Elles, adv. otherwise, G 1131, 1377. B 644; elles god forbode, God forbid it should be otherwise, G 1046. A. S. elles.

Elleswher, adv. elsewhere, G 1130.

Elxir, s. elixir, G 863. Arabic el ʾiksir, the philosopher's stone.

Elushe, adj. lit. elvish, implicate, mysterious; but used in the sense of foolish, G 751, 842. Cf. Icel. difalægr, silly, from dífr, an elf, fairy.

Embassadour, s. ambassador, C 603.
Embassadre, s. embassy, negociation, B 233.
Empoisoning, s. poisoning, C 891.

Empoysoner, s. poisoner, C 894. (Gloss. 11.)

Emprise, s. enterprise, B 348; Empyre, G 605. O. F. emprise, an enterprise; from the verb prendre. Lat. præhendere, to take, with prefix em- = in.

Empte, v. to empty, make empty, G 741; Emptent, 1404. A. S. ge-amigian, to disengage from. A. S. amig, vacant, at leisure; from āmīn, leisure.

Enbibing, s. imbibition, absorption, G 814.

Encomence, v. to offer incense, G 395, 413. F. encenser, from l'encens, Lat. incensum (used by Isidore of Seville), incense; which from Lat. incendère, to burn.

Encorporing, s. incorporation, G 815. From Lat. corpus, body.

Encreses, s. increase, B 237, G 18. See below.

Encresse, v. to increase, B 1068.
O. F. encroistre, to increase, from Lat. increbere, which from increbere, to grow.

Ende, s. end, result, B 481. A dissyllabic word; A. S. ende, end.
Endelos, adj. endless, B 951.

Endetad, pp. indebted, G 734. O. F. s'endetter, to be indebted; from O. F. dete (F. dette), a debt. Lat. debita, from debere, to owe.

Endyten, v. to indite, write, B 781; Endyte, G 80. O. F. enditter, to instruct, from dífr, to write a work; Lat. dictare, to dictate; from dicere, to say.

Engyn, s. genius, skill, G 339. F. engin, Lat. ingenium, skill.

Enluting, s. securing with 'lute,' daubing with clay, &c., so as to exclude air, G 766. F. luter, to secure with 'lute,' from Lat. lutex, clay.

Enquere, v. inquire, search into, B 602. O. F. enquierre, to inquire into; O. F. querre, to seek; Lat. quaerere, to seek.

Enquiringe, s. inquiry, B 883.

Ensamples, s. pl. examples, C 435. O. F. example (Roquefort); from Lat. exemplum.

Entenciou, s. intention, intent. C 408.

Entrente, s. will, B 824; intention, B 867; G 998; design. C 432; plan, B 147, 206; endevour, G 6. O. F. entente, intent;
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

from entendre, to intend, Lat. intendere.

Enteringe, pr. part. entering, I 12. F. entrer, Lat. intrare, to enter.

Enveloped, pp. wrapped up, en-veloped, involved, C 942. O. F. enveloper, to envelope, cover; derived (says Bracher) from a radical velop, of unknown origin. Perhaps this radical is the same as appears in the M. E. verb to enveloppe, used by Wycklif for to wrap; and cf. E. wrap.

Er, adv. before, B 420, G 1273; prep. before, C 892. Er that, before that, G 375. A. S. ér, before, formerly.

Erme, v. to grieve, to feel sad, C 312. See the note. A. S. yrman, to afflict, grieve, make unhappy, from earm, poor, miserable; cf. Icel. armr, Goth. arma, G. arm, poor.

Erst, adv. first; at erst, at first, G 151, 364: long erst er, long first before, C 662. Superlative of er. See Er.

Eschew, v. to eschew, avoid, shun, G 4. O. F. esceveur, eschevior, to avoid; from O. H. G. schiukan, to avoid. From the same root we have A. S. sceoth, shy, and E. show and shy.

Ease, s. placure, G 746; ease, relief, H 25. F. aise.

Espye, v. to espie, perceive, G 291; to enquire about, B 180; pp. Espyed, observed, 324. O. F. espier, from O. H. G. spiken, to spy (G. spihen).

Est, s. East, B 297, 493; Eastwards, 949, C 396; A. S. est. (Gloss. H.)

Estaat, s. rank, B 973, C 597, G 1388. O. F. estat, Lat. status; from stare, to stand.

Evangylea, s. pl. gospels, B 666. Lat. evangelium, Gk. ἑυγεγγέλλω, signifying (1) a reward for good tidings; (2) glad tidings; from εὐ, well, good, and ἑγγέγγλω, a messenger; from ἑγγίξα, I announce.

Eve, s. evening, G 375. A. S. ēfēn, evening.

Even, adv. evenly, exactly, G 1200.

Euerich, pron. every one, all, B 531, 626, C 768; either of the two, B 1004. For ever-each; M. E. euer, and iche, each.

Euerichon, every one, B 330, G 1365; Euerichoon, G 960, I 15; pl. Euerichone, all of them, B 429, 678. For ever-each-one; M. E. euer, ever, iche, each, oon, one.

Euermo, adv. evermore, always, B 1076. See Mo.

Exaltacount, s. exaltation (a term in astrology); see the note. I 10. From Lat. exaltare, to exalt; from ex, out, and altus, high.

Expert, adj. skilful in performing an experiment, experienced, G 1251. Lat. expertus, pp. of experior, to try.

Expwone, v. to explain, G 86. Lat. exponere, to expose; from ex, out, and ponere, to put.

Extenden, pr. pl. are extended, B 461. Lat. extendere.

Ey, interj. eh 1 what! C 782. Dan. ei, eh 1 Icel. hei, eh 1.

Ey, s. egg, G 806. A. S. ag, an egg; cf. Icel. egg, Swed. ægg, Dan. æg; also Du. ei, G. ei.

Eyelth, pr. s. aileth, H 16. A. S. ægían, to molest, afflict; from ægl, that which pricks, a thistle, also an 'ail', or beard of corn; from the same root as æggian; to incite. See Eggement.

Eyre, s. air, gas, G 767. F. air, Lat. aer, air.

F.

Fable, s. fable, story, I 31. F. fables, Lat. fabula.
Fader, s. father, B 274, G 1434; gen. Fader, in phr. fader kin = father's race, ancestry, G 829. A.S. fæder, gen. fæder.

Fallile, s. fail, doubt, B 201. F. faillir, Lat. fallere.


False get, cheating contrivance, G 1277. See Get.

Falsified, s. falsehood, G 979, 1274. O.F. fals, Lat. falsus, false; with M.E. suffix -heed, A.S. hēd.

Faltren, pr. pl. falter, fail, B 772. (Eym. doubtful.)

Fan, s. vane, quintain, H 42. A.S. fān, fann, a fan.

Fantome, s. a phantom, delusion, B 1037. F. fantôme, O.F. fantasme, Lat. phantasma, Gk. phantasma, an appearance, phantasia, make to appear; from phainein, I shew.

Fare, s. business, goings on, B 599. A.S. faran, a journey, hence, proceedings; from faran, to travel. See below.

Fare, pr. s. 1 p. I go, G 733; pr. pl. 1 p. Faren, we fare, live, 663; 2 p. Fare, ye fare, ye succeed, 1417; pr. s. Fareth, it turns out, 966; imp. pl. Fareth well = fare ye well, B 1159; pp. Fare, gone, B 512. A.S. faran, to go, to fare. (Gloss. I. and II.)

Farewell, interj. farewell! it is all over, G 907, 1380; used ironically, 1384.

Faste, adv. quickly, G 245; as faste, very quickly, 1235. A.S. fast, firm; adv. fast, firmly, also quickly.

Fasten, pt. s. fastened; pres. part. Fastinge, C 365. A.S. festen, fastening; fastung, the season of Lent.

Fayn, adj. glad, H gladly, willingly, B A.S. fagn, fain, fegna.


Felawe, s. companion, Felawes, companionship, comrades, C 696. I companion; from fi, perty; and lagi, la applied to one who has a property.

Felonye, s. crime, B Lat. fello, fello, a traitor, a criminal; O.F. fel, c. fort). Of uncertain puted origin; perhaps Bret. fall, Irish feal evil, wil.

Femininete, s. femininity 360.

Fen, s. chapter, or s. Avicenna's book calle C 890. See the note. Fend, s. dat. fiend, I Feend.

Fer, adj. far, B 508, sooner.

Fored, pp. terrified, as From A.S. far, danger. Ferforth, adv. far, degree, G 1390; as far as, B 1099; as such a degree, 512, G
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

fermenting, G rmentum.

rth, B 823, G A. S. feirða,

; dat. Feste, the list; cf. 

activity, B 418,

b. feast, at a

; han to 

b. Here feste

; not a verb.

t. festum.

sochen.

; to fete, at his

i. fol, a foot; 

. 

e. neat, grace-

. faits (Lat.

e. neat; from 

tere. (Gloss.

. H 13, L 23.

dh; Lat. acc.

end; fyn vs, 

ourselves, B at. fingere.

l 320. O. F.

. Lat. ferus,

Lat. ferro.

ude, figure, G

liified, G 779.

fix.

mes, G 515.

lamma. The 

ence; Wedg-

f lame from a n sustained.

. A. S. flei,

from fléteth).

Fleteth.

l. G 565. A 

; O. Frisic 

litóten); cf.

Du. vleken, to spot, vlek, a spot;

also Icel. flekka, to stain, flekkr, 
a spot, stain.

Flemed, pp. banished, G 58. A. S. fliman, flýman, to banish.

Flemér, s. banisher, driver away, B 460. See above.

Fleteth, pr. s. flósteth, B 901.

A. S. fléstan, to float.

Florine, s. pl. florins, C 770. 774.

So named from having been first coined at Florence.

Flour, s. flower, B 1090. O. F.

fleur, flýer, Lat. flosc, acc. of 

flö.

Flye, s. a fly, G 1150. A. S.

flýge.

Fneseth, pr. s. breathes heavily,

puffs, snorts, H 62. See the note.

A. S. fneowan, to puff, fnesæð,

tle windpipe, fneset, a puff, blast; 

cf. Gk. wýw, I blow.

Folily, adv. foolishly, G 428,

From F. fol, mad; see Brachet.

Folwen, pr. pl. follow, C 514.

A. S. follian.

Fome. See Foom.

Fond, pt. s. found, B 514. 607, C 

608, G 185. A. S. findan, to find; pt. t. ic fand, pp. funden.

Fonde, v. to endeavour, G 951;

to try to persuade, B 347. A. S.

fandian, to try, tempt.

Fonge, v. to receive, B 327. From 
a form fangian, appearing in A. S.
in the contracted form fim, to take; cf. Du. vangen, G. fangen, to take.

Font-ful water, fontful of water, 

B 357.

Fontstoon, s. font, B 723.

Foom, s. foam, G 564; dat. Fome, 

565. A. S. fém (fém), foam.

Foot-holt, adv. instantly, on the 

spot, B 438. See note.

Fostred, pp. nurtured, brought 

(up), B 205. G 122; nurtured in 

the faith, G 539. (Gloss. 111.)

Foul, adj, toul, bad: for foul we
fayr, by foul means or fair, B 525. A.S. jîl, soul.
Fouden, pp. found, B 612; provided, 243. See Fond.
Foure, num. four, B 491, G 1460. A.S. feuwer. The word is dissyllabic, being treated as a plural adjective.
Fourniers, s. furnace, G 804. F. fournaise, from Lat. acc. forncem.
Foyson, s. abundance, B 504. O.F. foyson, from Lat. acc. fusionem: which from fundere, to pour forth.
For, conj. because, B 340, C 440, G 232; in order that, B 478; prep. because of, C 504; as being, G 457. A.S. for.
Forbede, imp. ting. forbid, may (He) forbid, G 996; fr. s. Forbedeth, forbids, C 643. A.S. forbœdan, Goth. fœrbidan.
Forby, adv. past, of, C 668.
Fordoon, v. to do for, to destroy, B 369. A.S. fordon, to destroy, 'do for'; cf. Lat. fœdere.
For-dronke, pp. very drunk, C 674. Cf. A.S. fordræcan, to intoxicate. The prefix for- is here intensive.
Forleste, v. to give up, C 864. A.S. forlæstan, to let go, relinquish; cf. Du. verlaten, to abandon, G. verlassen.
Forse, s. heed; make no forse, take no heed, H 68; no fors, it is no matter, it is of no consequence, B 285, C 303, G 1019. 1357. 'I gyue no force, I care not for a thing, Il ne men chault; Palsgrave's French Dict.
Forswering, s. perjury, C 657; s. pl. Forsweringes, 592. A.S. forswieran, to swear falsely.
Forthermo, adv. moreover, C 594; Forthermore, 357.
Forther ouer, adv. furthermore. moreover, C 648.
Forthward, adv. forward, B 263.
For-waked, pp. tired out with watching, B 596. A.S. preoh for. and wacian, to watch.
For-why, conj. because, C 847.
Forwapped, pp. wrapped up, C 718. A.S. prefix for, and M.E. wraoppen, to wrap, closely related to welappen, to wrap (used by Wyclif). See Envoluped.
Forsuye, v. to forgive, B 994; imp. s. Forsuye, may (He) forgive, C 904; imp. pl. Forsuye, forgive, G 79. A.S. forgian, Goth. fragiban; cf. G. vergene.
Fraught, pp. freighted, B 171. For an account of the idiom, see the note, p. 122. Cf. Swed. frakta, Dan frage, to freight, load; Swed. frakt, Dan. fragt, Du. vracht, a load, burden.
Frodem, s. liberality, bounty, B 168. The A.S. fred means both free and bountiful.
Frendes, s. pl. friends, B 269. A.S. frend, a friend; pres. part. of a lost verb fredan, to love; this is shewn by Goth. freinds, a friend, pres. part. of Goth. frigan, to love. Cf. Skt. při, to love.
Fretje, pp. eaten, devoured, B 415. A.S. fretian, to devour; cont. from for-itan, to eat up; cf. Goth. fra-itan, to eat up, from itan, to eat. Thus fret is short for for- eat; and G. freisen = ver-eaten.
Freyned, pp. asked, questioned, G 413. A.S. frigan, to ask; Goth. friganan; cf. Du. vragen, G. fragen, Lat. quaerere.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Fructuous, adj. fruitful, I 73. Lat. fructuosus, fruitful; from fructus, fruit.

Fruit, s. result (lit. fruit), B 411. F. fruit, Lat. fructus.

Fruitesters, s. pl. fem. fruit-sellers, C 478.

Fulfil, pp. filled full, B 660; completed, fully performed, I 17. A S. fullfylian, to fill full, perform, accomplish.

Fumosee, s. fumes arising from drunkenness, C 567. From Lat. fumus, fume, smoke.

Furlong wey, a furlong's distance, B 557. A S. furklang, the length of a farrw, a furlong.

Fusible, adj. fusible, capable of being fused, G 856. F. fusible, from Lat. funderere, to pour out.

Fyn, s. end, B 474. F. fin, Lat. finis, end.

Fynally, adv. finally, B 1072.

Fynt, pr. s. finds, G 218. Contr. for fynde.

Fyrae, s. gen. fire's, G 1408. A S. fyr, Du. vuur, G. feuer, Dan. fyre, Gk. πῦρ.

G.

Galianes, s. pl. medicines, C 306. So named after Galen. See the note.

Galle, s. gall, G 58, 797. A S. gealda; cf. Lat. fæl, Gk χολή.

Galon, s. gallon, H 24. The forms galona and galo are found in Low Lat.

Game, s. sport, G 703, H 100. A S. gamen, a sport, play.

Gan, pp. s. began, G 462; used as aux., did, B 614, I 11. A S. ginnan, to begin; pt. t. ie gann.

Ganeth, pr. s. yawneth, H 35. A S. gansian, to yawn, gape.

Gas, pp. s. obtained, got (for himself), B 647, G 373. A S. getan, Icel. geta, to get. The commoner A S. form is gitan, pt. t. ie geat.

Gauze, s. trick, course of trickery, C 389.

Gauzen, ger. to gaze, stare, B 912. (Gloss. II.)

Gaye, adj. fine, G 1017. F. gai, gay; from O. H. G. gahi or kahi, quick; cf. O. H. G. gäck, gu, G. jäh, quick, hasty; from O. H. G. guan, to go.

Gentilese, s. kindness, G 1054; condescension, B 853. O. F. gentilese, from gentil, gentle, noble, Lat. gentilis, belonging to a gens or family.

Gentilly, adv. courteously, B 1003.

Gentils, s. pl. gentefolks, C 323.

Gere, s. gear, property, B 800. A S. gearwa, clothing, preparation; gearwan, to prepare; from gear, ready, yare.

Gerland, s. garland, G 27. Provencal garlanda; cf. Ital. ghirlanda, Fr. guirlande. Etym. doubtful; Mr. Wedgewood fails to explain the Italian form.

Geese, s. to imagine, B 622; i. p. s. pr. I suppose, 246, 1008, 1143. G 977. Cf. Du. gesen, Swed. gissa, to guess; Icel. gízka, to guess.

Gestes, s. pl. gests, tales (L. gesta), B 1126.

Get, s. contrivance, G 1277. Appears in A S. only in the compound and-get, the understanding. From gitan, to get.

Gete, 2 p. s. pr. ye get, ye obtain, H 103. See Gat.

Giltless, adj. guiltless, B 643; Giltless, 1062, 1073.

Gin, s. suare, contrivance, G 1165. Contracted from F. engin, a machine.

Giternes, s. pl. guitars, G 466. O. F. guiteres, also guiterre, guitarre. Lat. cithara, Gk. κιθάρα, a strung instrument.
GLOSSEIAL INDEX.

Gloat, v. to gladden, G 598. A.S. glād, glad.
Gleyre, s. white (of an egg), G 806. 'Gleyre of eeyrne [i.e. eggs] or other lyke, glarea;' Prompt. Parv. F. glaire (which in Ital. is chiorea), the white of an egg; corrupted from claire, from Lat. clarus, clear.
Glose, v. to flatter, I 45. F. glose, a gloss, from Lat. glossa, Gk. γλῶσσα, the tongue; also an explanation. (Gloss. II.)
Glotonyes, s. pl. excesses, C 514. From O.F. gloton, (F. glouton), a glutton; Lat. glutonem; cf. Lat. glutire, to swallow.
God, adj. voc. good, B 1111.
Gold, s. gold, G 326; allusion to proverb—'all is not gold that glisters.' 962. A.S. gold.
Goldsmith, s. goldsmith, G 1333.
Golet, s. throat, gullet, C 543. Dimin. of O.F. gole, the throat, Lat. gula.
Gonne, pt. pl. began, C 323; pt. f.l. began, G 376; did, 517, 1192. See Gan.
Good, s. goods, property, wealth, G 831, 868, 949, 1289. A.S. god, pl. god, goods, wealth; neut. adj. as sb., like Lat. bona.
Goodlith, adj. kind, bountiful, G 1053. A.S. godeð, kind, lit. good-like.
Good-man, s. master of the house, C 361.
Goon, v. to go; let it goon, let it go, neglect it, G 1475. And see Gon.
Goot, s. a goat, G 886. A.S. gōt; cognate with Lat. haedus.
Goot, s. spirit, B 404, 803; ghost (ironically), H 55; the Holy Ghost, G 328. A.S. gast, breath; cf. G. geist, Du. geest.
Gouvernement, s. government, B 279; Gouvernance, C 600. From O.F. gouverner, Lat. gubernare, to direct, steer.
Gourd, s. dat. gourd, H 82. F. goude, from Lat. cucurbita.
Grace, s. favour, G 1348; hir grace. her favour (i.e. that of the blessed Virgin), B 980; pardon, B 647; harde grace, hardihood of demeanour, boldness, G 685, 1189. F. grace, Lat. gratia.
Gracelesss, adj. void of grace, unfavoured by God, G 1078.
Grame, s. anger, grief, G 1403. A.S. grama, rage, from graem, furious, fierce, cruel; cf. grīm, fury, also as adj. severe. Cf. also O. H. G. gram, angry.
Grant mercy, much thanks, G 1380; Grant merci, 1165. F. grand merce, great thanks. In English corrupted to gramercy.
Granta, pr. s. i. p. I agree, consent, C 327. O.F. granier, to grant. (Gloss. II.)
Gree, s. favour, B 25. F. grī, inclination; from Lat. grates, pleasing.
Greene, s. green, greenness, living evidence, G 90.
Grenhede, s. greenness, wantoness, B 193.
Grette, pt. s. greeted, B 1051, C 714. A.S. gretian, pt. t. is grette.
Grisly, adj. horrible, gewsome, C 473. A.S. grislic, hideous, agrisman, to shudder at.
Grope, pt. pl. t. we grope, G
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.


Grottes, s. pl. groats, fourpenny pieces, C 376. Du. "groot, the name of a coin, originally of large size; from "groot, great. First use in Bremen, where they superseded smaller coins.

Grounden, pp. ground, G 760. A.S. "grindan, to grind; pt. t. ic grand; pp. grunden.


Gyde, imp. s. may (He) guide, B 245. O. F. guider, another form of guier. See Gye.

Gyde, s. guide, ruler, G 45.

Gye, ger. to guide, regulate, I 13; imp. s. do thou guide, O. F. guier, to guide, Ital. guidare; from O. Sax. wizan, to observe; cf. O. H. G. wizan, to observe, whence G. wetsen.

Gyse, s. guise, wise, way; in his gyse, as he was wont, B 790.

H.

Habundantly, adv. abundantly, B 870. From O. F. habonder, Low Lat. habundare, to abound, written for Lat. abundare; from ab and unde, a wave.

Hakensay, s. hack-horse, hackney, G 559. Cf. F. haquené, a nag, Span. hacanén, a nag; said to be spelt facanén in Old Spanish, and to have a shorter form faca (Webster, Diez.).

Halkes, s. pl. corners, hiding-places, G 311. Cf. Mid Eng. kale, a recess, Owl and Nithing-gale, l. 2; A.S. heal, an angle, a corner; probably from the verb helan, to hide. Cf. A. S. hale, a cottage, cabin; keelstor, a cavern.

Hals, s. neck, G 1029. A.S. "heals, icel. hals, G. hals.

Halt, pr. s. holds (put for holdeth), B 807; considers, G 921.

Halwed, pr. s. consecrated, hallowed, G 551. A.S. "haldigian, to hallow; from "halig, holy.

Halwes, s. pl. saints (lit. holy ones), B 1060; gen. pl. of (all) saints, G 1244. A.S. "haldig, holy.

Hamor, s. hammer, G 1339. A.S. "hamor.

Han, v. to keep, retain, C 725; to take away, 727; to obtain, G 234; to possess (cf. to have and to hold'), B 208; pr. pl. Han, have, B 142. A.S. habban, to have, Lat. capere (not habere).

Hap, s. luck, G 1209. W. hap, luck, icel. happ, luck, chance.

Happeth, pr. s. it chances, G 649; pr. s. Happede, happened, C 606, 885. See above.

Harrow, interj. alas! C 288. See the note.

Hasard, s. the game of hazard, C 591, 681. O. F. usart (with ex-crescent t), Provençal azer, Span. azar, from Arabic al-üzär, the die, which from Pers. zür, a die.

Hasardour, s. gamster, C 596; pl. Hasardours, 613, 618.

Hasard, yo, s. gaming, playing at hazard, C 590, 599, 897.

Hasteth, imp. pl. refl. hasten, make haste, I 72. O. F. haster, to hasten; from G. hast, haste; icel. hastaligr, hasty.

Hastou, for hast thou, B 676.

Haunteth, pr. s. practises, C 547; pl. pl. Haunteden, practised, 404. F. haunter, to haunt; of uncertain origin.

Hauteyn, adj. loud, C 330. F. hautain, haughty, from haut, O. F. hale, Lat. alius, high.

Hawe, s. haw, yard, enclosure, C 855. A.S. haga, a hedge, a garden.
He, used for it, G 867, 868.

Head, s. head, H 19; pl. Hedes, heads, G 398. A.S. hēofod, M. E. hewd, contr. to heed. (Gloss. II.)

Heeld, pt. s. held, esteemed, C 625. A.S. hēaldan, pt. t. ic heald.

Heer and ther, phr. now here, now there; never long in one place, G 1174. A.S. hēr.

Heer, s. hair, G 812. A.S. hār, Du. and G. haar.

Helpeth, imp. pl. help ye, G 1328. A.S. hēlpian.

Helples, adj. helpless, B 303.

Hem, pron. them, B 140; dat. to them, G 539. 540. A.S. hig, nom. they; gen. hēora, hīra; dat. hēon, him; acc. hig.

Hem-self, pron. pl. nom. themselves, B 145.

Heng, pt. s. hung, G 574. A.S. hōn, to hang; pt. t. ic heng.

Henne, adv. hence, C 687. A.S. hēonan, hēan, hence.

Hento, v. to seize, C 710; pt. s. Hente, seized, caught, G 370. 1325; caught away, B 1144; raised, lifted, G 205; pr. s. subj. may seize, G 7; pp. Hent, caught, 12. A.S. hētan, to seize.

Her, pron. poss. their, B 137. 138. 140. 211. 373. C 892, G 363. 1387. A.S. hēora, hīra, of them; gen. pl. of hē. he.

Hereafterward, adj. hereafter, G 1168.

Herberage, s. lodging, abode, B 147. O.F. herbergage (Roquefort); from O.H.G. herberga, a camp, an army-shelter; from O.H.G. heri, an army, and bergan, to hide, shelter.

Herbergeours, s. pl. harburgers, providers of lodging, B 907. See above. Hence the modern herberger, with excrescent (inserted) n.

Her-biform, adv. here-before, B 613.

Herde, s. shepherd, G 192. A.S. hyrde, a guardian of a herd, from hēard, a herd.


Here, pers. pron. her, B 460. A.S. hīre, of her, gen. sing. of hēi. she.


Her-inne, adv. herein, G 1292. A.S. hīr, here; and the adv. suffix innan, within.

Herknek, v. to hearken, listen to, G 691; Herkne, 1066; 1 p. s. pr. Herkne, I hear, 261; imp. pl. Herkneath, hearken ye, C 454. A.S. hērencian, to listen to; from hīran, to hear.

Hernes, s. pl. corners, G 658. A.S. hyrne, a corner; from horn, a horn, a cornut, cognate with Lat. cornu, whence our corner.


Herte-blood, heart’s-blood, C 962. Here herte is the gen. sing. of the feminine substantive herte; the A.S. hēerte makes hēortan in the genitive, not hōerites.

Her-to, adv. for this purpose, B 243.

Heste, s. command, B 382, C 493; dat. B 1013; pl. Hestes, commands, B 284, C 640. A.S. hēs, a command, with added t.

Hete, pr. s. 1 p. I promise, B 334. 1132. A.S. hētan, to command, to promise; cf. G. heissen, to bid.

Hete, s. heat, G 1408. A.S. hēo,
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

haitu, heat; Du. hitte, G. hitze; shewing that hite is disyllabic.
Hethen, adj. heathen, B 904. A. S. hæðen, of or belonging to a heath; hœð, a heath; cf. Icel. heiðinn, a heathen, heïr, heath, G. heide, masc. a heathen, fem. a heath.
Cf. pāgan from Lat. pagus.
Hethenesse, s. heathen lands, B 1112. A. S. hæðennes, heathenism. See above.
Houeno, gen. heaven's, of heaven, G 542. A. S. heofone, fem.; gen. heofonan; we also find heofon, masc.; gen. heofones.
Howe, s. dat. hue, colour, B 137, G 728; pretence, C 421. A. S. hiw, hue; dat. hioe.
Hey, s. hay, H 14. A. S. hig; Du. hoog, G. heu.
Hey and low, in., in high and low things, i. e. in all respects, wholly, B 993.
Heyer, adj. comp. higher, C 597.
Heyne, s. a worthless person. G 1319. A. S. hein, mean, abject, poor (see four examples in Sweet's A. S. Reader); cf. Du. hoon, an affront, G. hohn, mockery; also O. F. honir, to disgrace, as in 'honi soit qui mal y pense.' The change of vowel from to to $\$ is illustrated by the form hone, which occurs in Layamon's Brut, i. 20316. We also find in A. S. the form hênan as well as hynan in the sense of to humble. The Gothic has hawns, humble.
Heyr, s. heir, B 766. O. F. heir (F. huir), from Lat. acc. haeredem.
Heyre, adj. hair, made of hair, C 736; as sb. a hair shirt, sackcloth, G 133. A. S. hêra, cloth made of hair, sackcloth; from hêr, hair; also hêren, adj. hairy.
Hix, pron. pers. her, B 162. The A. S. acc. is $\$; hire is the gen. and dat. form.
Hir, pron. poss. her, B 164. From A. S. hire, gen. case of pers. pron. heed, she.
Hires, poss. pron. hers, B 227.
Hold, s. fort, castle, B 507. A. S. heald, a fort; from healdan, to hold, keep.
Hole, adj. pl. whole, hole; hole and sounds, safe and sound, B 1150. A. S. hâl, whole; pl. hóle. E. whole is misspelt; it is the A. S. hâl, and should be hole. The form hole is Danish; cf. Icel. heill, hole, Dan. heal. The Gr. ὅλος is from a totally different root, and goes with Lat. solidus, E. solid. See Hool.
Holwe, adj. hollow, G 1265. The root appears in A. S. hol, hollow, holu, a hole; cf. A. S. holk, a hollow, a cavern. The Swedish has the longer form hollig, hollow.
Hom, s. home, homewards, B 385. A. S. hâm; G. heim.
Homlyde, s. manslaughter, murder, C 644. Lat. homicidium; from homo, a man, and caedere, to kill.
Honde, s. dat. hand, G 13; on honds, in hand, B 348; pl. Hondes, hands, C 398, G 189; A. S. hond, hand; gen. and dat. honden, hands.
Honest, adj. honourable, seemly, decent, C 328; pl. Honeste, H 75; Lat. honestus, honourable; from honor, honour.
Honestly, adv. honourably, G 549.
Hunge, v. to hang, C 190. See Doung; also Heng.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Hool, adj. sing. whole, perfect, G 111, 117; well, C 357. A.S. hól. See Hole, the pl. form.

Hoom, s. home, homewards, B 173, 603. A.S. hám.

Hoom-oominge, s. home-coming, B 765.

Hoor, adj. hoary, gray, C 743. A.S. hör, hoary; Icel. hár.


Hope, s. hope, expectation, G 870. The word is dissyllabic. A.S. hopa, hope; cf. G. hoffen, to hope.

Hord, s. hoard, treasure, C 775. From the same root as herd.

Horn, s. horn (musical instrument), H 90. A.S. horn; cf. Lat. cornu.

Hose, s. hose, old stocking, G 726. A.S. hose, hose, breeches, covering.

Hostelry, s. hostelry, G 589. From O.F. hostel (our hotel); which from Lat. hospitale (our hospital); from Lat. hospitalis (our host).

House, s. house (a technical term), B 304. See note to l. 302.

Husband, s. husband, B 863; pl. Husbondes, 272. Commonly derived (wrongly) from house and band, whereas it is the A.S. hus-bonda, Icel. husbandi. contr. from his buendi, the inhabitant of a house, from buia, to inhabit. The sense is therefore that of 'occupier (i.e. master) of a house.' The word is, accordingly, wholly unconnected with band or bond or bind; but connected with Dan. bonde, a peasant; and again with our boar (a word borrowed from the Du. boer), and with the last syllable in neighbour.

Humbleness, s. humility, B 165. From Lat. humiliis, humble.

Hurlent, pr. s. 2 pr. dost hurl, dost whirl, B 297. Etym. difficult; but it can be proved to be a doublet (and an abbreviation) of the old word hurtle, to dash; the frequentative of hurt; from F. heurter, to dash.

Hyde, v. to hasten, G 1084; me hye. hurry myself, make haste, 1151; Hy the, hasten thyself, be quick. 1295. A.S. higan, higan, to hasten; cf. Lat. citus, quick.

Hyen, s. haste; in hye, in haste, B 209. Extremely common in Barbour's Bruce. See above.

Hyghte, pt. s. was called (apparently used in a present sense, i.e. is called), I 51; was called, G 119, 550. A.S. hātan, to be named, ic hātte, I was called. (Gloss. I. and II.)

Hyghte, s. dat. height, I 4. A.S. heolde; Icel. hóð, Du. hoogte, height.

Hyne, s. hind, peasant, C 688. A.S. hina, a domestic. a servant; whence modern E. E. bind, by adding an excrecent d.

I (for I and J).

Ialous, adj. jealous, C 367. O.F. jaloux, Lat. zelosus, full of zeal. Thus jealous is a doublet of zealous.

Ialousy, s. jealousy, C 366.

Iangelst, pr. s. 2 p. chatterest, B 774. O.F. jangler, to chatter; from a Teutonic source; cf. Du. janken, to howl, Du. jangelen, to importune.

Iape, s. a trick, G 1312; a jest, H 84; pl. Japes, jests, C 319, 394. Probably allied to F. gaver, to mock, Icel. gabba, to deceive; cf. E. jabber.

Iape, ger. to jest, H 4.

Jay, s. a jay, B 774; pl. Jays, G 1397. F. gai, formerly gai; so named from its gay colours. Cf. Span. gayo, a gay; O.Sp. gayo, gay.
Glossarial Index.

Ignorant, s. an unknown thing (see note), G 1457. Lat. *ignotum*, an unknown thing; comp. *ignotus*, a less known thing. From *noscere*, to know, formerly *gnosere*, and cognate with our *know*.

Impressa, pr. pl. force themselves (upon), make an impression (upon), G 1071. From Lat. *imprimere*, to press upon; from *premere*, to press.

Ile, s. isle, B 545. F. *île*, O. F. *isle*, Lat. *insula*, an island.
Ilke, adj. same, G 80, 1366; very, 501. A. S. *yle*, same.

In, s. inn, lodging, B 1097. A. S. *inn*, an inn, house.

Induracioun, s. hardening, G 855. From Lat. *durus*, hard.

In-fere, adv. together, B 328. Cf. A. S. *ser*, an expedition; whence M. E. *in fere*, upon an expedition; on a journey; hence, together.

Infortunat, adj. unfortunate, insidious, B 302. Lat. *in*, prefix, and *fortunatus*, fortunate.

Ingot, s. an ingot, a mould for pouring metal into, G 1206, 1209, 1223; pl. Ingottes, G 818. From in, in, and A. S. *gesidan*, to pour; cf. Du. *ingieten*, to pour in; G. *einguss*, a pouring in, from *giessen*, to pour.

Inne, adv. within, G 880. A. S. *innan*, within; from prep. *in*.

Intellect, s. understanding, G 339. Lat. *intellectus*.

Iolitee, s. joviality, C 780. From F. *joli*, pleasant, from a Scandinavian source; Icel. *jöli*, E. *Yole*, a great feast held in midwinter.

Ioyned, pp. joined, G 95. F. *joindre*, to join, Lat. *iungere*; Skt. *yuj*, to join.

Iro, s. anger, C 657. Lat. *ira*.

Judge, s. judge, B 814, G 402; pl. Judges, C 292. F. *juges*, Lat. acc. *iudicem*.

Iugement, s. judgment, opinion, B 1038; judgment, 688.

Iupartye, s. jeopardy, hasard, G 743. O. F. *jeu parti*, Lat. *iocus-partitus*, a divided game, a game in which sides were taken. See note.


Iustise, s. a judge, B 665, C 289. G 497; the administration of justice, C 587. The O. F. *justice* meant (1) justice, and (2) the administrator of justice; and this double use of the word is retained in English.

Iyse, s. justice, judgment, B 795. The word is *ju-ys*, in three syllables; Roquefort gives the O. F. *sb. *juise*, formed, by loss of *d*, from Lat. *indicium*, judgment.

K.


Kepe, s. heed; tak kepe, take heed. C 353, 360.

Kerchofe, s. kerchief, B 837. From O. F. *couvrir*, to cover, and *chef*, the head; it meant, originally, a covering for the head. Cf. *curfew*, from O. F. *couvrir*, and *feu*, fire.

Key, s. key (pronounced kay), G 1219. A. S. *cæg*, also *cage*, a key.

Kin, s. kindred, race, G 839. A. S. *cynn*, a kin, lineage.

Kin, adj. kind; som kin, of some kind, B 1137. A. S. *cynn*, kin, lit.


Kiste, pt. s. kissed, B 385; pl. Kiste, C 968; pp. Kist, in phr. been they kist=they have kissed each other, B 1074. A. S. cyxa, a kiss; cysan, to kiss; cf. G. kussen.

Kitte, pt. s. cut, B 600. M. E. cutten, to cut; a Celtic word. Cf. Welsh cu'tan, short, cwtan, cyto, to shorten; Gaelic cu'taich, to curtail, cu'tach, docked; cut, a bob-tail.

Knaue, s. boy, servant-lad, B 474. C 666; as adj. male, B 722. A. S. cwopa, cwafa, a boy, G. knabe, icel. knapi, a servant-lad.

Knitte, ger. to knit, L 47; Knit-test thee, pr. s. 2 p. reft. knittest thyself, joinest thyself, art in conjunction, B 307; see note on p. 127. A. S. cnyttan, to knit; from cnot, a knot, cognate with Lat. nodus (for gnodus).


Knowledge, s. knowledge, G 1432. In the verb to knowlege, the suffix is the common A. S. suffix -lecan; in the sb. knowleche (our knowledge), the suffix is the related noun-suffix -lic, which appears also in wed-lock.

Knyght, s. knight, servant (of God), G 353. A. S. cnikt, a servant; cf. G. knecht.

Knynde, s. dat. nature, G 41, 659; race, lineage, 121. A. S. cynd, nature. The final e is due to the fact that in all three passages it is a dative case.

Kythe, pr. s. subst.; may shew, B 636; pp. Kythed, shewn, G 1054. A. S. cydan, to make known; from cyd, known, which is the p. p. of cunnan, to know.

Laas, s. lace, band, G 574. O. F. las, laz (F. lacs), from Lat. laqueus, a noose. Our lasse is from the Portuguese form of the same word. (Gloss. I)

Labour, s. endeavour, B 381. O. F. labour, Lat. acc. laborem.

Ladde, pt. s. led, B 976, G 370, 374; brought, B 443; pp. Lad, 649. A. S. ledan, pt. i. e. ladde; connected with A. S. ladan, to travel.

Ladel, s. ladle, H 51. The A. S. ladel meant the handle of a windlass for drawing water; from ladan, to lade, draw.

Ladyea, s. sl. ladies, B 354. Pron. laader-ez, as a trisyllable. A. S. liddige, a lady.


Laketh, pr. s. lacks, G 498. Cf. icel. lafr, deficient.

Lampo, s. lamina, thin plate, G 764. F. lame, a thin plate; Lat. lamina. The insertion of ex- crescent p occurs after m in other words in Charcer; as in solempe, dampe, empty, nempeon.

Lampes, s. pl. lamps, G 802.

Lappe, s. skirt or lapert of a garment, G 12. A. S. lasse, a lap, border, hem; Du. lap, a remnant, shred.

Lasse, adj. less, C 602. A. S. las, less; also lasse.

Lat, imp. permit, let, G 164; lat take=let us take, 1254. A. S. ledan, to allow, let; Du. laten, G. lassen.

Late, adj. late; bet than new is late, G 1410. A. S. leat, slow.

Latoun, s. a kind of brass, C 321. See the note. O. F. laton (F. laiton, from Low Lat. acc. laticem.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Latyn, s. Latin, B 519.
Lay, s. religious belief, faith, creed, B 376, 572; O. F. lei (F. loi), from Lat. acc. lege.
Leche, s. physician, C 916, G 56.
A. S. lecne, a physician; læcnican, to heal; Goth. lekeis, letkeis, a physician.
Lede, v. to govern, B 434; pr. s. subj. may bring, 357; A. S. leadan. See Laddo.
Leden, adj. leaden, G 728.
Lead, s. lead, G 406, 828; A. S. leid, lead; leiden, leaden; Du. lood, lead.
Leef, adj. dear, precious, G 1467; you so leef = so dear to you, so desired by you, C 760; A. S. leof, dear; G. lieb. The pl. is leue, voc. sing. leue. See Leue.
Leek, s. leek. i. e. thing of small value, G 795; A. S. leic, a herb; whence gar-lick, bar-ley.
Lees, s. leach, G 10; F. laisse, from Lat. laxa, used to mean a loose rope, fem. of laxus, loose.
Leet, pt. s. let, caused (to be), B 959; let, G 190; imp. s. let, C 734; See Lat.
Lemman, s. (leof- or lef-man) lover; lit. dear man, B 917; A. S. leof, dear, man, a human being of either sex. Similarly Lammas answers to A. S. hlafmasse.
Lene, ger. to lend, G 1024, 1037; imp. s. lend, 1026. A. S. lænan, to lend; from lin, a loan. The addition of exessrent d appears also in sound (F. fon), kind (A. S. hine), &c.
Lenger, adj. comp. longer, B 262; adv. longer, B 374. A. S. lang, long; comp. lenga, longer.
Leos, s. pl. people, G 103, 106; Gr. λαός. See the note.
Leoun, s. lion, B 475; G 178; Q. F. leon; from Lat. acc. leonem.
Lepe, pr. pl. leap, G 915. A. S. hlepian, to leap, run; Du. loopen, to run (whence e-lope, inter-lope); cf. G. laufen, to run.
Lere, ger. to learn, B 181, 630; C 325, G 838, 1056, 1349; v. C 578; pres. s. subj. may learn, G 607. Chaucer uses the word wrongly; the A. S. lēran, like G. lehren, meant to teach. (Gloss. II.) See below.
Lerne, ger. to teach, G 844; Lerned, taught by, G 748. Chaucer uses the word wrongly, and so does mod. prov. Eng. The A. S. lærnum meant to learn, like mod. G. lernen. See above.
Lerninge, s. instruction, G 184.
Lessing, s. lie, G 479; pl. Lesinges, lies, C 591. A. S. leising, a falsehood; from A. S. leis, adj. meaning (1) loose, (2) false.
Leste, adj. superl. least, B 1012.
Leste, pr. s. subj. impers. it may please, B 742; pt. s. subj. it might please, I 36. A. S. lystan, to choose; gen. used impersonally; from lust, wish, desire, pleasure.
Let, pt. s. caused, permitted, B 373. See Lat.
Lete, v. to forsake, B 325; ger. 331; to leave, g68; v. to let out, lose, G 406, 523; I p. s. pr. I let, permit, B 321, 410, 1119; imp. pl. let go, give up, G 1049. A. S. lētan, Du. laten, G. lassen.
Lette, v. to hinder, delay; used infra. to cause delay, B 1117. A. S. lettan, to hinder; Du. letters: Icel. leija, to hold back. From A. S. læt, late.
Letterure, s. literature, book-lore, G 845. O. F. leture, Lat. literatura.
Lettres, s. pl. letters, B 736. The M.E. lettres, like Lat. litera,
often means a letter, in the singular.

Letum, s. electuary, C 307. Late Lat. electuarium. (Gloss. L.)

Leve, v. to give up, leave, let alone, G 714; ger. to forsake, 287; imp. pl. Leueth, leave ye, C 659. A.S. lealfan, to leave, give up; Icel. leifa.


Leue, s. leave, permission, C 848, G 373. A.S. leif, leave.

Leue, adj. voc. dear, C 731; beloved, G 257; pl. lief, dear, 283. The num. sing. is leef. See Leef.

Leeful, adj. permissible, praise-worthy, allowable, G 5.1 41. It has nearly the sense of lawful, but is totally unconnected with law etymologically; it is for leaveful; from A.S. leif, leave.

Leuor, adj. comp. rather; me were leuer, it would be dearer to me, I had rather, C 615. H 23; adv. G 1376. H 78. Comparative of leef. See Leef.


Lewedly, adv. ignorantly, ill, G 430. H 59. See above.

Leya, v. to lay a wager, bet, G 596; 1 p. pl. pr. we lay out, we expend, 783; pt. pl. Leyden forth, brought forward, B 213; pp. Leyd, laid, G 441. A.S. leegan, pt. t. ie legde, pp. geled.

Lia, put for Gk. λίαν, i.e. very much, excessively, G 96. See the note.

Licour, s. juice, C 452. O.F. liqueur, from Lat. acc. liquorem, liquor, juice.

Liogens, s. pl. subjects, B 240. F. lige, from O.H.G. ledig (G. ledig), free. A lige lord was a free lord; in course of time his subjects were called liogens, no doubt from confusion with Lat. ligare, to bind.

Liftinge, s. lifting, H 67.

Lige, adj. lige, C 337. See Liogens.

Ligaunaos, s. allegiance, B 895. See above.

Likerous, adj. glutinous, dainty, greedy, C 540. From O.F. lecher, lichier, to lick up, be glutinous, borrowed from O.H.G. lechen, M.H. G. lechen (G. lecken), to lick. The k is due to remembrance of A.S. licera, a glutton, from the same root.

Lilie, s. lilly, G 87. Lat. lilium.

Linage, s. lineage, kindred, B 809. O.F. linage, kindred; from Lat. linea, a line.

List, pr. s. impers. it pleases (him), B 520. 701, 766, G 234. I 69; pers. is pleased, pleases, chooses. B 477. G 30. 271; Listeth. pleases, 834; pt. s. impers. Liste, it pleased, 1048, G 1313. List is the contr. form of listeth. A.S. lystan, to please.

Litarge, s. litarge, G 775. Litarge, protoxide of lead, produced by exposing melted lead to a current of air. It generally contains more or less red lead;’ Webster. Lat. litargyrus, Gk. λιθαργυρος, scum of silver, from λίθος, a stone (hard scum), and ἄργυρος, silver. (Gloss. L.)

Loffe, s. (dat.) the air; hence a lofte, in the air, aloft, B 277. A.S. lyft, air; cf. G. Luft.

Loketh, imp. pl. looke ye, behold, G 1329; search ye, C 578. A.S. locian, to look.

Lomb, s. lamb, B 459, 617. A.S. lamb, a lamb; Du. lam, G. lamm.

Londe, s. (dat.) land, B 848, G
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

950. A. S. lond, land; the M. E. nom. case is also lond.

Long, prep.; the phrase wher-on... long—long on wher, along of what, G 930; Long on, along of, because of, G 922. A. S. gelang, along of, because of.

Loos, s. praise, G 1368. O. F. los, lex, praise; a mere adaptation of Lat. nom. laus, praise.

Lording, s. pl. sirs, B 573, C 329, 1 15.

Lore, s. teaching, instruction, B 342, G 414; learning, B 761; study, G 842. A. S. lær, teaching, lore.


Losten, pt. pl. lost, G 398.

Lostinge, pres. part. lurking, G 186. (See the note.) A. S. lčian, to lurk; as in Sweet's A. S. Reader, p. 9, l. 41; from A. S. lčian, to bow, bend down.

Loues, s. pl. loaves, B 503. A. S. hlæf; pl. hlæfes.


Lucre, s. profit, G 1402. Lat. lucrum, gain.

Lulleth, pr. s. hulls, soothes, B 839. Cf. Swedish lulla, to hum, to hull; lulla Jillisom, to hull to sleep.

Luna, s. the Moon, G 826; a name for silver, 1440. Lat. luna.

Lunar, s. lunar, moon-wort, G 800. See the note.

Lure, s. a hawk's lure, the bait by which a hawk was tempted to return to the Fowler's hand, H 72. F. leurre, a decoy; from Middle H. German lüder, a decoy.

Lust, s. will, pleasure, desire, wish, B 188, 762, G 1398; pl. Lustes, desirer, C 833. A. S. lust, pleasure, will.

Luste, pt. s. impers. it pleased, G 1125; pers. was pleased, desired, 1344. See Líst.

Lustier, adj. comp. more joyous, G 1345.

Lusty, adj. pleasant, G 1402; lusty, H 41. Formed from A. S. lust, pleasure; cf. Du. lustig, merry.

Lutes, s. pl. lutes, B 466. A word of Arabic origin; see Webster.

Lyghte, imp. s. illumine, G 71. A. S. gelícian, to lighten; from leıht, light.

Lyghte, pt. s. lighted, dismounted, B 786, 1104. A. S. lichtan, to alight from a horse.

Lyghtly, adv. easily, G 1400, H 8, 77. A. S. lıht, light (not heavy).

Lykynge, s. pleasure, C 455. A. S. licungen, pleasure; from lician, to like.


Lymaille, s. filings of any metal, G 853, 1162, 1197; Lymail, 1164, 1267, 1269. From Lat. limare, to file; lima, a file.

Lymes, s. pl. limbs, B 461, 772. A. S. lim, lcel, limir, a limb.

Lyt, adj. little, G 527; as sb., a little, B 352. A. S. byt, little, few; also used as a sb.

Lyte, adv. little, in a small degree. G 632, 699. Formed from A. S. byt, little, by adding the adverbial suffix -e.

Lyth, pr. s. lieth, i.e. he lies, B 634. A. S. liegan, to lie; pr. s. he lieð, or lieð.

Lyues, s. pl. gen. souls', livets', G 56. A. S. liv, life.

Lyustow, for lyuest thou. i.e. livest thou, C 719. A. S. lýfwan, to live; from lýf, life.
LYUINGE, s. manner of life, C 847; state of life, G 322.

MAAD, pp. made, G 1459.

MAGESTEE, s. majesty, B 1082. O. F. maeestee, Lat. acc. majestatem; cf. magnus, great.

MAGNESIA, s. magnesia, G 1455. Lat. magnesia, so called because found in Magnesia, in Thessaly. The word magnet has its name from the same source.

MAISTEE, s. pl. masters, B 141. O. F. maistre, Lat. acc. magistrum; cf. magnus, great.

MAISTIE, s. a masterly operation (un coup de maître), G 1060. O. F. maistrie, from maistre, a master.

MAKE, s. mate, wife, B 700; husband, G 224. A. S. mæc, icel. maki, a mate.

MAKESTOW, i. e. makest thou, B 371; pp. Maked, G 484. (Chaucer also has Maad, q. v.) A. S. mæsian, to make; pp. maced. From the same root as machine (Gk. μηχανή).

MALE, s. bag, wallet, C 920, G 566, I 26. O. F. male (F. malle), a budget; from O. H. G. malaha, a leather bag. Cf. E. mail in mail-bag.

MALISOUN, s. curse, G 1245. O. F. malison; from Lat. acc. maledictio-nem; so also benison is a doublet of benediction.

MALLIABLE, adj. malleable, such as can be worked by the hammer, G 1130. From Lat. mallescus, a hammer, mallet.

MANNER, s. manner, sort, G 424; manner pley, kind of game, G 627; manner chasse, kind of luck, G 527; manner latyn, kind of Latin, B 519; Manere, G 45, 142. O. F. maniere, manner; from Lat. manus, the hand.


MANSLAUGHTRE, s. murder, C 592. A. S. stein, to slay, kill.

MARLE, interj. marry, i. e. by St. Mary, G 1062.

MARK, s. a piece of money, of the value of 13s. 4d. In England, G 1026; pl. Mark, i. e. marks, c. 350. See note to C 350.

MARS (the planet), G 827.

MARY, s. marrow, C 542. A. S. mearc, marrow. (Gloss. I.)

MASED, pp. bewildered, B 526, 678. (Gloss. I.)

MAT, adj. struck dead, defeated utterly, B 935. O. F. mat, defeated, languid, feeble, G. matt, dull. Borrowed from the game of chess, in which check-mate is a corruption of Persian šah mat, the king is dead; Dietz.

MATERE, s. matter, subject, affair, B 323, 411, 581; pl. Materes, materials (of a solid character), G 770; gen. pl. Matieres, of the materials, 770. O. F. matière, materes, Lat. materia.

MAHOMETRYS, s. Mahometanism. B 236. Mahomet is a corruption of Mahomet or Muhammad.

MAUNTOPLE, s. manciple, H 25, 69, 103, I 1. From Lat. mancipes, a purchaser, contractor; from manus, the hand, and capere, to take. (Gloss. I.)

MAW, s. maw, B 486. A. S. maha, the stomach. (Gloss. II.)

MAY, 1 p. s. pr. 1 can, B 231, 1070; Maystow, mayest thou, G 356. A. S. magan, to be able; pr. t. ie mag; pt. t. is mægan; icel. mæg, G. mögen.

MAY, s. maiden, B 851. A. S. mig, a kinsman; also, a son; also, a daughter.

MAYDENHOOD, s. maidenhood, G 126. A. S. morgenhod.
Medle, v. to meddle, take part in, G 1184; imp. pl. Medleth, G 1424. O. F. medler, given by Burguy as another form of mesler, which is the Low Lat. miscelare, to mix; from Lat. miscere, to mix.
Meol, s. meal, B 466. A.S. māl, a time, a portion; also, a meal.
Memorie, s. memory, G 339. From Lat. memoria.
Men, s. pl. men, people, folks; often used, in this sense, with a verb in the singular, C 675; G 392; gen. Mennes, men's, B 203.
Mene, pr. s. 1 p. l. mean, speak of, B 641, G 1424, I 11; Menestow, meanest thou, G 309; 1 p. s. pt. Mente, intended, 999, 1051; pt. s. B 327. A.S. mánan, to have in mind; cf. G. meinen, to intend.
Mené, adj. mean, intermediate, B 540, G 162. O. F. meien, meien (F. moyen), from Lat. medius; which from Lat. medius, middle.
Menes, s. pl. means, B 480. See above.
Mercurie, Mercury, the planet, G 827.
Mercurie, s. mercury, i.e. quicksilver, G 773, 774, 827, 1431, 1438.
Meschance, s. misfortune, B 602, 610; Meschaunce, 896, 914; with meschaunce = with ill luck (to him), H 11. O. F. meschaçences, a mishap; from Lat. minus, less, i.e. badly, and cadenâ, hap; from Lat. cadere, to fall. happen.
Meschief, s. tribulation, trouble, H 76; misfortune, G 1378; Meschief, 713, 1072. O. F. meschef; from Lat. minus, less, badly; and caput, the head.
Message, s. errand, B 1087; also, messenger, B 144. 333. F. message, Low Lat. missaicum, a message, missalicius, a messenger; frommittere, to send.
Messenger, s. messenger, B 724.
785. F. messager; see above.
The n is excescent, as in passenger, i.e. passager.
Mesurable, adj. moderate, C 515. O. F. mesurable, Lat. mensurabilis; from metiri, to measure.
Ministre, s. minister, B 168. From Lat. minus, less; as magister is from magis, more.
Miroir, s. mirror, B 166, G 668. O. F. miroir, a mirror; from Lat. mirari, to gaze, wonder at.
Mis, adj. amiss, wrong, blameworthy, G 999; Icel. missa, a fault; Icel. missa, A. S. mission, to miss.
Misantaunture, s. misfortune, B 616. O. F. mesanture. (Note that in ñant E. words taken from the French the prefix mis- is a corruption of O. F. mes, Lat. minus.) In native words it is the (totally different) A. S. prefix mis-.
Misrule, s. belief of trickery, suspicion, G 1213. Here the prefix is probably the A. S. mis-, wrong. See above.
Mistriste, v. mistrust, C 369. See Misantaunture.
Miteyn, s. mitten, glove, C 372, 373. I.F. mitaine, explained by some: as a half-glove, from O.H.G. miittle, middle; by others, more probably, as being from a Celtic source. Cf. Gaelic miotag, a worsted glove, Irish mitineagh, mittens.
Mochel, adj. much, G 611, H 54; many, G 673. A. S. mycel, much.
Moder, s. mother, B 606; gen. Modres, mother's, C 729, G 1243. A. S. moðor; cf. Icel. modir, G. muter, Lat. mater, Gk. μητέρ, Skt. mātri.
Moebles, s. pl. movable goods, personal property, G 540. From Lat. moeere; cf. F. meubles, furniture.
Glossarial Index.


Mollificacioun, s. mollifying, softening, G 854. From Lat. mollis, soft.

Mone, s. gen. moon's, I 10. A. S. mona, gen. monan; hence the M. E. gen. is often mone as well as mones; see Gloss. II.

Moneyg, s. money, G 1033. O. F. monie, from Lat. moneta, money, a mint.

Mo, adj. more (in number), B 419, C 891, G 207, 675, 693, 723, 818; othere mo—others besides, 1001; na mo = no more, none else, B 695. A. S. mai, more in number; chiefly used as the comparative of our many; whereas the word more commonly means greater in size, used as the comp. of mickle, great.

Mooder, s. mother, B 276. See Moder.

Moorning, s. mourning, B 621. A. S. mormian, morman, to mourn.

Moot, pr. s. must, is to, B 294. See Moot.

Moralitee, s. morality, i.e. a moral tale, I 38. From Lat. mores, manners.

More and leesse, greater and lesser, i.e. every one, B 959. See Mo.

Morfifie, v. to mortifie; lit. to kill; used of producing change by chemical action, G 1431 (see note to the line); Morfifie, 1126. From Lat. moris, death.

Morwe, s. morrow, morn; by the morwe, early in the morning, at dawn, H 16. A. S. morgen, morning. By change of g to w we get morsen, whence morwe by dropping n, which is mod. E. morrow. Direct contraction, with loss of g, gives morn.

Mot, pr. s. 1 p. I must, I have to, B 227, 737, C 327, 725; subj. may, G 634, H 80; mot I then may I thrive, C 309; sole mot thee selle = selly = sefully (i.e. ill) may it happen to thee, H 40; pt. s. I meste, I must, I ought, B 282; pt. s. must, had to, B 886, G 523; subj. might, B 380; vs motse = it must be for us, i.e. it should be our resolve, G 946. A. S. ic mdt, I may; pt. t. ic meste, I ought to, I must.

Motyf, s. motive, incitement, B 628. F. motif; from mover, to move; Lat. movere.

Mountanoe, s. amount, quantity, C 863. O. F. moniance, amount, value; from monter, to mount; which from mont, a mountain; from Lat. acc. montem.

Mow, 2 p. s. pr. subj. mayest, G 460; pl. Mowe, may, can, G 510, 780, 909; 1 p. pr. pl. Mowen, we cannot. From A. S. magan, to be able.

Moysty, adj. new (applied to ale), H 60; Moiste, C 315. O. F. moiste (F. moire); from Lat. muscius, adj. of mystum, new wine, must.

Mullok, s. rubbish, refuse, confused heap of materials, G 938, 940. Gower uses mull in a similar sense; see Specimens of English, ed. Morris and Skeat. Mullok is a diminutive. It is connected with moulid.

Multipolaoloun, s. multiplying, i.e. the art of alchemy, G 849.

Multiplye, v. to make gold and silver by the arts of alchemy, G 669, 731.

Mused, pt. s. pondered, considered, B 1033. F. muser, to loiter, trifle.

Myle, s. pl. miles, G 555; cf. Myles in I, 561. In the former case the oldest form is retained.
Glossarial Index.

cf. A. S. *mila*, the plural nom. gen. and acc. of *mil*, fem. sb. *Mynde*, s. memory, B 527; remembrance, 908, 1127; to mynde = to (my) memory, 788. A. S. *mynd*, gemyn, memory, from *monan*, gemun, to remember. *Myte*, s. a mite, thing of no value, G 511, 633, 698, 1421. We also find the form *mint* (Piers Plowman); it is probable that the word *mite* (with long i for in) is the same word, from the root *min*, small, which appears in Gothic as well as in the Lat. minor.

N.

Glossarial Index.

Nero, pt. s. subj. were not (put for ne were), B 547, G 1362.
Neuer the neer, phr. never the nearer, none the nearer, G 721.
See Neer.
neuradel, adv. not a bit, C 670.
See Del.
Neuome, v. to name, G 821; pr. pl. subj. may name, may mention, 1473. Icel. nefna, to name; nefan, a name; see Nempne.
Nexte, adj. next, nearest, B 807, C 870. See Neigh.
Nill, 1 p. s. pr. I will not, G 1462; pr. s. will not, B 972. A.S. nylian, to be unwilling; cf. Lat. nolle.
Nis, for ne is, is not, B 319, C 861, G 13, 919.
Niste, pt. t. knew not, B 384, G 216. A.S. nytan, not to know; pt. t. ic nyste; from ne, not, and witan, to know.
Nobledest, pt. s. 2 p. ennobledest, didst ennoble, G 40. A translation of Dante's nobilitasit; see the note.
Nobles, s. pl. gold coins worth 6s. 8d.; C 907, G 1365.
Noblesse, s. nobility, worthy behaviour, B 185, 248. F. noblesse; Low Lat. nobilitia; from nobilis, noble.
Nobley, s. nobility, assembly of nobles, G 449. Cf. O.F. nobloier, to look noble.
Nodde, v. to nod, H 47. A Low-German word, cognate with O.H.G. nuoton, knoton, to shake. The Lat. nuere, to nod, shews the root; mutare is but a frequentative, so that the t in it does not answer to the e. d.
Nolde, for no wolde, I would not, I should not desire, G 1341; pt. pl. Nolde, would not, 395. See Nill.
Noot, for ne wot, pr. s. 1 p. I know not, B 892, 1019, G 1148; Not, B 242, C 816, H 23.
A.S. ic nād, I know not, fī nytan, not to know.
Norioe, s. nurse, G 1. O.F. nor
Lat. acc. nutriem.
No-thing, adv. in no respect 576, 971, C 764; not at all 404, 433, G 1036.
Notified, pp. made known, claimed, B 256. Lat. notifico to make known; notus, know
Noughts, s. nothing, C 542, 1401; in no respect, B 400. Naught.
Nycce, adj. foolish, weak, B 1081 493, 647, 842, H 69. F. nice, necio, Port. nescio, or necio, l nescius, ignorant. See Gloss I
Nyootee, s. folly, G 493, 4 See above.

O.
o, num. one, B 1135, G. Shortened from on or oon;
Oon.
Ooodent, s. West, B 297. Fr Lat. occidentem.
Oocupieth, pr. s. takes up, dw in, B 424. From Lat. occupabo.
Of, prep. during, B 510; with 626. A.S. of.
Offreth, imp. pl. 2 p. offer yi 910. A.S. offerian, to offer merely borrowed from Lat. of.
Ofte, adv. often, B 278.
Ones, adv. once, B 588, 861 758; of one mind, united in des C 696; at ones at once, H A.S. ones, ones; gen. case of one.
Oo, adj. one, G 207. See Oar.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Ook, s. oak, C 765. A. S. ᵐائه, Icel. eik, G. eiche.

Oon, adj. one, B 271; 334. I 16; one and the same. C 333; that oon = the one, 666. A. S. án, Icel. eins, Goth. ains, Lat. unus.

Oppressae, v. to put down, G 4.

From Lat. oppressere.

Or, adv. ere, before, G 314; conj. B 373. A. S. ër, before; another form of ër, E. ere.

Ordained, pp. ordained, i.e. prepared, G 1277. O. F. ordener, Lat. ordinare, to set in order; from ordo, order.

Ordinance, s. ordaining, governance, arrangement, B 763, 805; provision, 250. See above.

Ordre, s. order, class, G 995. F. ordre, from Lat. acc. ordinem.

Organs, s. pl. ‘organs,’ the old equivalent of organ, G 134; see the note. Or it may mean ‘musical instruments.’ Lat. pl. organa; from Gk. ὄργανον, an implement; from ὄργανον, to work.

Orisons, s. pl. prayers, B 537, 596. O. F. orison, from Lat. acc. orationem.

Orpiment, s. orpiment, G 759, 774, 813. ‘Orpiment, tri-sulphide of arsenic; it occurs in nature as an ore of arsenic, and is usually in combination with realgar, or red sulphuret of arsenic;’ Webster. F. orpiment, Lat. auripigmentum; from aurum, gold, and pigmentum, a pigment or paint.

Osanne, i.e. Hosannah, B 642. A Hebrew phrase; meaning ‘save, we pray.

Otes, s. pl. oats, C 375. A. S. áta, Icel. æta, oats.

Other, adj. other, either . . . or, B 1136, G 1147. In the first instance, the second other is written in the contracted form or (which is short for other).

Otheres, pron. sing. each other’s, lit. of the other, C 476. A. S. ðær, Du. ander, Icel. annar, Goth. anhar. The E form has lost an n.

Othes, s. pl. oaths, C 472, 636. A. S. déh, Icel. eðr, Goth. aĩhs, an oath.

Ouer, prep. over, above (pron. rapidly), B 277; ouer her might = to excess, G 468. A. S. ðēr, Icel. yfr, G. über.


Ouerdone, pp. overdone, carried to excess, G 645. A. S. oferdón, to overdo.

Ouer-greet, adj. too great, G 648.

Ouertake, v. to overtake, attain to, G 682.

Ought, s. anything of value, G 1333. A. S. ðæ-wíht, one whit.

Oughte, pt. s. became; as him oughte = as it became him, B 1997; it was fit, as in hem oughte be = it was fit for them, G 1340; pt. s. subj. it would become, as in oughte vs = it would become us, it would be our duty, 14; 1 p. pt. pl. Oughten, we ought, 6. A. S. ðigan, to owe, to own; pr. t. ic ðahn, I own; pt. t. ic ðah, I ought.

Ounces, s. pl. ounces, G 756. From Lat. uncia.

Oures, poss. pron. ours, C 786.

Outon, v. to come out with, utter, display, exhibit, G 834. A. S. ñitan, to put out, eject; cf. O. H. G. âson, to put out. (A rare word).


Outrelly, adv. utterly, C 849.

Out-taken, pp. excepted (Hol. taken out), B 277.
Glossarial Index.

Oversoppel, s. upper-garment, G 633. See note. Cf. Icel. yfir-
slóppr, an upper or over garment; cf. L. sulp, in the compound 'slóp-shop.'

Owen, adj. own, B 1058, C 834:
Icel. eiginn, own, from eiga, to possess.

Oweth, pr. s. owneth, owns, posses-
sess, C 361. A. S. eigan, to possess; Icel. eiga.

Owfer, adv. anywhere, G 838. A. S. 'ætfer, anywhere.

Oyles, s. pl. oils, G 856. From Lat. oleum, oil.

P.

Paa, s. pace, foot-pace, G 575
(see the note); gon a paa = go at a foot pace, C 866. From
Lat. passus, a step.

Pace, ger. to pass; to pace of= to pass from, B 205. F. passer,
Low Lat. passare, to pass over.
From pandere.

Failed, adj. enfeebled, languid, H 55. Not connected with pale,
but from W. fallu, to fail, W. poll, loss of energy. See Appalachian
in Gloss. II.

Palm, s. palmbranch, G 240. Lat.
palma.

Panne, s. a pan, G 1210. A dis-
syllabic word. A. S. and Icel.
panna.

Paraunet, adv. peradventure, perhaps, B 190.

Par oas, by chance, B 885.

Parde, interj. F. par Diru, C 672.

Parfay, interj. by my faith, verily,
B 849. O F. par fei.

Parfit, adj. perfect; G 353. F.
parfait, Lat. perfectus.

Paritólic, s. pellitory, Paritaria
officinalis, G 581. In rural dis-
tricts an infusion of this plant is
a favourite medicine; 'Flowers of
the Field, by C. A. Johns, 'Pari-
taure, pellitory of the wall;' Cot-
grave. From Lat. parie, a wall.

Paa, s. pace, B 399; pl. Pas, paces,
movements, 306. See Pas.

Passen, v. to surpass, outdo, G 857. See Pæce.

Passing, adj. surpassing, excellent.
G 614.

Patentio, s. a letter of privilege, so
called because open to all men's
inspection, C 337. From Lat.
pater, to lie open.

Paus, v. to pause, G 616. From
Lat. pauire, to ram or beat down
earth; cf. Gk. παύειν, to strike.

Payens, s. pl. pagans, B 534. F.
paien, Lat. paganus, prop. a
villager. See Hethon.

Pees, s. peace, G 44; in pess= in
silence, B 228. O. F. pes, Lat.
acc. paecem.

Pees, interj. peace! hush! B 836.
G 951.

Pens, s. pl. pense, C 376. (N. B.
Pens was pronounced with shap
s, as in pensive, not with z, as in
the pl. of pen.)

Pepee, s. pepper, G 762. From
Lat. pipar, Skt. pipali.

Parauneture, adv. perhaps, per-
chance, C 935. H 71. See Para-
uneture.

Percon, pr. pl. pierce, G 911. F.
percier.

Perfit, adj. perfect, I 50. See Parfit.

Perseueranooe, s. continuance, G
443. See below.

Perseueresth, pr. s. lasteth, C 497.
From Lat. perseverare.

Perseueringe, s. perseverance, G
117.

Persoon, s. parson, I 23. From
Lat. persona.

Peter, interj. by St. Peter, G 665.
See note, p. 185.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Peyne, s. pain, G 1398; penalty, H 86. F. peine, Lat. poena.

Peyne, pr. s. 1 p. refl. I peyne me =I take pains, C 330, 395; pr. s. refl. Peyneth hir, endeavours, B 320.

Peytral, s. properly, the breast-plate of a horse in armour; here used for the breast-plate of a horse's harness. G 564. Cf. O.F. poitrail (Roquefort), Fr. poitrail, Lat. pectorale; from Lat. pectus, the breast.

Philosophes, s. philosopher, G 490; pl. Philosophers, 1427.

Pinchen, ger. to find fault, H 74. F. pincer, O.F. pisier (for piercer), from a Low German source; cf. Old Dutch pisen, to pinch; G pfetsen, to cut; O.H.G. pfæzen, to pinch; Diez.

Pitee, s. pity, B 292, 660. F. pitié, O.F. pitéz, Lat. acc. pietatem. (Gloss. II.)

Pitoux, adj. pitiful, sad, B 449.

Pitously, adv. piteously, B 1059, C 298.

Plages, s. pl. regions, B 543. From Lat. plaga, a region. Used twice by Chaucer in his Treatise on the Astrolabe (ed. Skeat, i. 5, 7; ii. 31, 10) to signify 'quarters of the compass.'

Plantayn, s. plantain, G 581. F. plantain, from Lat. acc. plantagineum. Cf. Romeo and Juliet, i. 2. 52—'Your plantain-leaf is excellent for that.' The A.S. name was wegbrađde, lit. way-broad (not way bread); see weg-brāđde, in Gloss. to Cockayne's Leechdoms.

Plat, adv. bluntly, flatly, openly, plainly, B 886, C 648. F. plat, flat; from O. H. G.; G. platt.

Playn, adv. plainly, clearly, B 990. F. plain, Lat. planus. See Pleyn.

Plessance, s. pleasure, will, delight, B 149, 276, 763, 1140. F. plaisance; from Lat. placere, to please.

Pleyn, adj. plain, clear, B 324. F. plain, Lat. planus. See Playn.

Pleyne, adv. plainly, clearly, B 886, G 360. See above.

Pleyne, adj. full, G 346. F. pleine, Lat. plenus.

Pleyne, v. to complain, lament, B 1067, C 512. F. plaindre, Lat. plangere.

Pleyntes, s. pl. complaints, lamentations, B 1068. O.F. plaintes, Lat. planctus, a lament.

Plyght, pp. pledged, plighted, C 701. A.S. plihhtan, to pledge; pp. gepliht; pliht, a pledge; G pflicht, a duty.

Plyte, s. plight, state, G 553. A better spelling would be plyghte; see above.

Point, s.; in point =on the point, ready (to), B 331, 910. F. point, Lat. punctum.

Pokets, s. pl. pockets, i.e. little bags, G 808. A.S. poen, a poke, bag; perhaps Celtic; cf. Gaelic poc, a bag, a pocket, Icel. poki, a bag.

Pokees, s. pl. pocks, pustules, C 358. A.S. poc, Du. pok, a pock, pustule. Small pock is a corrupt form of 'the small pocks.'

Polec, s. polecat, C 855.

Polioye, s. public business, C 600. From Gk. póleis, a state, city; whence politia, administration, Latinised as politia, and thence adopted into French.

Pomely, adj. dapple; in the compound pomely gris, i.e. dapple-grey, G 559; cf. Prologue, 616 Cotgrave has—'Gris pommelé, a dapple grey.' Also—'Pommelé,' dapple, or dappled; also round, or plump as an apple.' And again—'Pommeter, to grow round, or plump like an apple; also, to
dapple. 'Dapple, by the way, is from the verb to dnb, and Wedgwood well remarks,—'The resemblance of dapple-gray to O. N. apalgrir, or apple-gray, Fr. gris pommelé, is accidental.'

Porphyrio, s. porphyry, i.e. a slab of porphyry used as a mortar, G 775. From Lat. porphyrizes, Gk. πορφύρης, like purple; from πορφόη, purple.

Pose, s. a cold in the head, H 62.

A.S. geose, a stuffing or cold in the head.

Potage, s. broth, C 368. (Gloss. II.)

Pothecarie, s. apothecary, C 852.

Poudre, s. powder, G 760; pl. Poudres, 807. F. poudre, O.F. poldre, Lat. acc. pulvereum, dust.

Pouert, s. poverty, C 441. O.F. poverté, Lat. paupertatem.

Pound, s. pl. pounds, G 1364.

A.S. pund, a pound; pl. pund. So we say,—'a five-pound note.'

Pouped, pp. blown, H 90. An imitative word. See Gloss. I.

Pouren, 1 p. s. tr. we pore, gaze steadily, G 670.

Poureast, adj. superl. poorest, C 449. O.F. poure, Lat. pauper.

Poynt, s. a stop, G 1480. See Point.

Predioscioun, s. preaching, sermon, C 345, 407. From Lat. praedicare, to preach.

Preef, s. the test, H 75; a test, proof, G 968, 1379. Cf. F. prower, Lat. probare, to prove. See Preue.

Prees, s. press, throng, B 393, 646, 677. F. presse; from Lat. premer, to press.

Prefectes, s. pl. prefects, G 369. Lat. praefectus.

Preue, v. to prove, i.e. bide the test, G 645; to prove to be right, to succeed when tested, 1312; pp. Preued, tested, 1330.

Cf. F. prowess, Lat. probare, to test. But it is not certain that probe is a French word; we find also A.S. prófan, Icel. próf, G. prófen, to prove, try. 'For he bide it to prôfære, he is to be held to be a thief;' Laws of lnc. (A. N. 689—728); cap. xx.

Preynde, pt. s. prayed, besought, B 391. O.F. prier, Lat. precari, to pray.

Preyere, s. prayer, G 256; Prayer, H 6. O. F. priere, prayer.

Prisked, pp. spurred, G 561. A.S. pricciæan, to prick, goad; Du. prikkem.

Prisue, adj. privy, private, secret, B 204, C 675; Priuy, G 1452. F. privé, Lat. privatus.

Pruetest, s. secret counsel, secrecy, B 548, G 1052, 1138; Priuyte, G 701.

Profer, 2 p. s. pr. subj. mayst proffer, mayst offer, G 489. F. proferer, Lat. prefferre, to bring forward.

Prolla, pr. pl. 2 p. ye proll, prroll about, search widely, G 1412. See Prollyn, and Prollyng, in Prompt. Parv. The source is, no doubt, Lat. pruidd, prey.

Propre, adj. fine, handsome, C 309. F. propre, proper; Lat. proprius.

Prose, s. prose, I 46. F. prose, Lat. prosa.

Protestacio, s. protest, I 59.

Prow, s. profit, advantage, C 300, G 609. O.F. prov, prod, gain, advantage; the source appears in Lat. prod-itus, it is advantageous.

Prye, v. to pry, look, peer, G 668. Origin unknown. Perhaps it is merely a peculiar use of F. prier, to pray; also, to beseech, beg.

Pryme, s. prime; used in Chaucer, apparently, to signify 9 a.m., C 652. (Gloss. I.)
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Pulpit, s. pulpit, C 391. Lat. pulpitum.

Purchasen, ger. to purchase, acquire, G 1405; imp. s. Purchase, may (He) provide, B 873. F. pourchasser, to hunt after, acquire.

Purged, pp. absolved, cleansed (by baptism), G 181. Lat. purgere, to purify.

Purpos, s. purpose, design, B 170. F. propos, Lat. proposition. The verb to purpose is both proposer and purposer in Old French.

Purse, s. pl. purses, G 1404. F. bourse, Gk. Biopera, a skin.

Purvelianoe, s. equipment, B 247; providence, 483. F. pourvoir (O.F. porvoir), to purvey or provide; Lat. providere.

Pye, s. magpie, G 505. F. pie, Lat. pica.

Pyne, s. suffering, B 1080. A.S. pis, pain; Icel. pina, to torment.

Q.

Quelle, v. to kill, C 854; imp. s. may (he) kill, G 705. M.E. cullen, Icel. kolla, to hit on the head, to harm, from kolfr, head, top. But some take kill and quell to be doublets.

Quene, s. queen, G 1089; Queene, B 161. A.S. cwen, Gk. kouro, a woman. It is remarkable that Chaucer makes it a dissyllabic word; see also Gloss. II.

Quynte, adj. pl. strange, G 752. O.F. cointe, instructed, Lat. cognitus, known; but it seems to have been influenced by Lat. comptus, trimmed.

Quike, ger. to make alive, quicken, G 481. A.S. cweccan, to make alive; cf. Icel. kvikna, to revive; from A.S. cwic, Icel. kvikr, alive; related to Lat. vivus.

Quik-silver, s. quicksilver, i.e. lively silver, G 822. A.S. cwic, alive.

Quyte, v. to repay (lit. quit), G 736, 1025; Quyten, 1027; Quyte with = to repay ... with, 1055; to satisfy, pay in full, B 354; Quyte her whyle = require her time or trouble, lit. repay her time; i.e. her occupation, pains, trouble, B 584; I p. s. pr. I requite, C 420; pp. Quit, freed, G 66, 448. O.F. quier (F. quitter), Lat. quietare, to quiet, satisfy; from quietes, rest.

R.

Rad, pp. read, G 211. See Rede.

Rammish, adj. ramlike, strong-scented, G 887. Cf. Icel. ramar, strong, fetid; which is probably closely related to A.S. ramman, a ram.

Rancour, s. rancour, ill-feeling, H 97. O.F. rancor, rancur, rancure (F. rancue); from Lat. acc. rancorem, a ranking.

Rape, v. to snatch up; rape and renne, seize and plunder, G 1422. See the note. The Icel. kropa means to rush, to hurry; the proper word to use in this phrase would rather have been rive; but there was probably a confusion here with the common Lat. verb rapere. Similarly the Icel. verb rana, to rob, to plunder, has been turned into renne, as if from A.S. renman, to run. Thus rape and renne (as if from Lat. rapare, and A.S. renman) has been substituted for the original Icel. kropa (or rifa) ok rana. See Renna.

Rather, adv. sooner, earlier (in point of time), B 225, 335; C 643. A.S. hræð, soon; hræðor, sooner.

Ratten, s. pl. rats, C 854. A.S. rat.

Rauue, i p. pl. pres. we rave, we speak madly, G 959. Exym. doubtful. Roquefort gives an
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

O. F. roaver, to run about. Cf. Lat. robera, to be mad; from which, however, the F. has enragé.
Recohe, i p. s. gres. 1 reck, G 489. A. S. rican, incl. räkinja, O. Flemish roeken. See Rake.
Recoheles, adj. careless, indifferent (lit. reckless), B 229. A. S. recelinas; cf. Du. roekeloos.
Recieit, s. receipt, i. e. recipe for making a mixture, G 1355, 1366. Receit is from Lat. pp. receptus; receipe is the Lat. imperative singular from the same verb, viz. recipere.
Recousyed, pp. accepted (as congenial), acceptable, B 307. F. recevoir, Lat. recipere.
Reclayme, v. to reclame, as a hawk by a lure, i. e. check, H 72. From Lat. re, back, and clamare, to call.
Recommandeth, pr. s. refl. commands (herself), B 278; ger. Recomendete, to commend, commit, G 544. Lat. re, back; con, with; mandare, to hand over.
Rede, adv. as sb. red, i. e. the blood, B 366; as sb. red wine, C 516, 592; pl. Rede, red, G 1005. A. S. ræd, red; Icel. ræðr, G. rot. The indef. form is red, q. v. ; rede is def. or plural.
Redily, adv. quickly, C 667. A. S. ræðd, red, ready.
Reed, s. counsel, advice, C 744. A. S. ræðd; cf. G. rath.
Reed, adj. red, ruddy, B 452, H 20. See Rede.
Redennesse, s. redness, G 1097, 1100. See above.
Refu, s. place of refuge, refuge, B 546, 852, G 75. Cf. O. F. refui, refuge; Lat. refugium. It is not easy to account for the ë; but cf. F. fuite, flight, from Lat. pp. fugius.
Regne, s. kingdom, realm, B 389, 392, 735; pl. Regnes, kingdoms, 181. F. regne, Lat. regnum.
Regneth, pr. s. reigneth, has dominion, B 776. From Lat. regnare.
Rehersæ, v. to rehearse, recount, G 786. O. F. reheacer, to repeat, lit. to harrow over again; from herce, Lat. acc. herpiceam, a harrow (Varro). See Gloss. I.
Rehersailles, s. rehearsal, enumeration, G 852. See above.
Rekeninges, s. pl. reckonings, H 74. A. S. reeman, to reckon.
Rekke, pr. s. 1 p. 1 reck, care, C 405; imp. s. reck, care, G 698; pr. s. Rickke, accounts, cares, G 632. See Recoehe.
Rekne, ger. to reckon, B 158. A. S. reenan, to reckon; G. rechnen.
Relees, s. relaxation, ceasing; out of relees, without ceasing, G 46. O. F. releis, relais, relaxation; from the verb releessor (F. relaisser), which is the Lat. relaxare, to relax; from laxus, loose.
Relente, v. to melt, G 1478. From prefix re-, again; and Lat. lentare, to bend; from Lat. lentus, pliant.
Relesso, v. to relieve, relax, B 1069. O. F. releessor (F. releisseur), to relax; Lat. relaxare, to relax: from laxus, lax, loose.
Releued, pp. relieved, made rich again, G 872. Lat. relegare, to lift up again.
Remenant, s. remnant, remainder, G 1004. From Lat. manere, to remain.
Remeueth, imp. pl. 2 p. remove ye, G 1098. From Lat. movere, to move.
Renegat, s. renegade, apostate, B 932. Low Lat. *renegatus*, one who has abjured his faith; from *negare*, to deny. See below.

Reneye, v. to renounce, abjure, B 376, G 268, 448, 459; 1 p. s. pr. subj. 1 (may) renounce, 464; pt. pl. 1 p. we abjured, B 340; pp. Reneyed, 915. Lat. *renegare*, to adjure, renounce, deny; from *negare*, to deny. Shakespeare uses the Lat. form *reneg*. King Lear, ii. 2, 84; Ant. and Cleop. i. 1, 8.


Renne, v. to ransack, plunder; but only in the phrase the rape and renne, seize and plunder, G 1422. See the note. Icel. *ræna*, to plunder; *rín*, plunder; which appears in E. *ransack*. The word has been turned into *renne*, which properly means to run. See above; and see Rape.

Bente, s. rent, toll, B 1142. F. *rente* from F. *rendre*, Lat. *reddere*, to restore, render.

Rapaireth, pr. s. returns, B 967. O. F. *repairier =* Ital. *ripatriare*, to return to one's native country; from Lat. *patria*, native country.

Replet, adj. full, replete, C 489. Lat. *repletus*.

Reprepuable, adj. reprehensible, C 632. See below.

Repreuve, v. to reprove, H 70; pr. s. Repreueh, I 33. From Lat. *reprobare*; whence O. F. *reprover*, to reprove.

Repreue, s. reproof, shame, C 595. See above.

Resalgar, s. realgar, G 814. 'Realgar, a combination of sulphur and arsenic, of a brilliant red colour as existing in nature; red orpiment;' Webster. F. *réalgar*, answering to an O. F. *resalgar*, Low Lat. *risigallum*.

Respyt, s. respite, delay (of death), G 543. O. F. *respi*, (F. *répit*), Lat. *respectus*, a respect, regard, looking back. Hence *respite* and *respect* are doubles.

Resteleeus, adj. restless, C 728. F. *reste*, rest; *restor, to remain, Lat. *restare*; from *re*, and *stare*, to stand.

Rene, ger. to take away, G 376. A.S. *reisfan*, to rob; whence E. *be-reave*.

Rewe, v. to suffer for, do penance for, G 997; imp. s. have pity; B 853; pr. s. 2 p. Rewest, hast pity, 854. A.S. *hréowian*, to grieve; from *hréow*, grief.

Rewful, adj. sorrowful, sad, B 854. See above.

Rewthe, s. pitty, ruth, B 529, 654, 689; as adj. pitiful, 1052. Formed from the verb to *rew* (see above); but the A.S. sb. is *hréow*, grief. Still, the Icel. has *hrýggð*.

Rewtheless, adj. pitiless, B 863.

Reyno, ger. to raise, G 861. Icel. *reiisa*, to raise; the A.S. is *rýdan*, whence E. *rear*.

Ribaudye, s. ribaldry, ribald jesting, C 314. O. F. *ribal*, Low Lat. *ribaldus*, a ribald, a worthless fellow.

Riden, pt. pl. rode, C 968. See Rydinge.


Bist, pr. s. contr. riseth, risca, B 864.

Rit, pr. s. rides (contr. from *rideh*), G 608, H 79.

Rolallée, s. royalty, B 418. From F. *roi*, Lat. *rex*; Skt. *rjaja*, a king.

Rolaller, a. j. comp. royaller, more royal, B 402.

Rollsth, pr. s. rolls, turns over, C 838. O. Y. rolver (F. *rouler*).
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Lat. rotulare, to turn round; from rota, a wheel.

Rom, ram, ruf; nonsense words, to imitate alliteration (see note), I 43.

Rumbled, pt. s. rumbled, fumbled, G 1322. Cf. Du. rommel, to rumble, buzz; also, to mix up, disarrange; Dan. rumle, to rumble, to roll. See Gloss. II.

Romen, v. to roam, B 538. Cf. O.F. romen, romien, romier, Ital. romero (Dante), a pilgrim to Rome. Hence roman — to go to Rome; the modern spelling spoils the word.

Rong, pt. s. rang, C 662. A.S. hrungan, to ring.

Rose-reed, adj. red as a rose, G 254. (Trisyllabic.)

Rote, s. root; an astrological term for the epoch of a nativity, B 314 (see note): the radix, the fundamental principle, G 1461; root, source, II 358, G 1069, 1301. Icel. rót, Swe.d. rot (Scandinavian).

Rote, in phr. by rote, i.e. by heart, C 322. O.F. rote, F. route; allied to F. routine, O.F. rotiue. ‘Par rotiue, by rote;’ Cotgrave. See Route.

Roten, pp. rotten, G 17, 228. A.S. rodtan, to rot, putrefy, pp. gerotod. The form rotten is Scandinavian; Icel. rotan, rotten, pp. of rotan, to rot.


Route, s. troop, throng, company, B 38, 650, 776. F. route, from Lat. rotte, a broken (band); from rumpere, to break. Cf. G. rote, a troop; O. Flemish rote.

Routes, v. to assemble in a company, B 540. See above.

Row, adj. rough, angry, forbidding, G 861. A.S. rugh, rough, ragged, hairy; Du. ruw, rough, rugged.

Rownen, v. to whisper, G 894. A.S. rinnen, to whisper; from rūn, a rime, a magic character, a mystery; O. Flem. ruwen, to whisper. Hence round, to whisper, in Shakespeare.

Rubifying, s. rubefaction, reddening, G 797.


Byrn, s. rime (commonly misspelt rhyme), I 44. The spelling rhyme, or rhime (with ð inserted from ignorance) is not older than A.D. 1550. A.S. rim, Icel. réma, G. reim, Du. rijm, Dan. rim. Swe.d. rim, F. rime.

Byrno, v. to rime, to speak in verse, G 1093. See above.

Ryotoures, s. pl. rioters, roysteren. C 661. Roquefort gives rivei, to dispute; rīote, noise, combat; faire rīote, to grumble, dispute; rīos, a dispute, debate. The suggested connection with Da. ravotten, to rump, is unlikely.

Byrne, v. to rive, pierce, C 828. Icel. rífa, Dan. rive, to rive, tear: cf. Icel. hrifa, to catch, grapple.

S.


Sadel, s. saddle, H 52. A.S. sadel.

Sadly, adv. in a settled manner, i.e. deeply, unostentatiously, B 743. See Sad.
Glossarial Index.

Saffron, with, to tinge with saffron, to colour, C 345. F. safran; from the Arab. za'farun, saffron.

Sal ammoniac, s. sal ammoniac, G 798, 824. Lat. sal ammoniacum, Armenian salt. 'Sal ammoniac, chloride of ammonium, a salt of a sharp, acrid taste; ... also called hydrochlorate, or muriate of ammonia'; Webster. The word ammoniac certainly answers to the Lat. Armoniacum in the old treatises. Nevertheless the right spelling is, perhaps, ammoniac; 'dajamnastov, ro, sal ammoniacum, rock-salt, Discorides'; Liddell and Scott.

Sal peter, s. saltpetre, G 808. Lat. sal petra, rock-salt; 'so called because it exudes from rocks or walls; nitrate of potassa; — called also nitre'; Webster.

Sal preparat, s. prepared salt, G 810. See the note.

Sal tartre, s. salt of tartar, G 810. 'Salt of tartar, carbonate of potash; ... at first prepared from cream of tartar'; Webster.

Saluthe, pr. s. saluthe, B 731. F. saluer, Lat. salutare.

Sans, prep. without, B 501. F. sans, O. F. sens, Lat. sine.

Sapience, s. wisdom, G 101, 111. pl. Sapiences, kinds of intelligence (see note), 338. From Lat. sapere, to know.

Satins, s. pl. satins, B 137. F. satin, Low Lat. setimus. adj. from Lat. seta, silk; whence also F. soie.

Salucloum, s. salvation, B 283, H 28.

Sauve, prep. save, except, B 217, G 1355. F. sauf; from Lat. salus.

Sauve, imp. 1. 3 p. save, may (he) save, G 1361; pl. 2 p. Suedst, savedst, B 639; Savedst, imp. pl. VOl. III.

save ye, 229. O. F. sauer, Lat. saluare, to keep.


Sauour, s. savour, smell, G 887. F. sauvère, Lat. acc. saforem.

Saw, s. discourse (lit. saw, or saying), G 691; saw, saying, 1441. A. S. sau, a saying.

Scabbe, s. scab, a disease of sheep, C 358. A. S. sceob, scab.

Soped, pp. escaped, B 1151. O. F. eschaper, said to be from Low Lat. escapare, to get out of one's cloak, to flee. See Brachet, s. v. eschaper.

Scargote, s. scarcity, G 1393. O. F. escharseete, sparingness, frugality; from O. F. eschars, or escars, Low Lat. escarpsus, pp. of escaprere = escerpere, to select.

Scattered, pp. scattered, G 914. A. S. scetrarn, to scatter; cf. sceidan, to separate.

Bolaundre, pr. s. 1 p. 1 slander, G 993; 2 p. Sclandrest, 695. F. esclandre; from Lat. scandalum; whence also scandal. Slander and scandal are doubles.

Scorpionioun, s. scorpion, B 414. Lat. acc. scorpionem.

Sacruo, adj. secret, G 178, 643. O. F. secret, secrets; Lat. secretum.

Score of secreas, secret of secrets. Lat. Secreta Secretorum (the name of a book), G 1447.

Sorenessse, s. secrecy, B 773.

See, imp. s. 3 p. may (he) behold, or protect, B 156, C 715. See note to the latter passage, p. 162.

See Been.

Seel, s. seal, B 882, C 337. O. F. sieil; from Lat. sigillum.

Seen, v. to see, B 182. A. S. seon, to see. See See, and Sey.

Seilswor, for sayest thou, G 260. See Seye.

Sekon, ger. to seek, i.e. a matter
Glossarial Index.

for search, G 874. A.S. sæcan, to seek; ger. to sename.
Sealed, pp. sealed, B 736. See Seal.
Sely, adj. blessed, holy, B 682; innocent, C 292; silly, simple, G 1076. A.S. sælig, happy.
Sentence, s. judgment, order, I 17; verdict, G 368; Sentens, general meaning, I 58. From Lat. sententia.
Sepulture, s. sepulchre, C 558. Lat. sepulcrum, burial.
Sergeants, s. pl. sergeants, G 361. F. sergent, Lat. servientem, pres. pt. of servire, to serve.
Sermon, ger. to preach, speak, C 879. From Lat. sermo, a discourse.
Servage, s. servitude, thraldom, bondage, B 368. F. servage; from F. servir, Lat. servire.
Serviable, adj. serviceable, useful, G 1014.
Season, s. season, G 1343. O.F. sezon, Lat. sationem, a sowing-time.
Sette, pt. s. set, B 1053; reft. set herself, i.e. sat, 329; sette heron knees = cast herself on her knees, 638; pl. reft. Sette hem, seated themselves, C 775; Setten hem adoun, set themselves, G 396; pp. Set, set, placed, put, B 440. A.S. settan, to place; from sittan, to sit.
Seurtee, s. security, surety, B 243, C 937. O.F. seurte, Lat. acc. securitatem.
Seye, ger. to say, tell, i.e. to be told, B 706; i p. s. pr. Sey, I say, 1139; pt. pl. Seyden, said, B 211; 2 p. Seydestow, saidst thou, G 334. A.S. seagan, pt. t. ic saegde.
Shadow, s. shadow, I 7. A.S. scealo.
Shal, pr. s. is to, must, B 268, 665; i p. I am to (go), G 303: 2 p. Shaltow, for shalt thou, G 257. A.S. ic scel. See Shole.
Shames, s. gen. of shame; shameth, death of shame, i.e. shameful death, B 819. A.S.anche, shame.
Shap, s. shape, form, G 44. A.S. gesceapu, shape; from scippan, to create.
Shapen, v. to devise, invent, B 210; pp. disposed (themselves), 142; prepared, 249; appointed, 253; planned, 951. A.S. scippan, to create, plan.
Shaping, s. a thin slice, G 1339. A.S. scipfan, to shave, scrape.
Shote, s. a sheet, G 779; pl. Shetes, 536. A.S. scott.
Shifte, v. to apportion, assign, G 278. A.S. sciftan, sciftan, to appoint, divide; Icel. skjöp, to divide, distribute.
Sholde, pt. s. had to, was to, G 1352, I 65. A.S. ic scold, scolde, pt. t. of sculen. The pres. t. is ic scowde. See Shol, Shoul.
Shnoop, pt. s. tormesh, champed, G
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

shoo: shoo, v., to push, shove, 1123; shoo, v., to push, shove, H 83. A. S. scifan, to push, shove.

Shrews, adj. evil, wicked, 995; as sb., evil one, 917; an ill-tempered (male) person, C 496; pl. Shrews, wicked men, rascals, 835, G 746. 'Shrews, pravus.' Prompt. Parv.

Shul, pr. pl. shall, may, C 733; 1 p. I must, I have to, B 351; 2 p. pr. pl. Shullen, ye shall, G 241; pt. s. i p. Shulde, I should, I ought to, B 247. See Shal.

Siker, adj. sure, G 934; certain, 1047; safe, 864. O. Saxon sikehr, siker; O. H. G. sikhur, G. siker.

Sikerinne, s. security, safety, B 425.

Silner, s. silver, G 826. A. S. seolfer.

Similitude, s. comparison; hence, proposition, statement, G 431. Lat. similitudo.

Sin, conj. since, B 282, 1115, G 495, 504; adv. since, B 157. Contr. from A. S. stefam, since; from stef, time. See Bithen.

Singular, adj. a single, G 997. Lat. singularis.

Sith, conj. since, B 484, 814, G 1472; adv. afterwards, C 869. See below.

Sithen, adv. afterwards, B 1121. A. S. stefam, afterwards; for stefam, since then; where stef is from the adj. stef, late; which from stef, a time. See below.

Sitho, s. pl. times; ofte sithe, many times, G 1031. A. S. stef, a time. See Sythe.

Skilful, adj. discerning, B 1038, G 329. Icel. skil, discernment; skifja, to separate.

Skiffly, adv. reasonably, with good reason, G 320. (The M. E. skil often means a reason; see Gloss. II.)

Sloe, v. to slay, G 896; Sle, 168; Sleen, C 845; ger. Sleen, G 481; pr. s. Sleeth, slays, C 676, 754; pr. pl. Sleen, they slay, B 964; pt. s. Slow, slew, B 627, 664, 894. A. S. slein, pt. t. sloth, pp. slagen, to strike, slay.

Sleights, s. dat. craft, skill, G 867; pl. Sleights, devices, 773, 976. Icel. slegð, slynsyn; sleggr, sly.

Sleeve, s. sleeve, G 1224, 1231. A. S. stef, a sleeve.

Slewthe, s. sloth, B 530; Slouthe, G 258. A. S. slewð, sloth; from slaeve, slow.


Slogardye, s. sloth, sluggishness, G 17. 'Slogge, deces, segnis;' Prompt. Parv.

Slough, s. mud, mire, H 64. A. S. slog, a slough, hollow place.

Slouthe, s. sloth, G 258. See Slewthe.

Slow, pt. t. slew, B 627, 664, 894. See Sloe.

Sluttish, adj. slovenly, G 636. Cf. Du. stoden, a sloven; stoderen, slovenly; stodderen, to hang loosely about.

Slyding, adj. unstable, slippery, G 732. See Sitt.

Smart, adj. brisk (said of a fire), G 768. The word smart, sb., is properly used of a sudden pain.

Smart, s. smart, pain, G 712. Du. smurt (O. Du. smurt), painfulness; cf. G. schmerz.

Smarte, 1 p. pl. pres. subj. may smart, may suffer, G 871. Cf. Du. smarten, to give pain.

Smot, pt. s. smote, struck, B 669; Smoot, C 677. A. S. smitan, to smite; pt. t. is smat.

Snare, s. snare, B 571, H 71; Icel. snara, a twisted cord, a
snare; Swed. *snara,* a snare; cf. Icel. *snara,* to twist tightly.

**Snow-white,** adj. white as snow, G 254.

**Sooour,** s. succour, help, B 664. O.F. *soorses,* help; from Lat. *succurrere.*

**Sodeyn,** adj. sudden, B 421. O.F. *sodain,* L.at. *subitaneus,* sudden; from *subitus,* sudden, which from *subire,* from sub, under, and *ire,* to go.

**Softe,** adj. gentle, slow, B 399; adv. softly, tenderly, 275. A.S. *soft,* G. *saft,* soft, mild.

**Softely,** adv. gently, quietly, G 408.

**Soilourned,** pp. sojourned, dwelt, B 418, 536. O.F. *soiourner,* to dwell; from Lat. *sub,* and *diurnare,* to delay, formed from *diurnus,* daily; which from *dies,* a day.

**Sol,** Šol (the sun), G 826. Lat. *sol.*

**Solempne,** adj. magnificent, illustrious, B 387. O.F. *solempne,* célèbre, de grande réputation, illustre;’ Roquefort. Lat. *solemnis.*

**Solempnely,** adv. with pomp, solemnly, B 317, 309, 691, G 272.

**Som,** from indef. one, a certain man, G 925; som shrewes is = some one (at least) is wicked, 995. A.S. *som,* sum, some.

**Someres,* s. gen. summer’s, B 554. A.S. *sumer.*

**Somme,** s. sum, G 1364; pl. Summes, 675. F. *somme,* Lat. *summa.*

**Somtym,** adv. sometimes, G 949.

**Sond,** s. sand, B 209. A.S. *sond,* sand.

**Sonde,** s. sending, message, B 388, 1049; dispensation of providence, visitation, 760, 826; trial, 902; message (or messenger), G 525. A.S. *sand,* a message, sending, mission; also, a messenger: *senden,* to send.

**Sone,** adv. soon, B 769, C 609.

**Sonne,** s. sun, G 52. A.S. *sunna,* Icel. *sunna,* G. *sonne,* all feminine.

**Booth,** adv. true; *used as adv. truly,* C 636. A.S. *sof,* true; cognate with Gr. *éreus* (Curtius).

**Sorwe,** s. sorrow, grief, B 264, 1035. A.S. *sorg,* sorrow.

**Sory,** adj. ill, C 876; miserable, H 55. A.S. *sirig,* sore, wounded; from A.S. *sir,* a sore; not from *sorh,* sorrow.


**Booth,** adj. true, B 169, 842. See *Booth.*

**Both,** s. true, B 1072, C 370; Sothe, G 662 (see note). A.S. *sofr,* truth; from *sof,* true.

**Bother,** adj. comp. truer, G 214. See *Booth.*

**Bothisness,** s. truth, G 335, 1451, I 33. A.S. *sofrness,* veracity.

**Botiffe,** s. craft, skill, lit. sublety, G 1371. From O.F. *subtilite,* which from Lat. acc. *subtilitatem.*

**Botted,** adj. besotted, befuddled, G 1341. O.F. *sot,* foolish; Low Lat. *sotum,* of uncertain origin.

**Bourevyn,** adj. sovereign, chief, B 375, 1089; as sh., master, G 506. O.F. *souverain,* Low Lat. *superanus,* one who is above; from *super,* above.

**Bought,** pt. s. subj. should search, were to search, were to examine. C 488. A.S. *siccan,* to seek; pt. t. *sicke.*

**Boun,** s. sound, B 563. F. *son,* Lat. acc. *sonum.*

**Southron,** adj. Southern, I 42. A.S. *suth,* south; eã *Sorve,* southern.
Glossarial Index.

Sowidan, s. Sultan, B 177. F. sowdan, O. F. soldan, Low Lat. solidanus; from Turkish sultân.

Sowdanese, s. Sultanese, B 358, 958.

Sowed, pp. sewn, G 571. A.S. siwian, siwian, to sew, stitch; Goth. sijan.

Sowen, v. to sow, I 35. A.S. siwan, to sow seed.


Space, s. opportunity, I 64. From Lat. spatium.

Spede, subj. s. may prosper, B 259; pp. Sped, prospered, accomplished, G 357. A.S. spidan, to succeed; spied, success, speed.

Speedful, adj. advantageous, B 727.

Speakestow, speakest thou, G 473.

Spending-silver, s. silver to spend, money in hand, G 1018.

Spicing, s. mixture of spices, B 136, C 544. O. F. espice, especie, spice; from a peculiar use of the Lat. species, a kind.


Spirites, s. pl. the (four) spirits in alchemy, G 820. See note.

Spitte, pr. s. 1 p. I spit, C 421. A.S. spittan, Icel. spýja; from the same root as Lat. sparea.

Spoke, pp. spoken, G 689. A.S. speeren, to speak; at a later period altered to speken. The r is still retained in Du. sprekken, G. sprechen.

Spone, s. pl. spoons, C 908. A.S. spone, a chip of wood.

Spouted, pp. spouted, vomited, B 487. A Low German word; cf. Du. spuiten, to spout, to squirt.

Spraynd, pp. sprinkled, B 422. The ininit. is springen (see Gloss. II.); from A.S. sprengen, to make to spring, to scatter, pp. sprenged; cf. Du. sprengen, to sprinkle.

Squames, s. pl. scales, G 759. Lat. aquama, a scale, a small layer.


Stampe, pr. pl. stamp, bray in a mortar. C 538. Icel. stamsa, to push with the foot; Swed. stampa, to pound, beat.

Stant, pr. s. standeth (contracted form), B 618, 651, 1055, G 173. H 1. A.S. standan; pr. s. he stant. From the same root as Lat. stare, Skt. sthâ, to stand. See Stonde.


Stero, s. (1) pilot, helmsman, B 448; (2) rudder, 833. (1) A.S. stira, a steersman, pilot; (2) Icel. stýri, a helm, rudder; A.S. sturna, a rudder.

Sterless, adj. rudderless, B 439. See above.

Sterling, s. pl. pence of sterling money, C 907. Sterling is a corruption of Esterling, an Easterling, a name given to German traders, whose money was of excellent quality.

Sterres, s. pl. stars, B 192. A.S. stearra; cf. Lat. stella (i.e. stera, a little star; Skt. târa (for stâra), a star.

Sterte, v. to start, pass away, B 335; pr. pl. start, rise quickly, C 705. Cf. Du. storen, to plunge, fall, rush; G. stürzen, to dash.

Sterus, v. to die, C 865; die of famine, 451; I p. pl. pr. subj. may die, G 420. See Starf.

Stiked, pt. s. stuck, B 509; pp. stabbed, 430; a stiked weak.

261

Stikke, s. stick, G 1265, 1271. A. S. stcc.

Stillatorie, s. still, vessel used in distillation, G 580. From Lat. stilla, a drop; whence stillare, to fall in drops, distil.

Stinte, v. to leave off, desist, cease to speak, B 953; to cease, G 883; pr. s. subj. may cease, B 413; imp. s. leave off, cease, G 927. A. S. stccian, to be blunt.


Stoor, s. store, farm-stock, C 365. From O. F. esorere, to furnish; from a Lat. staurare, seen in comp. instaurare, to repair, and restaurare, to re-store.

Storie, s. story, legend, G 86. A doublet of history.

Storuen, pr. pl. died, C 888. See Starf.

Stounde, s. hour, short time, B 1021. A. S. stund, a space of time.

Stoupe, ger. to stoop, G 1311; imp. pl. Stoupeth, stoop ye, 1377. A. S. stüpeian (a doubtful form); cf. Swe. stuppa, to fall.


Straye, s. strait, B 464. O. F. estrait, narrow; Lat. strictus. Strait and strict are doubles.

Stree, s. straw, B 701. O. Fries. siren, stroll, straw. See Straw.

Stronger, adj. comp. stronger, C 823. A. S. strong, strong; comp. strenge.

Strogelost, pr. s. 2 p. struggled, C 830. 'Strogolyn, strobilym, or toggyyn, collector;' Prompt. Parr.

Stroonde, s. strand, shore, B 825. A. S. strand, Du. strand, a shore.

Style, s. stile, gate to climb over. C 712. A. S. stige, dimin. of stig, a path; from stigan, to climb. Du. stijl, a style; stijgen, to climb.

Styward, s. steward, B 914. A. S. stige, a sty, pen for cattle, and weard, a keeper; cf. Icel. siðvarðr, from siða, a sty; but the Icel. word seems to have been borrowed from English.

Subleentoun, s. subjection, obedience, B 270.

Sublymed, pp. sublimed, sublimated, G 774. Lat. sublimare, to raise; from sublimis, exalted. 'Sublimate, to bring by heat into the state of vapour, which, on cooling, returns again to the solid state;' Webster.

Sublyming, s. sublimation, G 770.

Sublymatories, s. pl. vessels for sublimation, G 793. See Sublymed.

Substannost, s. the essential part of a thing, the thing itself, C 539. See the note. Lat. substantia.

Subtitle, s. skill, craft, G 844. Subtiliter, subtlety, craft, secret knowledge, 620. See Botilla.

Suburbes, s. pl. suburbs, G 657. From Lat. sub, and urbs, a town.

Succesour, s. successor, follow, B 421. From Lat. sucedere.


Superfluities, s. superfluity, excess, C 471, 538. Lat. super, beyond. fruit, to flow.

Surly, s. surplice, G 538. F. surpris, Low Lat. superpellicium, from super, over, pellicium, a coat of fur, from pellis, a skin.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX. 263

Sustenee, v. to sustain, uphold, preserve, B 160. Lat. sustinere.

Suster, s. sister, G 333. A.S. swestor, swestor; cf. G. schwester, Lat. soror (for sos-or).

Swp, imp. s. strike off, G 366. Cf. swoop, sweep.

Swatte, pl. s. sweated, G 560. See Sweat.

Swigh, s. sway, motion, B 296. Cf. Icel. sveigja, to sway; Du. zwani, a turn, swing; Du. zwaij-en, to swing.


Swering, s. swearing, C 631. A.S. swerian, to swear.

Swete, ger. to sweat, G 522; v. 579; pt. s. Swatte, G 560. A.S. swedian; from swaí, heat, sweat.

Swete, adj. sweet, H 42. A.S. swale. See Bote.

Swich, adj. such, B 146, G 719, 1402. A.S. swyle, Goth. swaleiks, lit. so-like.

Swink, s. labour, G 730. A.S. swine, toil.

Swinke, v. to labour, G 669; ger. to labour, C 874; pr. pl. gain by labour, work for, G 21. A.S. swincan, to toil.


Swore, pl. pl. swore, B 344; pp. Sworn, i.e. sworn to do it, G 681. A.S. swerian, to swear; pt. t. sweor.

Swote, s. dat. sweat, G 578. A.S. swel.

Swowned, pt. s. swooned, B 1058. Cf. A.S. swindan, to languish; pt. t. is swoand, pp. swound.

Swythe, adv. quickly, B 730, C 798; as swythe = as quickly as possible, B 637, G 926, 1426. A.S. swift; strong, great; swift, greatly, very; Goth. swinths, Icel. sinir, strong.

By, pl. s. saw, G 1381. See Boye.


Bythe, s. pl. times, B 733, 1155. A.S. sife, a time, Icel. sinni, Goth. sinth.

Syve, s. sieve, G 940. A.S. sife, Du. zef, zif, a sieve.

Table, s. board; at table = at board, i.e. entertained as a lodger, G 1015. F. table, Lat. tabula.

Tabyde, contr. for to abide, B 797.

Tacord, for to accord, i.e. to agreement, H 98.

Take, v. to give, deliver over, present, G 223; a p. s. pr. Takestow, i.e. takest thou, 435; imp. pl. Taketh, take ye, H 41; pp. Take, taken, B 769, G 605. Icel. taka; cf. Goth. tekan.

Talent, s. desire, appetite, C 540. Cotgrave gives 'will, desire, appetite,' as meanings of F. talent.

Talking, s. discourse, G 684. From the same root as tale.

Tamenden, ger. to amend, B 462.

Tanoyen, (for to annoy) v. to annoy, to injure, B 492.

Tarian, v. to tarry, B 983. O. F. targar, to delay; from Lat. tardare. See Gloss. II.

Tartro, s. tartar, G 813. F. tarre, Low Lat. tartarum. 'An acid concrete salt, deposited from wines when perfectly fermented;' ... 'when in the crude state, it is much used as a flux in the assaying of ores;' Webster.

Tassolle, contr. for to assaille, i.e. to absolve, C 930.

Taste, imp. s. feel, G 502. See the note.
Glossarial Index.

Taurer, s. innkeeper, C 685.
From Lat. taberna.

techo, s. to teach, G 343. A. S. tæcan, to shew, point out; cf. E. token; Gk. ἐκείνως, to shew.

telle, ger. to tell, relate, B 408.
A. S. tellan, to count, tell; G. zählen, erzählen.

tempered, pp. tempered, G 926.
To temper is to adjust or moderate the heat at which a thing is melted. Lat. temperare.

temps, s. tense; futur temps, future tense, futurity, time to come, G 875. See the note.

tenspyra, for to aspire, i. e. to inspire, G 1470.

term, s. term; in terms, in set terms or phrases, C 311; pl. Termes, set terms, pedantic expressions, G 1398; terms of his lime, for the whole period of his life, 1479. Lat. terminus.

testes, s. pl. vessels for assaying metals (Tyrwhitt), G 818. A vessel called a ‘testa’ is figured in Theatrum Chemicum, iii. 326. See Test in Wedgwood or Webster.

textual, adj. literal, keeping strictly to the letter of the text, I 57.
Lat. textum, textus (from texere), a weaving; also, a composition, a subject for discourse.

teye, s. a thin plate of metal, G 3215, 3229; pl. Teynes, 1334, 1337. Lat. tawa, Gk. ταύται, a band, fillet, riband, strip; from τεῦσιν, to stretch; Skt. tan, to stretch.

than, than; or than, sooner than, before, G 899.

Tharray, for the array, B 393.

Thassemble, contr. from the assemble, the assembly, B 403.

That, conj. as, as well as, B 1036; rel. pron. = with reference to whom, G 236. That oon, the one, B 551. A. S. þæt, def. art.; cf. Sanskrit taat.

Thees, v. to thrive, prosper, A. S. þéon, to prosper, fec gedeoien. See below.

Theeoh, contr. from thee may I thrive, C 947, G 9 above.

Theeft, for the effect, 893, G 1261.

Theeme, s. text, thesis of a C 333. Lat. thema, Gk. subject for discussion; θέμα, I lay down; cf. S to place, put.

Theemperour, for the emperour, B 248; Tiemperours, thror’s, 151.

Thende, contr. for the end, B 423, 965, G 1266.

Thennes, adv. thence, B 3 1043; used as sb., the pl. G 66. From A. S. þeow.

Thenticium, for the intent, i. e. the intention, G 144.

Thenten, for the extent, end, G 1306.

Ther, adv. where, B 3 576, 602, 634: when whither, at which, G 469; G 742. A. S. þær.

Ther-aboute, adv. thither, therein, G 834.

Ther - biform, adv. bef. before the event, B 197.

Ther-boute, adv. outside 1136.

Therto, adv. there-to, m. s. 135. Ther (A. S. þær) dat. fem. sing. of the def. understand a fem. sb., sacu, sake; and we have sace, in addition to that n

Thewes, s. pl. virtues, goaties, G 101. A. S. þéow, quality; from þéon, to See Theeo.

Thexcellent, put for th lent, B 150.
Thider, adv. thither, B 144, C 749. A. S. Sider.
Thilke, demon. pron. that. B 190, 365. C 364; that very, that same, C 753. G 197; that sort of, l. 50. A. S. þylc; from þyl, instrumental case of se, sei, þat, and lie, like; cf. Lat. talis.
Thing, s. pl. possessions, G 540. A. S. þing, a thing, neut. sb.; pl. þing (unchanged).
Thingot, for the ingot, G 1333, 1314. See Ingotten.
Thinketh, impers.; ma thinketh, it seems to me, G 308. A. S. me þincan, it seems to me; G. mir dünt; slightly different from þencan, to think, G. denken.
Thinne, adj. pl. thin, poor, scanty, limited, G 741. A. S. þynn, thin; þenian, to stretch; cf. Skt. tan, to stretch.
Thou, adv. then, G 205, 424, 487, 632. A. S. þi, then.
Thonketh, imp. 2 p. pl. thank ye, B 1113. A. S. þunctian, icel. þakka, G. danken.
Thoughte, pt. s. impers. it seemed, B 146; Thoughte hem, it seemed to them, C 475. See Thinketh.
Thral, s. servant, G 196. A. S. þreol. Icel. þræll.
Thraldom, s. bondage, slavery, B 286, 338. See above.
Threpe, 1 p. pl. pres. we call, assert to be, G 826. 'Threach, v. n. to maintain or insist pertinaciously; to repeat or reiterate obstinately. A. S. þreadian, to afflict, chide;' Atkinson's Cleveland Glossary.
Threting, s. threatening, menace, G 698. A. S. þreitun, an urging, correction.
Thrift, s. success, prosperity in moneymaking, G 739, 1425. Icel. þrifti, profit.
Thrift, adj. cheap, profitable to the buyer, B 138. See above.
Throwe, s. a short space of time. B 953; time, G 941. A. S. þræð, þrag, a short space of time, period.
Thryue, ger. to thrive, prosper, G 1411. Icel. þríska, to thrive, where the final sk is reflexive, meaning 'self.' See Thrift.
Thurgh, prep. through, by, G 325. A. S. þrūh, G. durch.
Thurgh-out, prep. throughout, all through, B 256, 464; quite through, C 655.
Til, prep. to, G 306. Icel. til, to.
Tin, s. tin, G 829. A. S. tin, prob. a shortened form of an Old British word; cf. Irish stam, Gael. staoin, Welsh ystaen; whence Lat. stannum.
Tiranne, s. tyranny, cruelty, B 165. From Lat. tyrannus, Gk. τυράννος, a tyrant.
To, prep. to (used after its case), G 1441. A. S. to.
To, adv. too, G 644; overmuch, G 1423; To dere, too dearly, C 293; To and fro, all ways, H 53.
To-bota, v. to beat severely, G 405. See the note. A. S. to-, prefix, = G. ze-, Goth. and Lat. dia-, meaning, in twain, apart; and botaian, to beat; whence A. S. to-botian, to beat to pieces.
Tobreketh, pr. s. breaks in twain, breaks asunder, G 927. A. S. to-brecan, to break in pieces, or in twain. See above.
Togidres, adv. together, C 702, G 960. A. S. tōgāðr.
Tohewe, pp. hewn in twain, hewn in pieces, B 430, 437. A.S. tó-
heawan, to hew in twain. See Tobebe.

Tokening, s. token, proof, G 1153. A.S. tiagen, a token. See Teho.

Tombesteres, s. pl. fem. dancing girls, lit. female tumblers, C 477. A.S. tumban, to tumble, dance; tumbere, a tumbler; tunbestr, a dancing girl. See the note.

Tongo, s. tongue, B 899, C 398. A.S. tunga, G. tunga, Lat. lingua (for lingua). Hence tongo is a dissyllabic word.

Took, pt. s. took, had, B 192; gave, handed over, G 1030, 1034, 1365, H 91. See Take.

To-rente, pt. pl. rent asunder, C 797. A.S. tó-, in twain, and rendan, to rend; the comp. to-
renda occurs in O. Friesic.

Torment, s. torment, suffering, B 845. From Lat. tormentum.

Tormontour, s. tormentor, i.e. executioner, B 818, G 557, 532; pl. Tormentourus, 373; Torment-
tours, 376. See above.

Torn, s. turn, C 815. See below.

Torne, v. to turn, G 1403; imp. s. 3. p., may he turn, 1374; pp. Turned, turned, i.e. 'turned him round his finger,' 1171. O. F. tornor, Lat. tornare, to turn.

Tortous, adj. oblique, a technical term in astrology, used of the six of the zodiacal signs which ascend most obliquely, B 302. Lat. tortuosus, twisted; from tortuare, to twist.

To-swinke, pr. pl. labour greatly, C 519. Prefix tó- in twain (intensive), and swimcan, to toil.

To-tere, pr. pl. rend, tear in pieces, C 474; pp. To-tore, torn in pieces. A.S. tó-téran, to tear in twain. See To-bera.

Traitoryo, s. treachery, B 781.

From O.F. traitor, a traitor; Lat. acc. tradiorem, from tradere, to hand over.

Trappe, s. trap, G 11. A.S. trappe, a trap; hence trappe is dissyllabic.

Treor, s. treasure, B 442, C 779; O. F. tresor, Lat. thesaurus, Gr. ἔθνους; from ἔθνυμ, I lay up in store.

Treté, pr. pl. discourse, treat, C 630. F. traiter, Lat. tractare, to handle.

Treté, s. treaty, C 619. F. traitié, Lat. tractatus. See above.

Tretys, s. treaty, B 233. Another form of the above.

Trewwe, adv. pl. true, B 135; used as sbb = the faithful. 456. A.S. treswwe. Lccl. truir, G. treu.

Trewthe, s. truth, truth, B 517. A.S. treswthe.

Treye, num. 'tray,' three, C 653; O. F. tres, tres, Lat. tres.

Trioole, s. a sovereign remedy, B 479. C 314. O. F. triole, Low Lat. theriacum, Gr. ἔθνους, a remedy against the wounds made by wild beasts; from ἔθνυμ, a wild beast.

Triste, pr. s. 1 p. I trust, B 832. Lccl. tresota, to trust.

Trodan, pp. stepped, C 712. A.S. tresdan, to tread.

Trompe, s. trumpet, B 705. F. trompe, a trumpet; from Lccl. tromba, a pipe, a trumpet.

Trone, s. throne (of God), heaven, C 842. F. trône, O. F. trône, Lat. chronus, Gr. ὑφώος, a seat, chair.

Trouthe, s. truth, G 238. A.S. treswhe.

Trowe, ger. to trust, believe, G 378; f. s. pr. I suppose, believe, imagine, B 288, 400, 1074. C 689, G 667, H 44; pr. pl. Trowe, suppose, believe, B 232; 2 p. ye believe, G 177; suppose,
imagine ye, C 439. A. S. teowian, Icel. trúa, to believe, think to be true.

Trusteth, imp. pl. 2 p. trust ye, believe ye, B 1048, G 229, 889, I 42. Icel. traut, sb. trust, treysta, to trust in.

Tryme compass, the threefold world, containing earth, sea, and heaven, G 45. Lat. trinus, threefold, from tres, three.

Twenty daenel ways, s. in the manner of twenty devils, in all sorts of evil ways, G 782.

Twwe, num. adj. two, twain, C 817, 824, 828, G 677. A. S. twegen, twain, used in masc. and neuter; twa, two, in the feminine.

Twwefold, adj. twofold, double, G 566.

Twinne, v. to separate, B 517; ger. to depart (from), C 430; 2 p. pr. pl. ye depart, lit. ye part company, G 182. From the root two, A. S. twa; cf. E. be-tween.

Twwe, adv. twice, B 1058. A. S. twēena, twa, but the M. E. twyne is formed from A. S. twēa, double, with adversative suffix-es.

Tyde, s. a certain portion of time, an hour, B 510, 798; see note to B 798; time of day, 1134. A. S. tid, Icel. tilf, G, zeit, a time.

Tyden, v. to befail, B 337. A. S. tidan, to happen; from tid, time.

Tyding, s. tidings, news, B 726. Icel. tilindi, news, tidings; from til, time.

Tyne, s. time, G 1204. The word is dissyllabic, rime with by me; see the note. A. S. tima, Icel. timi.

V (for U and V).

Valerian, s. valerian, G 800. Lat. valeriana.

Varlaunt, adj. varying, changing, changeable, sickle, G 1175. From Lat. variare, to vary, varius, different.

Venim, s. venom, poison, B 891, C 421. O. F. venin, Lat. venenum.

Venquisshed, pp. vanquished, B 291. From O. F. venquis, pp. of vecre, to conquer. Lat. vincere.

Verdigeous, s. verdigris, G 791. Corrupted (see the note) from Lat. viride aris, green of brass.

Vermin, s. vermin, C 858. From Lat. vermis.

Verray, adj. very, true, B 167, C 576, G 165. O. F. verai (F. vrai), Lat. acc. veracem; from Lat. verus, true.

Veyn, adj. vain, empty, powerless, silly, G 497. F. vain, Lat. vanus.

Vlago, s. voyage, B 259, 300, 312. O. F. viage, from Lat. navigium, lit. provisions for a journey, then a journey, in Fortunatus (Brachet).

Vicary, s. a vicar, I 22. From Lat. vicarius, a deputy; from Lat. uicis, change.

Vilanye, s. discourtesy, C 740; licentiousness, G 231. O. F. vilanie, from vilain, a farm-labourer; from Lat. uilla, a farm.

Violes, s. pl. vials, phials, G 793. F. phiale, Lat. phiale, a sort of saucer, Gk. φιαλή. Cotgrave has—'Phiole, f. a violl, or small glass bottle.'

Virago, s. virago, cruel woman, B 359. Direct from Lat. virago.

Vitaille, s. victuals, B 443, 499. O. F. vitaille, Lat. victualia, victuals; from sinere, to live.

Vitailledd, pp. victualled, provisioned, B 869. See above.

Vitriole, s. vitriol, G 858. F.
vitriol, Lat. u1triolum; from u1trum, glass. Cograve has—
"Vitriol, m. vitrioll, copperas."

Vnbokel, imp. s. unbuckle, undo, C 945, I 26. The prefix un- is here not the common negative prefix, but cognate with G. ent-; cf. entbinden, to unbind. Bokel is O.F. boele (F. bousle), Lat. bucula, boss of a shield.


Vnderpyghte, pt. s. stuffed, filled underneath, B 789. Pyghte is piched, pt. t. of M.E. pichke, to pitch, place, set.

Vnderstonedeth, pr. pl. understand, C 646; imp. pl. understand, know, G 1165; pp. Vnderstoande, understood, B 520. From A.S. standon, to stand.

Vnfeyned, pp. unfeigned, true, G 434. From Lat. fingere.

Vnkynonymase, s. unkindness, B 1057. From A.S. cynd, nature. Unkindness is unnaturalness, what is contrary to natural feeding.

Vnnethe, adv. hardly, scarcely, B 1050, G 563; Vnnetheus (with adverbial suffix -es), G 1300. A.S. un-, not, ami, easily; from est, easy.

Vnsely, adj. unhappy, G 468. See Bely.

Vnsleked, adj. unslacked, G 806. To slack is to deprive time of cohesion by combining it with water. A.S. slactian, to slacken, relax; slæc, slack.

VnthrifiTily, adv. poorly, G 893. See Thrift.

Vntr ew th e s, s. untruth, B 687.

Vn war, adj. unexpected, B 427. A.S. wær, wary, cautious; cf. Lat. urser, I fear.

Vnwealdy, adj. unwieldy, difficult to move, H 55. A.S. wældon, to control.


Vnvit, s. want of wit, G 1085. A.S. gewitt, knowledge.

Vnwriting, pr. part. unknowing, G 1320. A.S. wiutan, to know, G. wissen.

Vouche-sauff, v. to vouchsafe, grant, B 1083; 2 p. pr. pl. ye vouchsafe, G 1246, I 52. Here vouche is the verb, and sauff the adjective; it means to 'call (it) safe.'

Voydeth, imp. pl. send away, G 1136. O.F. voide (F. wide), void; from Lat. viduus.

Voys, s. voice, rumour, B 155, C 531. O.F. vois (F. voix), Lat. acc. vocem, a voice; cf. Skt. vach, to speak.

Vp, prep. on, upon, B 795, 884. A.S. up.

Vp so dou, upside down, G 615. See the note.

Vp-onaste, pt. s. cast up, B 906. Icel. kasta, to throw.

Vpvyghth, adv. upright, C 674.

Usage, s. usage, custom, G 899. F. usage; from Lat. uti, to use.

Vse, pr. pl. 2 p. ye use, G 1409. pp. Vsed, accustomed, 666. F. user; Lat. uti, to use.

Utter, adj. outer, outward, G 498. A.S. ut, out; utera, utea, outer.

W.

Wafereres, s. pl. makers of gaufrées or wafer-cakes, confectioners, C 479. From an O. F. form waonfre, commonly spelt gaufre; which from O. Low G. Cf. Du. wafel, a wafer.

Walke, pr. s. subj. a p. thou
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

mays't walk, B 784. A.S. weale-
an, to roll; also, to walk.

Wan, adj. wan, pale, G 728. A.S.
wann, wan; sometimes, dark,
dusky.

Wan, pt. s. won, G 33. A.S.
wannan, pt. t. ic wann, pp. wam-
nen.

War, adj. aware, G 13, 1079; be
war = beware, take heed, take
warning, 737. A.S. wer, wary,
cautious.

Waro, pres. s. subj. (or imp.), may
(he) warn, cause you to be ware,
C 905. Cf. A.S. warnian, to
guard; war, wary. See Ch.
Prot. 662; and cf. Gloss. I.

Ware, s. merchandise, B 140. A.S.
ware, merchandise.

Warente, v. to warrant, protect,
C 338. O.F. warrantir, to guard,
warrant; from O.H.G. werjan,
warjan, to protect.

Warine, v. to heal, cure, C 906.
Formed from O.F. warir, garir
(F. guérir), to preserve; from
O.H.G. warjan, to protect.

Warye, 1 p. s. pr. I curse. B 372.
A.S. warjjan, to curse; warg,
aaccursed; warh, an accursed
wretch.

Wasano, pp. washed, C 353. A.S.
wascan, wascan; pt. t. waste, pp.
wasen. See Wesn.

Wast, s. waste, B 593. A.S. wiste,
waste, deserted; wisten, a wilder-
ness.

Wawe, s. a wave, B 508; pl.
Wawes, 468. A.S. wawg, a
wave.

Wayke, adj. weak, B 932. A.S.
wic, weak; Icel. vikr, vikr.

Weythe, v. to expect, B 467; Way-
ten, 264; pr. s. Wyateth, watches,
293. O.F. wainter, guaiter; from
F. guetter.

We, pron. apparently used as acc.
-us, G 315. But see the note.

Wep, pt. s. wept, B 606, 1052. G
371. A.S. wpn, to weep; pt.
t. wdp. See Wepen.

Weex, pt. s. waxed, grew, G 513.
See Wex.

Wel, adv. well, i.e. well placed,
happily or luckily situated, B 308.
A.S. wel.

Welo, s. prosperity, B 175. A.S.
weal, weal.

Wolful, adj. full of weal, blessed,
B 451. See above.

Wolked, pp. withered, C 738.
A.S. w쓸ian, to roll up, dry,
wither, shrivel. Cf. G. wicben,
to wither. [The form is English;
not borrowed from German.]

Welle, s. well, source, B 323. A.S.
wella, Icel. vella, a well; the
more usual form is A.S. well.

Wemmielees, adj. stainless, G 47.
A.S. vem, Icel. wamm, Goth.
wamm, a spot, blemish.

Wende, ger. to go, to wend, B
142, 253, 265: pr. pl. Wende,
go, 1157; 2 p. ye wend, travel,
C 927; Wente him, pt. s. turned
himself, i.e. went his way, G
1110; pp. Went, gone; ben went,
are gone, B 173; is went, is
gone, G 534 (see note). A.S. wenden,
G. wenden, to turn.

Wenem, v. to ween, suppose, G
675; Wene, 1088; pr. s. Weneth,
imagines, C 569; pr. pl. Wenem,
suppose, 349; pt. s. subj. Wende,
would have thought, C 782. A.S.
wenan, Icel. vena, Goth. wunjan,
G. wíhnen, to imagine; from A.S.
wen, Icel. ven, Goth. wens, G.
wanh, expectation, hope.

Wepen, pr. pl. weep, B 820; pt. s.
Wepte, wept, 267; Wep, 606,
1052, G 371. See Weep.

Werche, v. to work, do, make,
perform, B 566, G 14, 1155.
1477. A.S. worcan, to work.
See Werkes.

Were, pt. s. subj. should be, might.
be, G 581; Were it, whether it were, i.e. either, B 143; Were, a p. s. pres. indic. wast, B 366; pt. pl. Weran, were, G 1340.
N.B. The A. S. were is the 2 p. pr. indic. as well as subj.; the forms wast, wert, are later; hence Chaucer’s use of were in B 366 is quite correct, and it need not be taken as an instance of the subjunctive mood. From A. S. wesan, to be; cf. Skt. sas, to dwell.
Werdan, pt. s. wore, G 558. A. S. werian, to wear; p’t. t. werode. Originally a weak verb. Cf. Icel. verja, Goth. wasjan, to put on clothing; Lat. vestis, clothing.
Werielan, pr. s. wearies, G 1304. A. S. werian, to weary.
Werken, s. pl. works, B 478, G 64. A. S. weorc, Icel. werk, Gk. ἔργον.
Werking, s. work, mode of operation, G 1367; Werkinga, action, 116.
Wesh, pt. s. washed, B 453. See Washe.
Wete, s. wet, perspiration, G 1187.
A. S. wet, wetness, moisture.
Wex, s. wax, G 1164, 1268. A. S. wex, waxen, wax.
Wexe, v. to wax, become, G 837; Wexen, 877; pr. pl. Wexen, become, 1095; 1 p. we become, 869; 1 p. s. pr. subj. Wexe, may I become, 1374; pt. s. Wex, became, B 563, 568. A. S. wexan, Icel. vaska, Goth. wakjan, G. weichen, to wax.
Weye, s. way, B 385, G 1374; manner, wise, B 590, G 676.
A. S. wege, way, road.
Weyed, pt. s. weighed, G 1298. A. S. weogan, to weigh, Icel. vega, Lat. secura.
Weyhow, interj., well away! alas! B 370, 632, 810. A. S. weo la, lit. weo! lo! lo! woe!
Guesuer, gueser, to waive. ‘Gueser, to waive, refuse, abandon, give over, also, to surrender, give back, resign, redeem, to carve.
Whatso, whatsoever, G 711, 965.
Whe羚, s. pl. dogs, G 60. A. S. huwel.
Whennas, adv. whence, C 325, G 247; of whennes = from whence, G 432, 433. A. S. hwænon.
Wher, adv. wherever, C 748, G 777; Wher-as, where that, where, B 647, 1131, C 466, H 49.
Wher-on; long wher-on, i.e. along of what, because of what, G 930.
Wher-so, adv. whether, B 294.
Wheto, s. wheat, I 36. A. S. hwæthe, wheat.
Which, pron. what sort of, G 721; pl. Which, which, B 553. A. S. huyla, Goth. huwa-leiks, (i.e. who-like), Lat. quals.
Whiden, adv. whither, G 303. A. S. huider.
Whyle, s. time, B 370, 546; s. pl. Whyles, times; in the mene whyles = during the mean while, 668. A. S. huwil, Goth. hweila, a time.
Whyler, adv. formerly, G 1318. A. S. huwil, a time; and dr, formerly.
Whylom, adv. formerly, B 134, C 403. A. S. hwilum, dat. pl. of huwil, a time.
Whylis, adv. while, G 1137. A. S. hwiles, gen. sing. of huwil, a time.
Whyto, adj. white; used as ab. white wine, C 536, 562. A. S. hwit, white; Icel. hwir, Goth. hweis, G. weiss.
Whynesse, s. whiteness, G 89.

Widwe, s. widow, C 450. A.S. widwe, wædwe.

Wight, s. wight, man, B 656. See Wyght.

Wike, s. week, C 362. A.S. wice, wice, wæce, a week; Icel. víka, a week.

Wikke, adj. wicked, G 524. Cf. A.S. wicca, a wizard, wicce, a witch.

Wilfully, adv. willingly, of free will, by choice, C 441. 'Wulfull, voluntarius, spontaneus;' Prompt. Parv.

Winne, ger. to get gain, C 461. A.S. wīnan.

Wisyly, adv. certainly, B 1061. Cf. Icel. viss, sure; Du. gewis, G. gewiss, certain; from the root of witan, to know.

Wite, v. to know, wit, G 621, 1333; pr. pl. 2 p. know ye, H 1, 82; pt. s. subj. should know, knew, C 370; (if he) knew, C 513; pp. Wiat, known, B 1072, G 282. A.S. witan, Icel. vits, G. wissen, Skt. vid, to know. See Wost.

With, prep. by, B 475, G 1437.

Withholden, pp. detained, G 345. A.S. wēn, against, and healdan, to hold.

Withasay, v. to renounce, G 447, 457. A.S. wēn, against, and seggan, to say.

Witnes, imp. s. let (it) bear witness, G 277. A.S. wīnes, knowledge.

Witnes, s. pl. understandings, senses, B 302. A.S. wīt, gewit, mind, understanding.

Wo, adj. sad, B 757. A.S. wēl, woe, sb.; but sometimes used as an adjective.

Wol, pr. s. permits, H 28; wol adown, is about to set, I 79; pr. pl. Wol. will, B 468; Wol, G 84; Wolto, wilt thou, G 307, 464; pr. s. Wolde, wished, B 698; pt. pl. would, B 144. A.S. wīlian, to will, wish; pt. t. ic wīlde, pt. t. ic wolde.

Wolle, s. wool, C 448, 910. A.S. wōl, wool, Icel. úl; but also dissyllabic, as shewn by Goth. wōlla, wool, G. wolle.

Wombe, s. the belly, C 522, 533. A.S. wambe, Goth. wamba.

Wommenhede, s. womanhood, B 851, G 1345.

Wonder, s. as adj. wondrous, wonderful, B 1045, C 891, G 308. A.S. wunder.

Wonder, s. as adv. wondrously, G 751; greatly, 1035; very, H 94.

Wone, ger. to dwell, inhabit, G 38; v. 332; pr. s. Woueth, dwelleth, G 311. A.S. wuonan, to dwell; G. wohnen.


Woodeth, pr. s. plays the madman, acts madly, G 467. A.S. wōdian, wōdian, to rage, G. wühen.

Woodnesse, s. madness, C 496. A.S. wōdnes.

Wook, pt. s. was awake, B 497; awoke, G 806. A.S. wacan, pt. t. ic wōc, pp. wocene.

Wordes, s. pl. words; haddes the wordes, was spokesman (see note), I 67. A.S. word.

Worm, s. snake (lit. worm), C 355. A.S. wyrma, wurm, Icel. ormur, G. wurm, Lat. vermis.

Wort, s. unfermented beer, wort, G 813. Sommer’s A.S. Dict. has wert, unfermented beer.

Wost, 2 p. s. pr. knowest, C 824, G 653. A.S. wīlian, to know, has strong pt. t. used as present, vis. ic wīlde; þu wīlde, he wīlde, I wit, thou wost (wottest), he wot (not wot). See Wite.

Wostow, for wost thou, i.e. knowest thou, G 265, 444, 459. See above.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Wot, pr. s. knows, B 195. 436, 439. 962, G 723. See Wost.
Woxen, pp. grown, waxed, G 379, 381. See Wex.
Wowsth, pr. s. woes, B 580. A.S. wigan, to woo; prob. orig. to bend; cf. A.S. wig, wēh, bent.
Wreak, s. wreck, B 513. O. Fries. wroak, injured; Du. wrak, broken, also a wreck; Icel. reik, a thing drifted ashore...
Wrew, adj. savage, fierce, angry, H 46. Apparently merely a corruption of wrought (A.S. wrogt), i.e. wrathful; cf. Icel. reikr, Dan. and Sw. rued, wrathful, angry. See other examples of wroth in Struttmann.
Wroochedness, s. a miserable matter, folly, l 34. From A.S. wroæ, wretched.
Wreche, s. vengeance, B 679. A.S. wraču, vengeance.
Wrenches, s. pl. frauds, stratagems, tricks, G 1081. A.S. wroence, deceit, stratagem.
Written, pp. written, B 195. See Wroót.
Wrong, pt. s. wrung, B 606. A.S. wrogingan, to wring, strain.
Wroót, pt. s. wrote, B 725, 890, G 83. A.S. wroutan, to write; pt. t. wrote, pp. written; Icel. ríta, to write.
Wroth, adj. wroth, angry, H 46. A.S. wroðg, wroth, wrath, anger; Icel. reðr, angry, reði, anger.
Wrought, pp. made, G 326. A.S. wroecan, to work; pt. t. ic wrought, I worked, I wrought.
Wyde,_when, adv. widely, everywhere, B 326.
Wyf, s. mistress of a household, G 1015. A.S. wif, G. wēh, a woman.
Wyght, s. wight, man, 203, G 215, 404. H 26. wēht, wēht, Goth. wa wa wa weight; Eng. weight and wight.
Wyghte, s. weight, G 73 wēht, weight.
Wyn ape, lit. ape-wine, See the note.
Wyse, s. (dat.) wise, man; B 133. A.S. wise, a wise wise; F. guise is from O wise and guise are doublet.
Wyse, adj. pl. as sb. wise 1067. A.S. wis, wise witan, to know.
Wyte, s. blame, G 953 wite, a punishment, fine, cf. witan, to punish; Ic. to fine, mulct.
Wyues, s. pl. wives, we 273. 910. See Wyf.

Y.

Yaf, pt. s. gave, B 939. 460. 887, G 223; pt. pl. gave, G 415. See Yaeu.
Yblessed, pp. blessed, H yblessian, to bless; of u origin. The prefix y- and A.S. prefix ge-.
Ybounce, pp. bound, 0 A.S. bindan, to bind; pp. gebunden.
Ybrend, pp. burnt, G 318 bæran, pp. bærend. See E Yaried, pp. carried, G 79 carian, to carry; shar, a c Yaast, pp. cast, thrown, See Caste.
Yelad, pp. clothed, G 133 geadlad, clothed.
Glossarial Index.

pp. called, H 2, G 129; i 772. See Cepheo.

pp. cut, G 533. A. S. o cut; pp. corfen, georf-

. pp. covered, G 764. F. couvrir, to cover; from 
ferire.

. pp. coined, C 770. F. cuneus, a wedge; hence, 
d, pp. crammed, C 348.

unian, to cram; pp. ed; cf. Du. krammen, to 

th cramps or clamps.

. pp. baptized, B 240. 

miann, to baptize.

dv. idly, C 446. A. S. 

, vain; idellice, vainly.

don, i.e. finished, done 

739. 820, 866, 899; 
ought, lit. accomplished, 
.S. gedon, pp. of don, to 

. pl. idols, G 269, 285.

from Gk. ἡθον, an 

. pp. drawn, taken, G 

A. S. disgran, to drag, 

gedragen.

yea, verily, B 417. G 

, 1061; ye or nay, yea 

212. A. S. gei, gei, G 

(nounced as long e in 
lowed by e obscure), eye, 
at ye = at eye, to sight, 
. G 964, 1059; pl. Yen, 
552, 661. G 190, 498, 
8. A. S. eige, pl. eigan; ie.

. s. went, G 1141, 1281. 
le. Goth. idija, I went; 
: root i, to go; cf. Skt. 
; Lat. ire, to go.

. w. years, B 499, G 720, 

978; Yeres, H 463. A. S. geir, 
Icel. ár, Goth. jer, G. jahr; the 
A. S. pl. is also geir.

Yeman, s. yeoman, servant, G 
562, 587. Cf. O. Fries. gaman, 
a villager; from ga, a village; 
 cf. Goth. gau, G. gau, a dis-
 trict. Note esp. gúman, a pea-
sant, pl. gúnsuz, in Schmeller's 
Bavarian Dict., col. 855.

Yersne, adv. briskly, glibly, C 398. 
A. S. georn, eager; georna, 
eagerly.

Yet, adv. moreover, G 628. A. S. 
git, yet, still.

Yeuue, v. to give, G 390, I 64; ger-
to give, for giving. C 402, G 
990; imp. s. give, G 1193; 3 p. 
may (He) give, B 284, 602, H 
444. C 449. 779, 922, G 470, 
480. A. S. gisaf, pt. t. gasf, 
gesf, pp. gisfer; Icel. gesfa, Goth. 
gesfan, G. geben, to give.

Yasing, s. giving; wyn-yaising, 
wine-giving, the giving of wine, 
C 587.

Yfallen, pp. fallen, turned out, 
happened, C 938, G 61, 1043; 
having come upon, having be-
fallen, C 496. A. S. feallan, to 
fall; pp. gesfallen.

Yfeere, adv. together, B 394, G 
380. Cf. A. S. gescrea, a travel-
ling companion; from A. S. 
faran, to go.

Yfstet, pp. fetched, G 1116. A. S. 
fetian, pp. gefetod.

Yfounde, pp. found, 1152. A. S. 
findan, to find; pp. fundan, ge-
funden.

Yglosed, pp. flattered, H 34. 
Fromed from F. sb. glossa, a 
gloss, comment; from Lat. glossa, 
Gk. γλῶσσα, the tongue, &c.

Ygo, pp. gone, B 599; Ygon, G 
gegin.

Ygraunted, pp. granted, C 338.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Yhent, pp. seized, caught, C 868, G 556. A. S. hantan, to seize.
Yholde, pp. held, considered, C 602. A. S. healdan, to hold, pp. gehaldan.
Yif, imp. s. give, grant, B 462, G 65. See Ylue.
Yiffes, s. gift, G 275; pl. Yiffes, C 295. A. S. gift.
Yl, adv. yet, still, B 634. A. S. git.
Yknowa, pp. known, B 314. A. S. endwan, to know; pp. gecnyswen.
Ylyke, adv. alike, equally, G 850. See Yllohe.
Ymaad, pp. made, caused, B 693, G 868, 1149; Ymaked, made, C 545. A. S. macian, to make; pp. macod, gemacod.
Ynow, adj. enough, sufficient, G 421; pl. Ynow, B 255. A. S. gemoh, sufficient, Goth. ganeoh.
Ynow, adv. enough, G 864, 945.
Yore, adv. of old, formerly, B 174, 272. A. S. geir^n, formerly; from geór, a year.
Youres, pron. poss. yours, C 672, 765; Your, yours, G 1248. A. S. eowor, of you; whence your; and later, yours.
Yow, pron. pers. dat. to you, B 154. A. S. éow, dat. and acc. of ge, ye.
Yowthe, s. youth, B 163. A. S. geo📝6.
Ypopora, Hippocrates; kind of cordial, C 306. note.
Ypooisye, s. hypocrisy, C.
Yput, pp. put, G 762.
Yron, adj. iron, G 759; 827. A. S. iren, iron; iron.
Yrent, pp. rent, torn, B 844; rendan, to rend.
Y-schott, pp. shut, B 560; seccan, sceccan, to lock up (ner); cf. A. S. seccan, to clcl. sjúta, to shoot; shoot a bolt, shut.
Ysent, pp. sent, B 1041.
Yshape, pp. shaped, formed, G 43; Yhapen, shaped, i.e. trevided, G 1080. A. S. shape to shape, make; pp. gesapen.
Yshriwen, pp. shriven, C A. S. scrisigh, to shrive; gescrien.
Yslawe, pp. slain, B 484, 61. Yslayn, slain, B 605, 848. A. S. slein, to strike; pp. slagen; whence yslayn, by g into y, and yslawne (ysslawen) by change of g into g.
Ystonge, pp. stung, C 355. stingan, pt. i. ic stang, pp. en, gestungen.
Yswaped, pp. swept, G 938; swypan, to sweep; pp. i. swopen. But here it weak verb, as at present.
Ytake, pp. taken, B 348, 387; icel. takn, to take.
Ytaught, pp. taught, G 167; icel. teacan, to teach; pp. taka, g.
Ytold, pp. told, G 627, L 31; tellan, pp. getaleld.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Yuel, adj. evil, ill, C 408; adv. evilly, ill, G 921. (Pron. nearly in one syllable.) A.S. yfel, Goth. ubils, G. übel, evil, bad; A.S. yfle, evilly.

YWedd, pp. wedded, G 128. A.S. weddian, to pledge; pp. wedded, geweddod; from wed, a pledge.

YWis, adv. certainly, C 327, G 263, 439, 617, 689, 823, 1107, 1359. A.S. gewis, Du. gewis, G. gewiss, adv. certainly. From the root of witan, to know.

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES, &c.

N.B. Many of the names are commented upon in the Notes.

Achilles, B 198.
Adam; C 505, 508.
Alisandros, Alexandria, 975.
Alkaron, the Korán, B 332.
Alla, Ælla, B 578, 604, 610, 659.
Almachius, G 421, 425, 468, 487;
Almache, 363, 431.
Ambrose, saint, G 271.
Anne, St. Anna, B 641, G 70.
Apia, Via, i.e. Via Appia, the
Appian way, G 172.
Arnold of the newe toun,
Arnoldus de Villa Nova, G 1428, See Theatrum Chemicum, iv. 514.
Attilla, C 579.
Auësien, Avicenna, C 889.
Bachus, Bacchus, H 99.
Bayard, a horse’s name, G 1413.
(So called from his bay colour.)
Bernard, St. Bernard, G 30.
Blee, i.e. Blean, H 3.
Bob-yp-and-down (see note),
H 2.
Boughton vnder Blee, G 556.
See note.
Briton, adj. British, Welsh, B
666.
Britons, Britons, B 545, 547.
Burdeux, Bordeaux, C 571.
Cananée, adj. Canaanite, G 59.
Cathoun, Cato (Dionysius Cato), G
688. See the note.
Caunterbury, Canterbury, G 624, H 3.
Ceciliæ, St. Cecilia, G 28, 85, &c;
Cecile, G 92, 94, &c.; lyf of
saint Cecile, 554.
Chepe, Cheapside, C 564, 569, B
24.
Corinthe, Corinth, C 604.
Crist, Christ, B 277, 283, &c.
Custance, Constance, B 151, 428,
164, 319, 431, 438, &c.
Danyel, Daniel, B 473.
Daud, David, B 935.
Demetrius, C 621.
Donegild, B 695, 778, 896.
Ebrayk, adj. Hebrew, B 489.
Ector, Hector, B 198.
Egyptian Marie, Egyptian Mary
Sta. Maria Ægyptiaca, B 500.
Engelond, England, B 1130, 921, G 1356.
Eroules, Hercules, B 200.
Eua, Eve, B 368; son of Eue
62.
Europe, Europa, B 161.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

Mars, B 301, 305.
Mary, Mary, B 841.
Mathew, St. Matthew, C 634.
Maurice, Maurice, B 723; Maurice, B 1063, 1121; gen. Maurice, B 1127.
Maximus, G 338; Maxime, 377.
May, s. May, G 1343.
Ninuwe, Nineveh, B 487; Ninuwe, G 974.
Northumberland, Northumberland, B 508, 578.
Olofervus, Holophernes, B 940.
Osanne, Hosannah, G 69.
Paradies, s. Paradise, C 506, 509, G 227.
Parthia, Parthia (or, the Parthians), C 622.
Paul, St. Paul, C 521, 132; Paulus, C 523.
Pirrus, Pyrrhus, B 288.
Plato, G 1445, 1453, 1460.
Pompeii, Pompey, B 199.
Rochei, Rochelle, C 571.
Romayn, adj. Roman, B 954; pl. Romayns, the Roman people, 291, 394. G 131; Romayn geset, the gesta Romanorum, B 1126.
Rome, B 142, 290, G 975.
Romeward, to, towards Rome, B 968.
Ronyan, St. Ronan, C 310; Ronyon, 320. See the note.
Rosarie, s. Rosarium (name of a book), G 1429.
Salomon, Solomon, G 961.
Samson, Samson, B 201; Sampson, C 554, 572.
Samuel, C 585.
Sathan, Satan, B 582, 614.
Saturnus, Saturn (the planet), G 828.
Soottea, s. pl. the Scots, B 580.
Bemyram, Semiramis, B 353.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

Senek, Seneca, C 492.
Senior, the name of a book (see note), G 1450.
Septe, Ceuta, in Morocco, B 947.
Socrates, B 201.
Sol, lit. the Sun, a name for gold, G 1440.
Spayne, Spain, C 565, 570.
Stillbon, C 603. See note.
Surrye, Syria, B 134, 173, 177, 279, 387, 955.
Surryen, adj. Syrian, B 153, 435; pl. Surryens, the Syrians, 394, 963.
Susanne, Susanna, B 639.
Thebes, B 200, 289.
Theseus (see note, p. 6), B 289.
Tiburce, Tiburtius, G 242, 260; gen. Tiburces, 277.

Timothee, Timothy, I 32.
Titanos, Titan, a name for my nesia, G 1454.
Troye, Troy, B 288, G 975.
Turnus, B 201.

Valerian, G 129, 162, &c.; gen Valerians, 277.
Venus (the planet), G 829.
Vrban, pope Urban, G 177, 17; 185, 217, 303, &c.
Walys, Wales, B 544.

Ynde, India, C 722.
Ypoorsas, Hippocrates; also a cos dial named after him, C 306.
INDEX TO THE PRINCIPAL SUBJECTS EXPLAINED IN THE NOTES.

The more difficult words are explained in the Glossary; but some are further commented on in the Notes. These are entered in the following Index, and are distinguished by being printed in italics. The numbers refer to the pages.

abide for aby, 186.
accident, 153.
agrimony, 191.
a', use of, 195.
Alanus de Insulis, 196.
Ablication, 191.
'Alchemist, the,' 187.
Alestakes, 143.
Alliteration, 208.
Amalgam, 189.
Ambrose cited, 174.
angle, 126.
Anna, St., 132, 169.
anneal, 197.
ap, 198.
Ape-wine, 204, 205.
Appian way, 172.
aposed, 175, 176.
Arimatha, Joseph of, 132.
Arnoldus de Nova Villa, 192, 200.
Arsenic, 190.
as, use of, 135, 138; etymology of, 163.
Ascendant, 128.
Astrolabe, Chaucer's, 126, 127, 128, 207, 208.
Astrology, 132, 126, 127.
Atazir, 126.
atr, 156.
Attila, 155.
aw, 161.
Avicenna, 164.
azerbyen (redeem). 152.
bak, 195.
Barbour's Bruce, 139, 134.
Basket-making by saints, 149.
Bayard, blind, 199.
bell amy, 143.
Bell, sounded before a corpse, 160.
bene cite, 184.
bere in hand, 132.
Bernard, St., 167.
bet, 161.
bicched bones, 159.
blakeheryed, 147.
blind lane, 185.
Bob-up-and-down, 202.
Boethius, 125, 129.
bole (earth), 183, 190.
Boughton-under-Blee, 181.
Bulls, Pope's, 144.
buriel, 172.
by, 197.
Caecilia, etymology of, 170; church of, 179; date of death, 180; patroness of music, 171.
Cakes, 144.
Calcination, 189.
Canon, 164.
Canons, 182.
INDEX OF SUBJECTS

Cato, Dionysius, 186.
cereed poekets, 192.
ceriously, 123.
Ceuta, 136.
Chaucer's father, 154.
chest, 182.
Chilon, 156.
Citrination, 192.
clole-leaf, 154.
Clouts, 145.
Commandments, ten, 151, 157.
conseil, 163, 171.
Cook's Tale, 204.
corniculere, 176.
croud, 126, 135.
cyceribites, 190.
cuts, to draw, 163.
dame, 161.
Dante imitated, 167, 168.
defenden, 153.
Demetrius, 156.
deye, dye, 131.
Dialects, 208.
Divination by the blade-bone, 146.
dominacions, 205.
Dorothea, St., 166.
dragon, 201.
dredge, out of, 135.
Drunkenness, 134, 153, 154.
dryue away the day, 156.
Dun in the mire, 203.
-e, final, 121.
earn, yearn (in Shakespeare), 142.
-ed, final, 121.
eggement, 135.
Election of voyage, 127, 128.
Elements, the four, 202.
eff, 134.
Elves, 134.
Emperyean, 171.
erne, 142.
ernful, 140.
ers, final, 121.
Etymologies, strange, 170.
Eve, son of, 169.
Exaltation (in astrology), 207.
Face (in astrology), 208.
fan, 204.
fen (chapter), 164.
Fermentation, 193.
Fish Street, 154.
Flanders, 150.
flemed, 169.
Florins, 162.
fnese, 206.
foot-hot, 130.
fors, no, 140, 185.
fraught, 112.
Friars, 149.
Gallicans, 141.
gauren, 136.
Gerund, use of the, 154, 178.
Gesta Romanorum, 131, 139.
geste, 208.
Gibraltar, 136.
Giles, St., 198.
good bye, 162.
Gospels, MSS. of the, 132.
grisly, 150.
Hailes, blood of, 158.
harrow, haro, 140.
haunten, 150, 153.
Hazard, 159.
here (her), disyllabic, 171.
Herbs, virtue of, 191.
Hermes, 201.
Herod, 152.
heyne, 198, 199.
heyre, 171.
Hippocrates, 140, 141.
Hood, how worn, 182.
Horoscope, 127, 128.
House (in astrology), 126.
hym and here (him and her), 13.
Hymn, Latin, imitated, 130.
hypocraus, 140, 141.
ignotum per ignotius, 202.
Imbdition, 192.
Indulgences, sale of, 144-147.
it am I, 139.
iuperius, 187.
EXPLAINED IN THE NOTES. 281

Jacobus Januensis, 169.
jeopardy, 187.
Jew, a holy, 145.

Knaresborough, 133.
knights, 175, 177.

lampe (lamina), 187.
lane, blind, 185.
lavon, 145.
Legenda Aurea, 130, 165, 166, 169, 172, &c.
Lemuel, king, 155.
Lepe, town of, 154.
lettres, lettre, use of, 133, 134.
lointes, 172.
lunar, 191.
luting, lute, 188.
Lydgate, 128.

Mahomet, 124.
male (bag), 164, 182.
Manuscripts; see Notes.
Mark, value of a, 147.
Mary of Egypt, 131.
Matthew Paris, 134.
Maunegy, 124.
Maurice, emperor, 139.
message (messenger), 122, 128.
Metals, seven, 194.
Morocco, straits of, 131, 136.
Mortification, 200.
moya, 143.
multiply, 185, 186.

namely, 147.
Nativeties, 127.
nayles (an oath), 157, 158.
Necodemus, gospel of, 132.
Nobles, 164.
Nominalists, 153.

Notes written in the margin in the MSS., 123, 125, 127, 129, 134, 139, 153, 155-157, 162, 177, 184.

Oaths, 143, 150, 157.

oo (=one), 173.

organs, 171.
Orsinge, pilgrims at, 180, 181.
oversloppe, 184.
ought (at all), 183.
Oxymoron, 195.

Pardons, 144-147.
Past participle, 122, 179, 197.
Past tense, second person of, 178; compared with pp., 179, 197.
patente, 144.
Pestilences, 161.
Peter I, 185.
Peter Comestor, 152.
Piers Plowman, 149, 152, 153, 156, 208.
Planets, ascension of, 126; position of, 127.
pokets, cered, 192.
Polycraticus, 156.
pose (verb), etymology of, 176.
poused, 206.
Prime, 160.
Primum mobile, 125.
Proper names in scansion, 138.
Proverbs:—all that glisters, 196, 197; as fain as a fowl, 199; every apple, 196, 197; burnt bairns, 199; better late, 199; lightly come, 163; proffered service, 197; too much, 185; solamen miserorum, 187.

Ptolemaic theory, 125.
purchase, 135.

Quicksilver, 189, 195.
Quintain, 204.

rape and renne, 199, 200.
Realgar, 192.
Realists, 153.
Reclaim a hawk, 206.
relees, out of, 168.
Relics, 145.
rit (rideth), 184.
Roland, young, 137.
Romaunt of the Rose, 148, 165.
Rome, journeys to, 135.
INDEX OF SUBJECTS EXPLAINED.

Ronan, St., 141, 142.
Root (in astrology), 127, 128; (in alchemy), 202.
Rubrification, 190.
saffron, 145.
Sal Ammoniac, 191.
Sal Petrae, 192.
Salisbury, John of, 156.
Sampson, 153.
se (protect), 122, 162.
Secreta Secretorum, 201.
Seneca quoted, 152.
Senior (a book), 202.
Serpent in form of woman, 128, 129.
Shoulder-bone of a sheep, 146.
Signs of zodiac, 126.
sol and luna, 201.
sonne (sun), feminine, 168.
sothe, dissyllabic, 185.
spending silver, 197.
Spheres, nine, 125.
Spirits, four, 189, 193.
-stere, -star, (suffix), 151.
sister (die), 164.
Stilbon, 156.
Stories, the', 152.
Sublimation, 188.
substance, 153.
Susannah, 132.
Swearing, 150, 151, 157.
v (saw), 199.
vyghte (sighed), 137.
taste, 178.
tempo (tense), 195.
tentuel, 209.
the, joined to next word, 122.
tide, 135.
to-bete, 177.
tombaster, 151.
tormentour, 176.
Tortuous signs, 126.
Torture, 135.
to-terre, 152.
triclle (treacle), 143.
Trivet, Nicholas, cited, 121, 129, 131-133, 135-140.
up to down, 184.
Urban, St., 172.
verdegrees, 190.
Vigny, Jehan de, 165, 166.
Vintners, 154, 156.
' Virgin Martyr', 166, 173, 176.
vow, old spelling of, 161.
Wafer-women, 152.
went, is (is gone), 179.
weyne (abandon), 174.
White and red wines, 153.
who, as a relative, 175.
wifful, 149.
Wines of Spain and Rochelle, 154, 155; sorts of, 204; wine of ape, 204.
with, construction of, 145.
wood (mad), 140.
wordes, hadde the, 209.
worm (serpent), 146.
ye, yis (yes, yes), 183.
yearn (in Shakespeare), 142.
An Etymological Dictionary of the English Language, Arranged on an Historical Basis. Parts I and II, A—LIT. 40s., 10s. 6d. each. To be completed in Four Parts.

A List of English Words the Etymology of which is illustrated by comparison with Icelandic. Prepared in the form of an Appendix to Cleasby and Vigfusson’s Icelandic-English Dictionary. Stitched, 2s.

Part I. By R. Morris, LL.D. In the Press.

Specimens of English Literature, from the ‘Ploughman, Crede’ to the ‘Shepheardes Calender’ (A.D. 1394 to A.D. 1579). With Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo., cloth, 7s. 6d.

The Vision of William concerning Piers the Plowman, by William Langland. With Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.

Chaucer. The Prioresses Tale; Sire Thopas; The Monkes Tale; The Clerkes Tale; The Squieres Tale. From the Canterbury Tales. With Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.

A SERIES OF ENGLISH CLASSICS.

1. Chaucer. The Prologue to the Canterbury Tales; The Knight's Tale; The Nunne Preestes Tale. Edited by R. Morris, Editor of Specimen of Early English, 8vo., 8vo. Sixth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 1s. 6d.

2. Spenser's Faery Queene. Books I and II. Designed chiefly for the use of Schools. With Introduction, Notes, and Glossary. By G. W. Kitchin, M.A. cloth, 2s. 6d. each.


   I. The Merchant of Venice. 1s. 11. Richard the Second. 1s. 6d. III. Macbeth. 1s. 6d.


7. Dryden. Select Poems. Stanzas on the Death of Oliver Cromwell; Astraea Redux; Annus Mirabilis; Absalom and Achitophel; Religio Laici; The Hind and the Panther. Edited by W. D. Christie, M.A. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.


   I. Thoughts on the present Discontents; the two Speeches on America. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

   I. The Didactic Poems of 1782, with Selections from the Minor Pieces. A.D. 1772-1783. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s.
   II. The Task, with Tirocinium, and Selections from the Minor Poems. A.D. 1785-1799. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s.
